
Copyright:

Middlesex University Research Repository makes the University’s research available electronically.

Copyright and moral rights to this thesis/research project are retained by the author and/or other copyright owners. The work is supplied on the understanding that any use for commercial gain is strictly forbidden. A copy may be downloaded for personal, non-commercial, research or study without prior permission and without charge. Any use of the thesis/research project for private study or research must be properly acknowledged with reference to the work’s full bibliographic details.

This thesis/research project may not be reproduced in any format or medium, or extensive quotations taken from it, or its content changed in any way, without first obtaining permission in writing from the copyright holder(s).

If you believe that any material held in the repository infringes copyright law, please contact the Repository Team at Middlesex University via the following email address:

eprints@mdx.ac.uk

The item will be removed from the repository while any claim is being investigated.
PIOUS PASTORS: CALVIN’S THEOLOGY OF SANCTIFICATION AND HOW IT SHAPED THE TEACHING AND PRACTICES OF THE GENEVAN ACADEMY, 1559-1564

A Thesis submitted for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

by

Thomas Devonshire Hawkes

Middlesex University
Supervised at London School of Theology
March 2013
John Calvin had a driving passion to develop godly pastors in order to build the Reformed Church in France. Calvin also possessed a very refined understanding of progressive sanctification and what precisely would cause its advance in the life of believers. He brought together his understanding of the process of sanctification and the desire to develop a new generation of pious pastors in the institution of the Genevan Academy. In part one of this thesis, Calvin’s theology of sanctification is expounded, and a taxonomy of core principles of his theology of sanctification is suggested. In part two the principles of sanctification are used to examine the teaching and educational structures of the Genevan Academy, demonstrating Calvin’s approach to enhancing the holiness of his pastoral students.
Acknowledgments

John Donne famously said, “No man is an island.” While researching and writing a thesis may at times be lonely work, when one pauses to consider those to whom thanks is due, even the researcher is obliged to recognize that he stands on the shoulders of many others. First, there are the benefactors who kindly supply funding so that one may research at all. In that category I wish to thank the Elders of Uptown Church in Charlotte, N.C., who have graciously funded my studies with money and time. Then follows a host of individuals who have given generously: Mark and Tisha Bass, George and Elva Carpenter, Charlie and Lynne Hawkes, Rick and Sara Hawkes, Rob and Lisa Hawkes, Ed Reule, Ken and Ruth Samuelson, Stanton and Missy Vandenberg. Thanks to each of you.

Next I owe thanks to the various scholars who have helped me. First in that line, of course, is my own supervisor, Dr. Tony Lane, who has directed, guided, challenged, critiqued and encouraged this work into being. Then I thank Dr. Douglas Kelly, who first put me in contact with Dr. Lane and encouraged me to press forward in this work. I would like to thank Drs. Wim Janse and Eddy Van der Borght of the Free University of Amsterdam for their encouragement in my early work on this subject and their excellent suggestion of adding a chapter on Calvin’s view of the office of pastor. Drs. Michael Kruger and Richard Hawkes were very helpful in reading and critiquing the early chapters and encouraging me to keep at it. Thanks to each of you.

Writing of course comes down finally to words, which requires the assistance of proofreaders. Andy Pyrch helped with some early chapter editions, Jenni Pyrch, Aaron Gray, Andrew Shank and Angela Queen finished off the final edition. Thanks to you each.

Lastly, I would like to thank my family. I thank my sons: Collin, Taylor, Brandon and Preston, who never had a discouraging word but encouraged my research even when it cost them personally. Most of all I thank my dear wife Ann whose steady encouragement, sacrifice and more than occasional constructive comment made my work not only possible, but enjoyable.
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
# Table of Contents

Introduction ........................................................................................................... 1

Section One .............................................................................................................. 15

Chapter I -- The Divine Initiative in Sanctification ................................. 16

Chapter II -- Calvin’s Anthropology and Its Implications for Sanctification ................................................................................................................. 45

Chapter III -- Faith and Repentance ................................................................. 75

Chapter IV -- The Life of the Christian Man within the Church .......................................................................................................................... 102

Section Two............................................................................................................. 130

Chapter V -- The Model of the Pious Pastor .............................................. 131

Chapter VI -- Calvin’s Teaching to the Students of the Genevan Academy ......................................................................................................................... 161

Chapter VII -- The Structures of the Genevan Academy which Enhanced Sanctification ............................................................. 189

Chapter VIII -- Comparing the Academies of Lausanne and Strasbourg with Geneva ......................................................................................... 222

Thesis Conclusions................................................................................................. 255
“Donnez-moi du bois, et je vous envoie des flèches.”1

Introduction

From his refuge in Geneva, John Calvin lived with a burning passion—to reform his beloved French church. He had such a passion, in part, because he had been a true child of the church. He was reared in the shadows of the Cathedral Church of Noyon, whose steeples dominated the quiet village skyline as much as the church dominated its life and as much as the church would dominate Calvin’s life. From her, Calvin’s father earned his living as a kind of church accountant. Within her whitewashed walls, upon her stone floors, young Calvin studied and was nurtured, supported by her beneficence until he could no longer take her money in good conscience. He could easily write, with deep feeling for the church, “let us learn even from the simple title ‘mother’ how useful, indeed how necessary, it is that we should know her.”2 It was from this love for his Mother Church, who had given to him so much, that he desired to bring reform into her bosom.

To bring renewal Calvin not only strove to reform the theology of the church but desperately wanted to send to her pulpits a new kind of pastor, one marked by both a holy humility and a great boldness in preaching the Word. To accomplish this he would have to help produce such pastors. But where does one begin? Struck both by the lack of holiness in the Roman Catholic clergy, those “greedy priestlings” who are “prostituted to filthy gain,”3 and by the lack of power in Roman practices of piety, Calvin charted a new course for sanctification among the clergy he would train, building on the lessons learned from earlier Reformers, the Church Fathers and Scripture itself. To assist this process, he utilized two tools. First, he developed in his writings a model of sanctification which fueled his teaching and educational practices. Second, he established the Genevan Academy in 1559 for the training of hundreds of Reformed pastors.

His approach to sanctification, which was outlined in the Institutes, explicated in sermons, and taught in lectures, was marked by two distinctives. First, under the influence of the devotio moderna,4 he moved away from the emphasis on external

---

1 Calvin to the churches of France, as cited by R. M. Kingdon, Geneva and the Coming of the Wars of Religion in France, 1555-1563 (Geneva: Droz, 1956) VII.
2 Institutes 4.1.4.
3 Institutes 4.10.15.
disciplines and defined sanctification far more in terms of internal heart change, *pietas*. Second, Calvin saw the general tendency behind Roman piety was toward exalting man’s ability, while simultaneously diminishing God’s glory. Against this he rejected all efforts at flattering the human condition and called for a radical humiliation of man with a simultaneous exaltation of God as the core condition for sanctification. This clear perspective, a two-fold knowledge of God and the self as they truly are, was not passive information. Rather, this knowledge should lead to a two-fold response: a movement of the human heart downward in humble prostration regarding oneself before God and upward in reverence of God. These two movements of the heart became the hallmark of his call to holiness.

By all accounts his efforts to train up godly pastors for France were met with great success. Students flocked to the Genevan Academy, for a year or perhaps even three, and then were sent out, mostly to France, where many were to face persecution and death. But still they came to be trained and sent out. At its early height, some 200 were sent out in just a few years’ time. They left Geneva with boldness to preach the Word and with a holy humility regarding themselves. But how did this come to pass?

**The rationale for such a study**

For 2000 years of church history, Christians have wondered how best to train and prepare Christian leaders. Within this development of the leader there has been a particularly pernicious issue: how to shape their character and heart, that is, how to enhance their holiness. From Origen’s Alexandrian School, to Ignatius Loyola’s Jesuits, to the founding of the Log College as precursor to Princeton, each generation has sought new answers to this age old question. With each new effort at perfecting our development of Christian leaders and their holiness something is gained and something is lost. Something is gained, for the Church tries new ways to train her leaders. Something is lost, for too often a new generation forgets what previous generations have understood. Often in the effort to try something new, something old,

---

6 *Institutes* 1.2.1.
7 *Commentary*, Ps. 22:23; *CO* 31:232, “Iubet ab eo metuere, ut supplices coram eo se prosternant.”
perhaps even more valuable, may well be lost. It is precisely toward this need, to understand what was known of old, that this thesis is written, in the hopes that something old might be understood about how John Calvin purposed to develop the holiness of pastoral candidates through the Genevan Academy, then, brought into the realm of modern scholarship, it may become useful again for our day. The insights that could be gained from a careful Historical/Theological analysis of the nexus of Calvin’s theology of sanctification, as expressed through the Genevan Academy, could potentially further a scholarly understanding of the theological inner workings of the Academy and might, as well, have implications for the theological underpinnings for modern Reformed educational institutions.

**Design of the research**

We have taken as our overall task to answer the question: How did John Calvin encourage the sanctification of the candidates for pastoral office at the Genevan Academy? To explore this question we have divided our work into two sections. In the first we will explore the dynamics behind Calvin’s theology of sanctification. In the second we will examine how his theology of sanctification shaped both the teaching and the educational methodologies which he used at the Academy in order to enhance his students’ holiness. In addressing our central question we will attempt to advance the premise that Calvin’s great concern for developing the holiness of the pastors at the Genevan Academy was shown by the way his theology of sanctification was used to shape the teaching and educational structures of the Academy.

**Section One: Defining principles from Calvin’s theology of sanctification**

In the first section, we attempt to answer the sub-question: What are the key principles of Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification which will shape his methods and teaching at the Genevan Academy? Since the first section is a broad survey of Calvin’s mature theology of sanctification, we will draw primarily from his 1559 *Institutes*, his commentaries and his sermons. While much of Calvin research in our day is focused on the analysis of the various theological streams from which Calvin drank and the subsequent chronological development of his thought, necessary to understanding his life work, this project is less focused on the different phases of his development as it is on how his mature theology of sanctification came into play at the Academy during the final years of his life.
We will begin in Chapter I with Calvin’s understanding of the divine role in sanctification, which shows our dependence on God. In Chapter II we will move to examine his view of man regarding his need for sanctification and so gain from that knowledge of self. Chapter III will describe his process of progressive sanctification. Chapter IV will examine Calvin’s disciplines of sanctification, both individual and corporate. In Section One we will seek to define the key principles of his theology of sanctification in order to show in Section Two how his theology of sanctification informed his teaching and his methods of education at the Academy.

A word about definitions is in order. Calvin’s use of the term sanctification distinguished between positional and progressive sanctification. Here he describes positional sanctification: “There is the word sanctify, which means that we should be separated from the world in order that we may be joined to the Son of God.”\(^10\) Calvin also recognized the progressive aspect of sanctification. “The meaning of the term sanctification we have already explained elsewhere in repeated instances—that renouncing the world, and clearing ourselves from the pollutions of the flesh, we offer ourselves to God as if in sacrifice, for nothing can with propriety be offered to Him, but what is pure and holy.”\(^11\) While Calvin would clearly distinguish sanctification from justification,\(^12\) he does not do so for regeneration and sanctification, tending to use several terms interchangeably, as Wallace points out. “Calvin, when he wishes to vary his language, can use many other terms such as repentance, mortification, new life, conversion, regeneration, to denote exactly the same as he means by the word sanctification.”\(^13\) For clarity in our writing, we will use Marcel’s summary of Calvin’s definition, referring in our thesis primarily to progressive and not positional sanctification. “Sanctification is that gratuitous and continuous operation of the Holy Spirit whereby He delivers the justified sinner from the defilement of sin, renews his whole nature after the image of God and enables him to perform good works.”\(^14\) Or as Calvin puts it: “Under the term sanctification is included the entire renovation of the man.”\(^15\) This is well justified by Calvin’s frequent use of the term “sanctify” to denote the actual holiness of progressive sanctification. “We know that God is holy;

\(^{11}\) *Commentary*, 1 Thess. 4:3.
\(^{12}\) *Commentary*, 1 Cor. 6:11.
\(^{14}\) P. Marcel, “The Relation Between Justification and Sanctification in Calvin’s Thought,” *Evangelical Quarterly* 27 (1955) 133.
\(^{15}\) *Commentary*, 1 Thess. 5:23.
thus we must be sanctified and holy too. For God cannot abide in the midst of our filth.”

Section Two: Calvin’s theology of sanctification as taught and practiced at the Genevan Academy

Having defined the principles of Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification in Section One, in Section Two we will use those principles to address the question: What were the specific teachings offered and the educational structures utilized by Calvin to enhance the pietas of the pastoral candidates he trained in the Genevan Academy? In addressing that question we must also ask: What is the model of the pious pastor toward which Calvin would train? The second section of our thesis will focus more narrowly on those sources which reveal both what Calvin taught and what educational methods were used at the Academy. To study his teaching, we will use as source material his lectures at the Academy, sermons given during this period and relevant correspondence. To understand the educational methods, we will examine the foundational documents of the Genevan Academy, as well as other historical documents, primarily correspondence to and from students, but also the Registers of the Company of Pastors and the Registers of the Consistory of Geneva.

In Chapter V we will outline the model of the pious pastor which formed the competency model toward which all of Calvin’s training efforts were aimed. In Chapter VI we will show how Calvin taught, with painstaking repetition, the theology around his view of sanctification. In Chapter VII we will examine the educational structures designed to enhance the students’ holiness, as illuminated by his theology of sanctification. In Chapter VIII we will compare the teaching and educational structures of the Genevan Academy with those of the Academies of Lausanne and Strasbourg, searching both for commonalities and any unique characteristics of the Academy in Geneva.

As we present the research on the educational methods and their influence on the students’ holiness, particularly in Chapters VII and VIII, there are methodological limitations which must be acknowledged at the outset. While we may confidently discover the presence of any educational method—the use of pastoral mentors, for example—it is impossible to prove conclusively that any one method particularly contributed to the students’ sanctification. To even attempt to assert proof of the

effectiveness of these methods would require the ability to test each student before their attendance at the Academy in order to determine their level of holiness, could such a thing even be measured, and then to survey them again after their tenure at the Academy to ascertain what improvements had been made. Even then one could not scientifically assert that the change in their holiness was produced by the pastoral mentoring, rather than, for instance, the beauty of the sunsets in Geneva.

Given these limitations we expect our research to yield more suggestions rather than firm conclusions as to how useful any educational method or teaching was in enhancing holiness. This does not mean, however, that we will assert nothing regarding the educational structures and teaching. We will be able to show, for example, which educational structures were in place, the historical evidence supports this well. We will even be able to show, in most cases, that in line with Calvin’s theology, he intended these structures to help in the students’ sanctification. But then as to the effectiveness of these structures at actually producing sanctification, the historical data will suggest this rather than prove it.

Literature survey

As John Leith pointed out during the late 19th and early 20th centuries, the study of Calvin’s theology revolved around the debate concerning Calvin’s central organizing theological principle (zentrale Dogma). Baur thought this central dogma was the absolute causality of God. Karl Barth asserted that it was the Word of God. Niesel said it was a Christo-centric focus. Leith argued that it was “God’s relationship to humankind and humankind’s relationship to God” which served as Calvin’s central focus. Herman Bauke argued that Calvin lacked a central theme and instead had three forms that he emphasized: the rational, the complex and the biblical. Doumercgue goes further to say that Calvin’s system is in fact only a collection of contrarieties defying systemization (méthode des contrariétés).

21 Leith, Christian Life, 16.
23 E. Doumercgue, Le caractère de Calvin (Paris: Editions de Foi et Vie, 1921) 47.
In more recent years Calvin scholarship has turned away from the pursuit of a *zentrale Dogma* to focus on the developmental nature of Calvin’s theology both by identifying the streams of thought which flowed into Calvin to shape his theology and by showing how his thinking progressed through the chronology of his writings. A. N. S. Lane, for example, intricately details Calvin’s theological debt to the Church Fathers.\textsuperscript{24} Irena Backus shows a similar dependence on the Fathers for Calvin’s methodology.\textsuperscript{25} Willem van ‘t Spijker has shown Calvin’s dependence on contemporaries such as Luther and Bucer.\textsuperscript{26} Wim Janse has shown the development of Calvin’s thought on the Lord’s Supper, including the somewhat surprising influence of Zwingli.\textsuperscript{27}

Since our work is focused on Calvin’s mature views and not his development, this review will primarily look at literature that touches upon Calvin’s later views in three areas relevant to our goal: progressive sanctification, the pastoral office and the work of the Genevan Academy.

**Calvin’s theology of sanctification**

Wallace’s *Calvin’s Doctrine of the Christian Life* is an admittedly uncritical and detailed rehearsal of every major feature in Calvin’s theology of sanctification as seen through the lens of the *Institutes*’ chapters on the *Life of the Christian Man*. Its chief value lies in its systematic presentation of Calvin’s thought, drawing equally from the *Institutes*, commentaries and sermons. Wallace offers the “restoration of true order” as a possible central paradigm for Calvin’s theology of sanctification.\textsuperscript{28}

Leith’s *John Calvin’s Doctrine of the Christian Life*, by contrast with Wallace, takes a critical look at Calvin and finds six major inconsistencies in his doctrine of sanctification. For example, Leith says that Calvin will at one moment assert that the law is really the personal claim of God on man but then turn around and substitute the


\textsuperscript{28} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 101-22.
law for the relational aspect of God’s claim, leading to a kind of legalism in practice.²⁹

Lobstein’s Die Ethik Calvins³⁰ also uses the Life of the Christian Man as the lens through which to understand Calvin’s theology of sanctification. Lobstein goes beyond Wallace and Leith by showing how vocation, church and state relate to the new life, offering a more complete understanding of Calvin’s total theology of sanctification. Lobstein claims Calvin’s theology contains a basic tension, teaching that sanctification is both God’s work and something for which man must strive.³¹ He asserts, as will we, that reverence becomes a key response of the Christian to God, and indeed to all authority. “This duty of reverence becomes for Calvin the general duty of obedience toward every authority.”³²

Roman Catholic scholar Lucien Richard³³ explains Calvin’s theology of sanctification in light of major medieval spiritual sources such as the devotio moderna, the Brethren of the Common Life and à Kempis’s Imitatio Christi. He asserts that Calvin, while deeply influenced by these movements, was an innovator who uniquely combined sancta eruditio and pietas, that is, a view of sanctification that called for progress in knowledge through the Word and also progress in holiness through the Spirit.

Dowey’s The Knowledge of God in Calvin’s Theology focuses on the acquisition of the duplex cognitio Domini, that is, the knowledge of God as both Creator and Redeemer.³⁴ The duplex cognitio, though related to, is distinguished from the two-fold knowledge of God and self.³⁵ The growth in this knowledge leads to growth in worship and obedience, that is, in holiness.³⁶ Dowey makes important connections between the duplex cognitio and faith, as well as repentance and God’s Word,³⁷ therefore his book is essential for understanding sanctification.

---

³⁰ P. Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins in Ihren Grundzügen Entworfen (Strasbourg: C. F. Schmidt’s, 1877).
³¹ Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 72.
³³ Richard, Spirituality of John Calvin, 48-73.
³⁵ Dowey, Knowledge of God, 18-19.
³⁶ Dowey, Knowledge of God, 28, 50-52.
³⁷ Dowey, Knowledge of God, 172.
T. F. Torrance’s *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*\(^{38}\) reveals the helplessness of man in his own sanctification but always casts this helplessness on the background of God’s hopeful grace.\(^{39}\) He suggests a two-fold purpose to Calvin’s anthropology: “by pointing the believer to his original creation in the image of God to produce gratitude, and by pointing him to his present miserable condition to produce humility.”\(^{40}\) Calvin, it would appear, mirrors his two-fold knowledge of God and self with a two-fold response: gratitude and humility. Torrance casts these responses as movements, as will we. These are movements upward and downward, the appropriate “motions of grace,”\(^{41}\) which lead men finally to the adoration of God’s glory.\(^{42}\)

Muller’s work helps to bring clarity to the modern debate over the relationship between union with Christ and justification.\(^{43}\) Carefully examining the Reformed scholars who followed Calvin, Muller is able to convincingly demonstrate that Calvin, in line with many of his successors, gave union with Christ great priority in the process of sanctification. Tamburello thoroughly explores the *unio mystica*, demonstrating how Christ himself powers the transformation toward holiness, including the acquisition of the knowledge of God and the self.\(^{44}\) He makes helpful observations on the relationship of God’s love and progress in holiness,\(^{45}\) though we will argue that even he understates the importance of love in Calvin’s understanding of sanctification.\(^{46}\)

McKee’s work on pastoral piety does a marvelous job of bringing together the concept of piety and how Calvin hoped to encourage this in others through his specific teachings.\(^{47}\) This is largely done through a collection of Calvin’s works on the subject with some good commentary from her, which places his teachings in their historical settings.

Both Niesel and Barth offer important comments on Calvin’s theology of sanctification. Barth, finding a tension between grace and legalism in Calvin’s view of sanctification, asserts that Calvin seems to be at times a bitter moralist: “Calvin

\(^{39}\) Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 20.
\(^{40}\) Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 13.
\(^{41}\) Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 115.
\(^{42}\) Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 17.
\(^{45}\) Tamburello, *Union with Christ*, 65, 105.
\(^{46}\) Tamburello, *Union with Christ*, 107.
was a man over whose vitality a deep shadow lay.”

This view, we will argue, is not well supported by the Calvin revealed in his pastoral correspondence and sermons. Niesel has a more positive evaluation of Calvin’s theology of sanctification seeing in it the call to imitate Christ, not in slavish obedience, but as drawn by the power of Christ.

In addition to these major works, many recent articles shed light on Calvin’s understanding of sanctification, and among these, two stand out. First is Barbara Pitkin’s “Redefining Repentance” which demonstrates the centrality of repentance to Calvin. Second, Selderhuis’s “Faith between God and the Devil” helpfully portrays sanctification as the struggle for faith against the demonic temptation to unbelief.

These authors offer good agreement over Calvin’s basic theology of sanctification. Wallace, Leith, Lobstein and Richard concur that Calvin calls for a dependence upon God while we are yet to actively mortify our flesh and quicken our spirit. This mortification, they agree, consists of the “denial of the self” and “bearing the cross;” while vivification consists of the “meditation on the future life.”

There is, however, debate surrounding the question of Calvin’s possible legalism. Barth, who will at points defend Calvin against the technical claim of legalism, says, “We cannot really learn to know the details of the Genevan system that is so much admired without words like, ‘tyranny’ and ‘Pharisaism’ coming almost naturally to our lips.” Leith, perhaps most clearly, charges Calvin with legalism: “Yet his writings and especially his practices reveal an unmistakable legalistic tendency.” Niesel defends Calvin saying that one who speaks so freely of the life of the Christian man should not be assumed to teach “a monastic outlook.” Torrance too defends Calvin asserting that the assumption behind all of Calvin’s apparent moralism is “his great comprehensive inference from grace.”

49 Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 159.
52 Barth, *Theology of Calvin*, 122.
54 Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 141-43.
55 Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 20.
Beyond the question of Calvin’s possible legalism lies a more difficult one: What is the essence of Calvin’s view of sanctification? Wallace offers the theme of the true order. Leith proposes the production of a man, both humble and confident, who emerges from the intense relationship with God. Richard finds as key Calvin’s equal emphasis on piety/Spirit and erudition/Word. Niesel focuses on the imitation of Christ. Battles offers the theme of the double-knowledge of God’s glory and of our sinfulness. We will attempt to show, building upon both Battles and Leith, that the two-fold knowledge of God and self, leading to the two-fold movement of the human heart, downward in prostration before God and upward in reverence, is the central pillar of Calvin’s understanding of sanctification.

While these works offer insights in Calvin’s view of sanctification, they offer neither an overarching taxonomy of his entire view of progressive sanctification nor do they show how his theology relates to his work at the Academy. Therefore our intended exploration could helpfully illuminate these two areas.

**Calvin’s view of the pastoral office**

Calvin’s view of the pastoral office has been studied with increasing popularity recently. Kingdon’s work serves as a foundation for studies on many aspects of church life in Geneva including the pastoral office and the work of the Consistory. A thorough study of the Genevan pastorate is offered in the Calvin Studies Society’s helpful collection. There Flaming offers an in-depth understanding of the processes by which pastors were examined and approved for office. Holder presents a comprehensive framework of the pastor’s call and work. Boer shows how the Congrégations were used for the in-service training of pastors. Beyond that

---

58 Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 143.
collection, Pettegree has shown the transformation necessary to go from Roman priest to Reformed pastor. McKee and Holder show the requirements for the pastoral office. Maag has written extensively on the role and training of the pastor. Even more recently Manetsch has rendered a careful examination of the life and work of the Company of Pastors.

There is a clear consensus among these authors that Calvin meant to reform the pastoral office from what it had degenerated to under Rome into a new cadre of clergy who were both truly called and faithful to that call. These valuable resources, however, do little to address the question of how Calvin’s view of sanctification was applied to the shaping of pastoral candidates at the Genevan Academy, hence the need for our study.

The work of the Genevan Academy
The work of the Genevan Academy is far less studied than either sanctification or the pastoral office. Though Borgeaud remains the standard in the field, thoroughly documenting the facts of the Academy, his account is at times clouded, if not by hagiography, then at least by reverent idealizing. “Les relations de disciple à maître sont infiniment plus faciles, plus intimes que de nos jours.” Maag’s work offers the modern reader a rigorous understanding of the inner workings of the Academy through a thorough examination of primary source documents in Geneva. She gives

valuable insight into the intimate connection between the pastors of Geneva and the running of the Academy. Maag argues persuasively that the Academy was designed first to be a seminary, an opinion held as well by Borgeaud, and one which our research confirms.

There are, however, still unanswered questions: What were the students taught? What were the disciplines they kept? How did each of these contribute to the sanctification of these pastoral candidates? Though there is some good primary data with which to work, such as student letters and the lectures of Calvin at the Academy, it would appear that no one has yet attempted to piece together the available data in such a way as to reveal the correlation between Calvin’s theology of sanctification and how the methods and teachings of the Academy were used to enhance the holiness of the students there.

**Nexus of all three: Calvin’s encouragement of the sanctification of pastoral candidates at the Genevan Academy**

While there is little written directly on this topic, several articles explore Calvin’s particular approach to education and at least touch upon his focus on holiness. Moore examines Calvin’s work through an educational matrix rather than one of pastoral sanctification. Eby helpfully places Calvin’s educational philosophy among his contemporaries and rightly detects his unique success at “welding church, state and home into one combined institution for the purpose of instruction.” Ehrenpreis sheds light on the broad categories of content in Calvin’s training.

Although these sources offer pieces of the puzzle, no one has put them together in such a way as to answer our question: How did John Calvin encourage the sanctification of the candidates for pastoral office at the Genevan Academy? By correlating what Calvin taught about sanctification with what he taught at the Academy and the historical practices of the Academy, we will be able to gain a clearer understanding of exactly how Calvin intended to enhance the holiness of the

---

73 Maag, Genevan Academy, 194.
pastors he hoped to unleash for the furtherance of the Reformation and the help of his beloved French church.
Section One - Defining the Principles of Calvin’s Theology of Sanctification
Chapter I -- The Divine Initiative in Sanctification

“Ero vobis in patrem.”

I. The Role of God the Father

The Father elects us to sanctification

Calvin wished to prove that God was the author of our sanctification, and that the methods of the Roman Church, the “satisfactions, superstitions and idolatry,” were not only unhelpful, but hurtful to holiness, inasmuch as they gave man a false confidence in his own abilities. Calvin carefully builds his case by showing the role of the triune God in our sanctification: the Father decreeing our holiness, the Son achieving it and the Spirit applying it. In doing so Calvin will always aim to bring man to a true knowledge of himself and God, the two-fold knowledge that will humble man and force him to exalt God. As Wendel says, “Above all, God and man must again be seen in their rightful places.” Therefore, for Calvin, our holiness begins not with human effort but with Divine election. “Our holiness proceeds and flows from the spring of God’s election.” It is God’s election that yields the fruit of holiness, which even makes the Word of God bear fruit in our lives. So great is Calvin’s emphasis on election that some, such as Cottret, conclude that Calvin even went too far, terrifying believers for polemical purposes. Niesel argues that in securing our holiness in the will of God, Calvin meant to counter the Roman idea that our holiness could be obtained by human effort, for it is by mercy, not merit, that we progress. “The doctrine of election…is an effectual antidote to every attempt on the part of man to elevate himself in terms of religious significance; it is the spearhead of

---

1 Commentary, 2 Cor. 6:18; CO 50:83.
2 Ganoczy, Young Calvin, 195.
4 So concludes Lobstein of Calvin: “We are chosen by God in order to live a holy and stainless life.” Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 23.
5 Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:2. Cf. Commentary, 1 Pet. 1:3.
6 Commentary, Eph. 1:4.
7 CO 22:46, French Catechism of 1537, “La semence de la parolle de Dieu prent racine et fructifie en ceux la seulement lesquelz le Seigneur par son election eternelle a predestiné pour ses enfans et heretiers du royaulme celeste.”
9 H. J. Schroeder (tr.), The Canons and Decrees of the Council of Trent (Rockford, Ill.: Tan Books and Publishers, 1978) 46. “If anyone says that the good works of the one justified are in such manner the gifts of God that they are not also the good merits of him justified…let him be anathema.”
10 Institutes 3.22.1, 3.17.6.
the attack on the Romish doctrine of grace.”¹¹ Calvin argued against the Catholic Schoolmen that it was God’s will in election, not our good work, which makes us holy, and therefore, upon which we should lean.¹² This can be seen in his reply to Bishop Sadolet, “The end of gratuitous election…is, that we may lead pure and unpolluted lives before God.”¹³ Against those who cry “merit,” Calvin would cry more loudly “mercy” (misericordia), for there is nothing but mercy on which we may stand.¹⁴ First to last our holiness is the work of God, not our own, for “we are God’s workmanship; everything good in us is His creation.”¹⁵ So it is to God we must look for help in holiness.

The Father sanctifies us by his grace, not our works
Not only the beginning, but the progress of sanctification is dependent on God’s grace rather than our good works.¹⁶ For God, “whenever it pleases him, changes the worst men into the best.”¹⁷ Sanctification is a work wrought by God,¹⁸ because he wants his children to be holy as he is holy.¹⁹ Indeed, God freely justifies his own for this purpose, that he might “restore them to true righteousness by sanctification of his Spirit.”²⁰ Since God is holy and abhors sin, yet desires to be joined to us as his people, he works to purify “by his Spirit those whom he has joined to himself.”²¹ The Christian must come to understand that God causes them to be holy so that they can “rest from all their affections and desires” and allow God to work in them.²² For Calvin, justification and sanctification are both of grace.²³ Therefore Calvin fights just as doggedly to uphold sanctification by grace as he does to demonstrate justification by grace. This causes Marcel to observe that for Calvin, “In the justification of the righteous as in the sanctification of the righteous, all is grace.”²⁴

¹¹ Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 168.
¹² Institutes 3.17.15.
¹³ CSW, Vol. 1, 44.
¹⁴ Commentary, Rom. 9:11; CO 49:177.
¹⁵ Commentary, Eph. 2:10.
¹⁶ Institutes 3.3.1.
¹⁷ Institutes 4.12.9.
¹⁹ Battles, The Piety of John Calvin, 52.
²⁰ Institutes 3.3.19.
²¹ Institutes 3.17.6.
²³ Institutes 2.1.7.
²⁴ Marcel, “Justification and Sanctification,” 143.
God begins sanctification in our lives by changing our wills

Calvin locates the beginning of God’s gracious work of sanctification in the will, rather than the intellect,25 agreeing with Paul’s assertion in Phil. 1:6. “There is no doubt that through ‘the beginning of a good work’ he denotes the very origin of conversion itself, which is in the will.”26 God, in effect, gives us a renewed will.27 Calvin takes pains to explain that though we are given a new will, our will is not destroyed in the process, but rather a “new will” is a change of will, from an evil to a good will.28

Yet God does change our will contrary to our own will, for we would have no inclination in us which would naturally submit to the change. Calvin wants to refute the Roman notion that we contribute something, even assent of our will, to our sanctification. He describes the conversion of Paul as the prototype for all repentance—unwilling. “Neither is our will one hair readier to obey than was Paul’s, until such time as the pride of our heart be beaten down, and he has made us not only flexible but also willing to obey and follow.”29 It must be the case that God works above our will, for no good would come forth from us without God’s intervention.30

The Father produces good works in us

In his effort to leave nothing to the merit of good works, Calvin is concerned to relate evangelical obedience and good works back to God. Polemically it is important for Calvin to establish the connection between God and our good works for two reasons. First, as Niesel points out,31 Calvin has always to address those critics, such as Bishop Sadolet,32 who accused him of encouraging immorality by discouraging good works with his teaching on sanctification by grace. Second, while affirming the role of good works, he wanted to prove that they could never merit what Roman theology claimed. Calvin, himself careful of personal holiness, seemed deeply stung by criticism of licentiousness and was quick to affirm their importance. “If election has as its goal

26 Institutes 2.3.6.
27 Institutes 2.3.10.
28 Institutes 2.3.6.
30 Institutes 2.3.9.
31 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 130-31.
32 Bishop Sadolet accused, “When I say by faith alone, I do not mean, as those inventors of novelties do, a mere credulity and confidence in God…it is not enough…Christ was sent that we, by well-doing, may, through him, be accepted of God. CSW, Vol. 1, 9, “Sadolet’s letter to the Genevan Senate and People.”
holiness of life, it ought rather to arouse and goad us eagerly to set our mind upon it than to serve as a pretext for doing nothing.”

Calvin therefore calls the Christian to respond to God in faith-driven obedience. He will use a favorite term, “the obedience of faith” (obsequium fidei), to show that our obedience is only accomplished by God through faith. “When then the Lord goes before us with his instruction and shows the way,” then we yield to him “the obedience of faith.”

It is God’s work that makes our new will turn in obedience toward him. Yet even here Calvin attributes to man no ability apart from grace to obey. “The first part of a good work is will; the other, a strong effort to accomplish it; the author of both is God.” Calvin is redundantly clear; God is the author of our good will and our good works, first to last. “If it is the part of God to renew the whole man, there is nothing left for free will. For if it had been our part to cooperate with God, Paul would have spoken thus—‘May God aid or promote your sanctification.’ But when he says, sanctify you wholly, he makes him the sole Author of the entire work.” Calvin asserts so completely that sanctification comes by God’s grace and not our good works that he calls believers to actually rest in God. “If people were able on their own strength to fulfill the law, He would have said to them, ‘Work!’ But on the contrary He said: ‘Rest in order that God might work.’” This introduces a tension, perhaps even a paradox, in Calvin’s thought, as Lobstein acknowledges. For Calvin does not ultimately call for quietism but a very active pursuit of holiness. Calvin at least attempts to solve this conundrum by pointing out that our activity in sanctification (self-denial, cross-bearing, use of the sacraments, etc.) always relies on grace in such a way that it may be described as passive. “Believers act passively, so to speak, seeing that the capacity is supplied from heaven.”

Since even our obedience flows from God, it can bring no merit to man. Calvin will admit that in a state of grace man has a new will and is “inclined to follow the action of grace.” But even this inclination is from God, nourished by the Holy

---

33 Institutes 3.23.12.
34 Commentary, Hos. 1.2.
35 CO 1:30; 1536 Institutes.
36 Institutes 2.3.9.
37 Commentary, 1 Thess. 5:23.
38 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 118.
39 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 72.
Spirit.\textsuperscript{41} For even \textit{in} the state of grace man does not have within himself the “power to work in partnership with God’s grace.” We do not possess goodness as autonomous individuals, but rather our good works depend on a never-ending stream of grace to our will, such that “controlled by grace, it never will perish, but, if grace forsake it, it will straightway fall.”\textsuperscript{42} The one hoping to find some merit behind his good work is sternly quieted by Calvin, “When a person relying on his own strength wants to acquit himself before God, he cannot lift a finger or have one single good idea as to how it should be done.”\textsuperscript{43}

Regarding good works then, man is forced to look humbly to God for increase in holiness, and importantly for Calvin, left without any merit obtained from his good works, thus rendering all satisfactions and penances moot. Sanctification is of God alone, from conception to completion. We are left in humility to turn to God and ask for help to become holy.\textsuperscript{44} “There is no other method of living piously and justly than that of depending upon God.”\textsuperscript{45}

We find here then our first principle from Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification, which however, we will assign the number 4, to build on other principles which may logically precede this one.

\begin{quote}
Principle 4: God Reliance. Because God is the one who sanctifies, therefore rely on God’s powerful grace, and not yourself, to become holy.
\end{quote}

God is the author of sanctification, working through the election of the Father, union with the Son and the indwelling of the Spirit to make the believer holy as he continuously relies on the grace of God and stops relying on his goodness or his own ability to improve himself.

\textbf{The Father’s love is key to our sanctification}

Calvin will make clear that holiness—piety—begins with and grows to fruition only as we understand that God loves us, as a Father loves his children. “By piety I mean that union of reverence and love to God which the knowledge of his benefits inspires. For, until men feel that they owe everything to God, that they are cherished by his paternal care…they will never submit to him in voluntary obedience.”\textsuperscript{46} It is not until we know that we are “cherished by his paternal care” that we know God as we ought and will look to him to further our holiness as our loving Father. “The first step in

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{41} \textit{Institutes} 2.3.11.
\item \textsuperscript{42} \textit{Institutes} 2.3.14.
\item \textsuperscript{43} \textit{Sermons on the Ten Commandments}, 118.
\item \textsuperscript{44} \textit{Commentary}, 1 Thess. 3:12.
\item \textsuperscript{45} \textit{Commentary}, Gen. 17:1. Cf. \textit{Commentary}, Jer. 17:6, 14; Eph. 2:10; 1 Cor. 1:2; 15:10; 2 Pet. 1:5.
\item \textsuperscript{46} \textit{Institutes} 1.2.1.
\end{itemize}
piety is, to acknowledge that God is a Father, to defend, govern, and cherish us." It is to this love that Calvin will point us again and again for furtherance in our sanctification. Indeed, Calvin, who has been accused of possessing a certain emotional malaise, could not sound healthier when it comes to reminding us of the Father’s love for us, “We are indeed his children, whom he has received into his faithful protection to nourish and educate.”

Calvin, of course, did not invent the idea that God’s love is a prime force behind our sanctification but, as Spijker observes, borrowed heavily from Luther. Calvin followed Luther’s concept of God’s fatherly goodness in the first edition of the Institutes, referring to God’s paterna benignitas ac clementia (fatherly benevolence and mercy), as he explains the Apostles Creed. Luther had made this emphasis clear, as well, in his landmark Galatians commentary. “The Father offers unto me, by His promise, His grace, and His fatherly favor. This remains then, that I should receive this grace. And this is done when I again with this groaning do cry, and with a childlike heart, do assent unto the name, Father.” Additionally, Ganoczy shows Calvin’s close connection to this theme from the devotio moderna, as represented by

---

47 Institutes 2.6.4.
50 Institutes 1.14.22.
51 Spijker, “The Influence of Luther on Calvin,” 89.
52 E. Middleton (tr.), Martin Luther: Commentary on Galatians (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Kregel Publications, 1979) 251-52.
53 This devotio moderna, flowing from the Brethren of the Common Life, founded by Geerte (or Gerhard) Groote (d. 1384), emphasized a highly personal relationship with God through inner heart devotion and distinguished itself from the more purely external devotional emphasis of the earlier medieval period, hence moderna. Yet while focusing on the more internal disciplines of meditation and examination of the conscience and confession, there was still a dedication to bodily mortifications (Ganoczy, Young Calvin, 58-59). Calvin came under the influence of the Brethren’s devotional thoughts at the College of Montaigu in Paris, an influence which was underscored by Bucer tutelage as well. The external aspect of the devotio was still evidenced in the practice of Jan Standonck at Montaigu. Erasmus, a student under Standonck, wrote that Standonck aimed at discipline by, “giving them a bed so hard, a diet so strict and so little abundant, vigils and labors so overpowering that in less than a year from beginning the experiment he had brought numerous young people, gifted by nature and highly promising, either to death, or blindness, or madness, or even sometimes to leprosy” (Cottret, Calvin, 17). As one of the techniques of the Brethren, the devotio moderna advocated sanctification through a return to Christian inwardness, an emphasis adopted by Calvin (R. C. Gleason, John Calvin and John Owen on Mortification: A Comparative Study in Reformed Spirituality, New York, N.Y.: Peter Lang Publishing, 1995, 47). Richard argues that Calvin, however, went beyond the Brethren’s teachings by converting the overly individualistic focus with a more balanced view of the corporate life of the church, and by moderating their contemptus mundi with a relative appreciation for this world, which pales only by comparison with the next (Richard, Spirituality of John Calvin, 125-29).
Ah, Lord God, my holy Lover, when You come into my heart, all that is within me will rejoice. You are my glory and the exultation of my heart."

While following the lead of others in espousing God’s love as central to our sanctification, it seems likely that Calvin was also reacting in part against the arid speculative theologies spun by the Sorbonne and other Catholic Scholastics, those “Questionarians,” whom Calvin would note, had failed to produce vital religion. Certainly, he meant as well to rebuff the Catholic dependence on making oneself holy by human effort, in order to better earn a place in the Father’s heart, by countering that God’s fatherly love has already been awarded to us. Whatever the streams that fed into his thoughts, they flowed richly and deeply into this great theme of the Father’s love as the ground of our sanctification. But how was the Father’s love to be known?

**God’s love is seen most clearly in the Son**

Calvin repeatedly asserts that the love of God for his children is primarily manifested in Christ. “Christ, then, is so illustrious and singular a proof of divine love towards us, that whenever we look upon him, he fully confirms to us the truth that God is love [dilectio].” It is the sacrifice of Christ for us which proves God’s fatherly love for us. “This distinction is inferred from very many passages of Scripture...’not that we first loved God, but that he first loved us, and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins.’” In this forgiveness of our sins God’s love is seen, for he stands ready to pardon us. Only as we fix our gaze on Jesus Christ can we be fully convinced of the Father’s love, for there the “paternal love of God is found.”

---

54 Many have seen the influence of Thomas à Kempis’s *Imitation of Christ* on the thoughts and spirituality of Calvin. (R. S. Wallace, *Calvin, Geneva and the Reformation*, Eugene, Oreg.: Wipf & Stock Publishers, 1998, 191) Required reading at Montaigu while Calvin was a student there, (Ganoczy, *Young Calvin*, 58) one can easily see Calvin’s reliance on *Imitation* when we compare its description of self-examination with Calvin’s. “Keep your eye upon yourself in the first place, and especially admonish yourself in preference to admonishing your friend.” (Thomas à Kempis, *The Imitation of Christ*; trs. A. Croft, H. F. Bolton; Milwaukee, Wis.: Bruce Publishing Co., 1962, 1:21) Calvin writes (*Institutes* 3.7.4): “For claiming as his own what pleases him, he censures the character and morals of others....Let us, then, unremittingly examining our faults, call ourselves back to humility.”


56 *Commentary*, Tit. 3:9.

57 *Commentary*, Col. 1:5.

58 *Commentary*, 1 John 4:9; CO 55:353.

59 *Institutes* 2.17.2.

60 *Commentary*, Hos. 6:1; cf. John 3:16.

61 *Institutes* 2.16.3; *Commentary*, 1 John 4:10.
God’s love is seen also in creation
To underscore God’s love, Calvin points to it as well in creation and providence.
“For if it be asked, why the world has been created, why we have been placed in it to possess the dominion of the earth…no other reason can be adduced, except the gratuitous love of God.”

God’s fatherly generosity, not just for the elect but toward all men, must be read clearly from the very fact that he has so amply furnished the world “with an immense profusion of wealth, before he formed man” rather than bringing mankind into a barren place.

Were God’s beneficence missed in the creation around him, then man need look no further than the creation of his own being to see God’s fatherly love “which ought justly to strike us with amazement.”

His children must recognize God’s good purposes toward them by seeing what God has created for them, and in seeing the “sweetness of his beneficence and goodness,” they should respond to God’s fatherly love with heartfelt thankfulness.

God’s love draws us toward him for sanctification
God’s love acts as the motive force in our sanctification, exerting a kind of gravitational pull which sets the whole machine of sanctification into motion in our hearts. “That abundant sweetness which God has stored up for those who fear him cannot be known without at the same time powerfully moving us. And once anyone has been moved by it, it utterly ravishes him and draws him to itself.”

This is not bare information but a deeply personal knowing, as we experience the favors of God, that cannot but “attract us toward him even more.” Even God’s voice draws us, for perceiving the paternal affection in his voice, rather than running away, we are gently enticed toward him.

If we do not know this love, we will remain cold and unmoved toward God, but when we know his love toward us, “it is certain that this will draw us to him fully.”

62 Commentary, 1 John 4:6.
63 Commentary, 1 John 4:9.
64 Commentary, Gen. 1:26.
65 Institutes 1.14.2.
66 Commentary, Ps. 8:7.
68 Institutes 1.14.22.
69 Institutes 3.2.41.
70 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 41.
71 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 258.
This wooing power of the love of God will become central to Calvin’s schema of sanctification. While we must see our depravity to understand ourselves well, knowledge of depravity may only leave us in a morose heap. It has no power by itself to move us toward holiness, only God’s love does. Therefore Calvin will repeatedly remind us that while God could be stern, he chooses rather to treat us graciously, so that “by doing so we see that he wanted to make them aware of his goodness in order to win them better.” So clearly does this theme occur throughout Calvin’s writings, that Battles concludes that for Calvin, “God is first and foremost our father, our divine parent exceeding all human parents.”

Calvin returns to this theme, because he believes that it is love, not law, that will finally draw the individual to God and change them. “But because our sluggishness is not sufficiently aroused by precepts, promises are added in order, by a certain sweetness, to entice us to love the precepts.” Knowing that we are loved “because God’s love is shedded into our hearts by the Holy Ghost,” we cannot do anything other than be drawn to God for help in holiness.

### Our obedience flows from God’s fatherly love: “Ero vobis in patrem.”

There can be no doubt that Calvin means for us to obey God, for we are meant to “serve him as a Father in holiness and righteousness.” But our obedience follows love for the Father, evoked by love from the Father. “When we are slow to obey God it is helpful to remember his gracious favors. For what could better stimulate our zeal for following what God commands?” Our obedience follows our understanding of God’s love for us as our Father, it does not precede it. “I will be a Father unto you... Paul has added it with this view, that a recognition of the great honor to which God has exalted us, might be a motive to stir us up to a more ardent desire for holiness.”

Indeed for Calvin, love must be the prime motive for obedience, since obedience is defined as our reciprocal love for God from the heart. “He wants our

---

73 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 271.
75 Institutes 2.5.10.
77 Commentary, Mark 1:14.
78 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 117.
79 Commentary, 2 Cor. 6:18; CO 50:83.
80 Wallace, Christian Life, 32.
hearts to be round and pure.”81 In our obedience toward him, that is, whole and having integrity of love through and through. Drawn to God by love, we are changed from the heart, for it is the “inner disposition of the heart” that is changed by God’s love.82 “True piety consists rather in a pure and true zeal which loves God altogether as Father.”83

God’s paternal love encourages our obedience in yet another way. For it is only out of his love that God accepts,84 and rewards by grace,85 our always imperfect obedience. As Barth points out, God’s “fatherly leniency” toward our imperfect obedience motivates our further obedience such that “we may meet and obey the divine summons with great and joyous alacrity.”86 Confident because of our Father’s love for us that our obedience is both graciously accepted and graciously rewarded, the Christian is spurred on to new heights of obedience.

God’s love leads ultimately to the obedience of God’s law. “We know that no one can with alacrity render service to God except he be allured by his paternal kindness.”87 When we find in our hearts any “idleness, any indifference” toward God’s law, we must think of the many benefits which our loving Father has lavished on us, so that we are moved to be “that much more motivated to serve him.”88 God’s love for us then leads finally to our loving obedience, the essence of sanctification. Leith explains this essential relationship in Calvin’s thought: “The end of the law is that we should love God. True obedience arises when we hold God for our Father and live as his children. This indicates that the law expresses the content of the personal response of sonship to the fatherly love of God on the part of his children.”89

**God’s love, not fear, is the primary motive for change**

In Calvin, fear, the reverential awe and filial respect for God, plays a vital role in the life of the believer.90 As a counter to disregard and disrespect for God, the believer

82 Institutes 3.3.17.
84 Institutes 3.19.4-5.
85 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 284.
86 Barth, *Theology of Calvin*, 196.
87 Commentary, Jonah 4:2.
88 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 42.
89 Leith, *Christian Life*, 47.
90 Battles says that Calvin taught “the true nature of pietas is seen in the two marks of believers: (1) honor, the obedience rendered to Him as Father; (2) fear, the service done Him as Lord.” Battles, *The Piety of John Calvin*, 14.
must live with the constant awareness that he ought not to provoke discipline from his
heavenly Father who stands ever-ready to bring needed correction. “When we see
how David was dealt with, alas, what will it be like for us? Therefore, let us consider
walking much more in the fear of God, in the future, not provoking him to anger….”
Yet the fear that the believer is to feel is directly related to a right apprehension of the
love of God. Calvin continues in the above sentence with the lesson we are to draw
from David, “… so that after he has pardoned us, bestowed his fatherly goodness on
us, he will not have to be so severe that there is nothing for us to do but gnash our
teeth.” We fear God precisely because we know that it is in his love that God will
bring discipline as often and as severely as it is needed to bring us back to him.

Further, the one who does not fear God rightly cannot know his love well.
“Micah is able to show in general how estranged the people were from the fear of
God. Therefore, it is no surprise that they were unable to taste God’s goodness.”
When we do not rightly fear God, we will find ourselves “frightened” by God as our
enemy. For without the right fear of God, “We will always shun God; his majesty
will frighten us, and when God addresses us, we will tremble.” Fear does have its
proper place in the affective life of the believer alongside the right understanding of
the paternal love of God. As Wallace observes, “Fear must always rest on a firm
basis of confidence in God’s mercy.”

As vital as fear is in the life of the believer, it is not the first mover in our
sanctification but rather a response to God in the midst of sanctification. Calvin,
against some popular notions in his day, taught that fear was not the primary motive
behind any religion, much less Christianity. “False indeed is what is said, that fear is
the cause of religion.” Calvin explains that love, rather than fear, serves to move us
toward God. “When the love of God is by us seen and known by faith, peace is given
to our consciences, so that they no longer tremble and fear.” God’s love then is the
firm basis for our sanctification.

91 J. Calvin, Sermons on 2 Samuel Chapters 1-13 (tr. D. Kelly; Edinburgh: Banner of Truth Trust,
1992) 542.
92 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 542.
93 Sermons on Micah, 111.
94 Sermons on Micah, 112.
95 Wallace, Christian Life, 223.
96 Commentary, Jonah 1:5.
97 Commentary, 1 John 4:18.
God’s love for us becomes a major theme in Calvin’s preaching
This love of God for his people is among Calvin’s most frequent themes in his sermons for good reason: “But first of all we see here which is the true manner of preaching the Gospel: namely to give knowledge of God’s love towards us.” As he introduces the Ten Commandments, Calvin, at times accused of being a legalist, strikes the theme of fatherly love at a point when a legalist might strike a very different chord. “God is revealed as liberal toward us, and ought that not attract us toward him even more?” Expounding the law he decry’s our indifference to it and offers what he knows will warm the believer to obedience:

Let us begin to enumerate the benefits which we have received from him: “Poor creature, how lax you are not to adhere to your God when he has revealed his will to you! Consider what you take from him. Consider the benefits which he has distributed until now.” There let each one of us examine how much we are indebted to him to the end that we might be that much more motivated to serve Him.

Again and again in his preaching, Calvin will sound this same note: know that you are the beloved of God and let that knowledge move you to reciprocate this love in your obedience.

Conclusions regarding the Father’s role in sanctification
Calvin saw that from first to last our sanctification flows from the grace of God and is gained by faith and not works. Given the picture he paints of human inability to obtain holiness, sanctification must lie in the hands of God. For the one who has elected us in love gracefully woos us with his love, by loving grace prompts our obedience, and by grace accepts our imperfect obedience with approval.

From this we will take another important principle forward in our search for the primary principles behind Calvin’s paradigm for sanctification:

**Principle 3: God’s Love.** Because God has elected us in love, therefore apprehend God’s love to move us to love God in holiness. Knowledge of God’s paternal love, most clearly seen in Christ and presented in covenant promises, serves as a primary motive force behind the believer’s submission to God in sanctification.

---

98 Sermons on Galatians, 313.
99 Barth, Theology of Calvin, 122; Leith, Christian Life, 152.
100 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 41.
101 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 42.
102 See for example, Sermons on Galatians, 27, 533.
103 Institutes 3.3.19.
For Calvin, if sluggishness is to be thrown aside, if apathy is to be overcome, if cold hearts are to be warmed then they must come to see the Father’s role in our sanctification moved by his gracious love for us. As this doctrine was proclaimed clearly from the pulpits of Geneva, it is little wonder that Calvin found audiences eager to hear of the love of a God who destines them for holiness.

God’s role in our sanctification does not stop with the Father, of course, for it is powerfully advanced by the Son as well.

II. The Role of God the Son

In Christ Calvin found not just another point of theology but the crown of his theology, as Niesel argues, “Jesus Christ...is the end of the law and the essence of the Gospel....Calvin in his theology is concerned fundamentally about this living Lord.”¹⁰⁴ This Christ-centered focus of Calvin’s is brought about by his view of the chasm that exists between God’s holiness and our complete lack of holiness. Into this gulf, Battles asserts, Calvin could only conceive of placing Christ to bridge the gap. “These two movements of the human mind lead to the knowledge of God and the knowledge of ourselves, set in antithesis to one another: the gulf between the all-holy God and the fallen sinner which only the incarnate Son of God can bridge.”¹⁰⁵

Calvin would therefore insist on Christ’s role in producing our holiness, in contrast to Rome which encouraged obtaining holiness through good works, satisfactions and observances of the mass.¹⁰⁶ “In the papacy...[t]hey must earn merits, so that they never find a true remedy to give them rest.”¹⁰⁷ This Roman emphasis, Calvin believed, would keep people from ever properly obtaining the double-knowledge needed to proceed in holiness,¹⁰⁸ so he countered Rome with the work of the Son.¹⁰⁹

¹⁰⁵ Battles, Interpreting Calvin, 149.
¹⁰⁶ “If anyone says that the justice received is not preserved and also not increased before God through good works....let him be anathema.” Canons of Trent, 45.
¹⁰⁷ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 269-70.
¹⁰⁸ Institutes 3.15.3.
¹⁰⁹ Institutes 3.11.1.
The Son’s goal in sanctification: restoring the imago Dei
Calvin recognized that Christ had one goal in our sanctification: “The end of regeneration is that Christ should reform us to God’s image.” This restoration of the image of God means that we would return to the “true order” (verum ordinem) and that Christ himself “restores us to true and complete integrity.” The perfect image of God to which we are restored is nothing other than the very image of Christ. Christ’s goal then is a natural one, to restore the order we once had, variously described in Calvin as the image of God, the true order, or even rightly understood, conformity to the law. Christ then was to take the broken “children of hell” that the human race had become and turn them instead into children of God. This Christ does by offering us full sanctification through a “double grace,” his mystical union with us through his offices of prophet, king and priest.

The Son unites to us: mystica unio
Calvin, perhaps following the lead of Bucer, attributed great importance to our mystical union with Christ for the advancement of our holiness. “Grafting designates not only a conformity of example but a secret union [arcanam coniunctionem], by which we are joined to him.” While Calvin acknowledges the mysterious nature of this union, he does define it as union with the human nature of Christ, as Wallace concludes, “Our participation in the sanctification of Christ depends on our union with the human nature of Christ.” This union, though powerful, should not be mistaken for physical union, for Christ is united with us spiritually. We children

110 Institutes 1.15.4.
111 Commentary, Gen. 4:2.
112 Institutes 1.15.4.
113 Institutes 1.15.4.
115 Institutes 2.12.2; Commentary, Eph. 1:19.
117 Commentary, Rom. 6:5; CO 49:106.
118 “For we hold ourselves to be united with Christ by the secret (arcana) power of his Spirit.” Institutes 3.11.5; “How this happens far exceeds the limits of my understanding.” Letter to Peter Martyr, CO 15:723.
119 Wallace, Christian Life, 17. “This life resides in his flesh so that it may be drawn from it.” Commentary, John 6:51.
120 Calvin’s wording regarding this mystical union has invited debate over its exact nature. In particular his use of the term substantia may cause confusion. For instance, in his commentary on Eph. 5:31 (from 1548), he writes, “As Eve was formed out of the substance of her husband, and thus was a part of himself; so, if we are the true members of Christ, we share his substance [substantiae], and by this intercourse unite into one body.” (CO 51:225) After his debates with Andreas Osiander (Wendel, Origins, 23), Calvin became more circumspect and was at least careful to define his terms more clearly.
of God “are not born of flesh and blood but of the Spirit through faith,” for it is faith which engrafts us into Christ.\textsuperscript{122} Indeed apart from union with Christ, all that he has done for us is “useless and of no value for us.”\textsuperscript{123}

Through this union, which Calvin typically calls “engrafting,”\textsuperscript{124} the benefits of Christ’s holiness become ours as his life continually flows into ours, transforming us into his image as the template of his life impresses its image onto our lives.\textsuperscript{125} “Therefore, that joining together of Head and members, that indwelling of Christ in our hearts—in short, that mystical union \textit{[mystica unio]}—are accorded by us the highest degree of importance, so that Christ, having been made ours, makes us sharers with him in the gifts with which he has been endowed.”\textsuperscript{126} Our union with Christ is so potent that we not only gain power and nourishment from him, “but we pass from our own nature into his.”\textsuperscript{127} It is this union, not our good works, which effects the transformation of our character.\textsuperscript{128} United with Christ we are transformed by our communion with him,\textsuperscript{129} which he makes daily more complete, giving us confidence to hope for holiness.\textsuperscript{130} We are so dependent on our union with Christ for our sanctification that Spijker declares that, for Calvin, sanctification of life \textit{is} the result of communion with Christ.\textsuperscript{131}

The union with Christ serves to sanctify us by uniting us both to the death of Christ for our mortification and to the life of Christ for our vivification, apart from

---

One year after Osiander’s death, writing in his 1553 commentary on John 17:21, Calvin clarifies by denying that Christ conveys his substance to us: “Hence, too, we infer that we are \textit{one} with the Son of God; not because he conveys his substance to us, but because, by the power of his Spirit, he imparts to us his life and all the blessings which he has received from the Father.” This important clarification makes a clear denial using the controversial term \textit{substantia}: “non quia suam in nos substantiam transfundat” (CO 47:387). In the 1559 \textit{Institutes} we read, “The fact, then, that he [Osiander] insists so violently upon essential righteousness and essential indwelling of Christ in us has this result: first, he holds that God pours himself into us as a gross mixture, just as he fancies a physical eating in the Lord’s Supper.” (\textit{Institutes} 3.11.10) This effort at clarification led Niesel to conclude that Calvin avoided teaching “the absorption of the pious mystic into the sphere of the divine being.” (Niesel, \textit{Theology of Calvin}, 126).

\textsuperscript{121} \textit{Institutes} 4.17.33, 3.1.1; J. Calvin, \textit{Sermons on Genesis Chapters 1-11} (tr. R. R. McGregor; Edinburgh: Banner of Truth Trust, 2009) 200-01.
\textsuperscript{122} \textit{Institutes} 2.13.5.
\textsuperscript{123} \textit{Institutes} 3.1.1.
\textsuperscript{124} Tamburello, \textit{Union with Christ}, 85. Cf. \textit{Commentary}, Isa. 26:19; John 1:12; 1 Cor. 12:13; \textit{Institutes} 3.2.25, 3.6.3, 3.15.6, 4.15.1, 4.16.12.
\textsuperscript{125} \textit{Commentary}, 1 John 2:6.
\textsuperscript{126} \textit{Institutes} 3.11.10.
\textsuperscript{127} \textit{Commentary}, Rom. 6:5.
\textsuperscript{128} \textit{Commentary}, John 17:19.
\textsuperscript{129} \textit{Institutes} 3.14.4.
\textsuperscript{130} \textit{Institutes} 3.2.24.
\textsuperscript{131} Spijker, “Bucer’s Influence on Calvin,” 35.
whom we can do nothing. Christ’s union with us allows his death to have the impact of crucifying our own flesh. Not that our sin is killed all at once but that the “reign of sin and death ceases.” So too, by the power of union with the life of Christ, are we made more and more alive spiritually, “transferring his virtue unto us, he may quicken us to spiritual life, sanctify us by his Spirit.”

The relationship between union with Christ and justification

There is a contemporary debate concerning the exact relationship between union with Christ and justification in Calvin’s theology regarding the ordo salutis. One side claims that in Calvin justification precedes union, while the other asserts that union with Christ comes first. We will examine five aspects of this argument, stating them first from the justification-prior viewpoint and then offering a union-prior response.

1) Calvin wrote more extensively on justification than union so justification appears to be primary. However, since justification, not union, was the central debate with Rome, polemical success would dictate a focus on the former. Further, Calvin does regularly teach on union.

2) Calvin presents justification as “the foundation for sanctification,” and so it must precede union. The justification-prior advocates cite Calvin: “[Justification] is the main hinge on which religion turns.” Gaffin counters, that while justification may be the hinge, it is a hinge “anchored in union,” and so neither precedes union nor

---

132 Institutes 2.3.9, 2.16.19.
133 Institutes 2.16.7.
134 Commentary, Rom. 5:21.
135 Institutes 2.16.16.
137 Horton, Covenant and Salvation, 139.
138 Gaffin, “Calvin’s Soteriology,” 75.
139 Wenger, “New Perspectives,” 327.
140 Institutes 3.1.1, 3.2.24, 3.11.10, 3.11.23, 3.17.8; Commentary, John 6:51; 15:1, 5; 17:26; Rom. 8:4, 28-30; Gal. 5:24; Eph. 5:32; 2 Peter 1:5.
141 Fesko, “Sanctification and Union,” 201.
142 Institutes 3.11.1.
causes sanctification.\textsuperscript{143} It is union which actually serves as the foundation for both sanctification and justification.\textsuperscript{144} Calvin writes that to attain the righteousness of Christ one must “first possess Christ,” for it is our “sharing in Christ, which justifies us,” and which makes us partakers “in his sanctification.”\textsuperscript{145} Being “implanted in him” then, leads to our sanctification.\textsuperscript{146} “There is no sanctification apart from communion with Christ.”\textsuperscript{147}

3) Calvin speaks of faith as prior to union so justification must be prior to union as well.\textsuperscript{148} Calvin is cited, “The fellowship which we have with Christ is the consequence of faith.”\textsuperscript{149} Since faith precedes union, Horton avers, then “justification through faith alone is the fountain of union with Christ.”\textsuperscript{150} The union-prior advocates affirm that, in Calvin, faith precedes and achieves our union with Christ.\textsuperscript{151} “All that he possesses is nothing to us until we grow into one body with him. It is true that we obtain this by faith.”\textsuperscript{152} However, they counter, faith and justification are not equivalent.\textsuperscript{153} Rather, faith, grounding our union, leads to our justification. “You see that our righteousness is not in us but in Christ, that we possess it only because we are partakers in Christ.”\textsuperscript{154}

4) Calvin seems to assert the foundational priority of justification over the rest of the \textit{ordo salutis}.\textsuperscript{155} Horton writes that justification serves as the “basis for” our union with Christ.\textsuperscript{156} Calvin, at first read, seems to concur: “It is necessary that the righteousness of faith alone so precede in order, and be so pre-eminent in degree, that nothing can go before it or obscure it.”\textsuperscript{157} The union-prior advocates counter that, on closer examination, union precedes justification in Calvin’s thought.\textsuperscript{158} It is our union with Christ, variously described as, to “partake of Christ,”\textsuperscript{159} being “engrafted into his

\begin{table}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\textsuperscript{143} Gaffin, “Calvin’s Soteriology,” 74-75. \\
\textsuperscript{144} Muller, \textit{Reformed Tradition}, 211. \\
\textsuperscript{145} \textit{Institutes} 3.16.1. \\
\textsuperscript{146} Commentary, John 15:1. \\
\textsuperscript{147} Institutes 3.14.4; CO 2:566, “…sine Christi communicacione nulla est sanctificatio.” \\
\textsuperscript{148} Horton, \textit{Covenant and Salvation}, 143. \\
\textsuperscript{149} Commentary, Eph. 3:17. \\
\textsuperscript{150} Horton, \textit{Covenant and Salvation}, 143. \\
\textsuperscript{151} Gaffin, “Calvin’s Soteriology,” 71. \\
\textsuperscript{152} Institutes 3.1.1. \\
\textsuperscript{153} Muller, \textit{Reformed Tradition}, 209. \\
\textsuperscript{154} Institutes 3.11.23. \\
\textsuperscript{155} Fesko, “Sanctification and Union,” 201. \\
\textsuperscript{156} Horton, \textit{Covenant and Salvation}, 143. \\
\textsuperscript{158} Muller, \textit{Reformed Tradition}, 209, note 27; Gaffin, “Calvin’s Soteriology,” 72. \\
\textsuperscript{159} Institutes 3.11.1. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
body,“160 being “planted together”161 with him and “become[ing] ours to dwell with us,”162 which allows us to “receive a double grace”163 of justification and sanctification, so that his “righteousness overwhems”164 our sin and makes us holy.165 Calvin teaches that justification is causally dependent upon our union with Christ. “I confess that we are deprived of this utterly incomparable good [justification] until [donec] Christ is made ours.”166 “He only begins to love us, when [dum] we are united to the body of his beloved Son.”167

5) If union is prior to justification it poses a threat to imputed righteousness.168 The union-prior advocates counter that union with Christ, rather than destroying, establishes our imputed righteousness,169 which is “shared with believers through their spiritual union with him.”170 “Forensic justification is conceivable for Calvin only on grounds of communion with Christ by grace through faith.”171 Calvin seems clear, for it is only as we are joined in “mystical union” with Christ that “his righteousness may be imputed to us.”172

Muller offers a helpful corrective for both parties regarding a proper understanding of Calvin and the ordo salutis. By framing the question carefully in the sixteenth-century context he demonstrates that while Calvin did have a concern to understand aspects of an ordo salutis, he was not concerned with establishing a rigid chronology, as are contemporary systematic theologians.173 We concur with Muller who shows that Calvin had a loose, causal ordo salutis, which asserts union by faith as causally prior to, and the foundation of, justification and sanctification.174 “We must be united to our Lord Jesus Christ, before [devant] we can be in God’s favor.”175

160 Institutes 3.2.24.
161 Commentary, Gal. 5:24.
162 Institutes 3.1.1.
163 Institutes 3.11.1.
164 Institutes 3.2.24.
165 Commentary, Gal. 5:24.
166 Institutes 3.11.10; CO 2:540.
167 Commentary, John 17:26; CO 47:391.
169 Garcia, “Imputation and the Christology of Union,” 249.
170 Campbell, Paul and Union with Christ, 404.
171 Muller, Reformed Tradition, 209, note 27.
172 Institutes 3.11.10.
173 Commentary, Rom. 8:28-30; Muller, Reformed Tradition, 165-66, 240, 281.
174 Muller, Reformed Tradition, 240.
175 Sermons on Galatians, 488-89; CO 50:563.
The Son works a “double grace”

Calvin taught that we are both justified and sanctified by grace as a kind of “double grace.” Calvin taught that we are both justified and sanctified by grace as a kind of “double grace.”

“By partaking of him, we principally receive a double grace: namely, that being reconciled to God through Christ’s blamelessness, we may have in heaven instead of a Judge a gracious Father; and secondly, that sanctified by Christ’s spirit we may cultivate blamelessness and purity of life.” This double grace, coming through the work of Christ, means that we can only look to Christ for our continued progress in holiness. “Let then the faithful learn to embrace him, not only for justification, but also for sanctification.” Calvin could not imagine Christ beginning a work in our justification then not completing it in our sanctification.

Justification, through both the forgiveness of sin and the imputation of righteousness only from Christ, grants us the position of being righteous in the presence of God. Justified before the presence of God, we are able to enter into relationship with him, rather than flee from him, for we now stand before him by grace alone in the work of Christ. Thus in relationship with God through justification, God continues the work he has begun, through Christ, by applying the sanctifying work of Christ to our lives that we might grow in piety.

It is both improper and impossible to tear asunder the two concepts as though having been justified by faith we now progress in sanctification by our good works. “We cannot be gratuitously justified by faith alone, without our also living holy lives. For these graces are attached to each other as it were by an inseparable bond.” Calvin has in mind defending the reality that good works flow from, rather than are hindered by, free justification when he explains the necessity of co-joining, while yet distinguishing, justification and sanctification.

Why, then, are we justified by faith? Because by faith we apprehend the righteousness of Christ, which alone reconciles us to God. This faith, however, you cannot apprehend without at the same time apprehending sanctification; for Christ “is made unto us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption” (1 Cor. 1:30). Christ, therefore, justifies no

177 Institutes 3.11.1. Cf. 3.11.6.
178 Commentary, Rom. 8:13.
179 Gleason, Reformed Spirituality, 57.
180 Institutes 3.11.2.
181 Institutes 2.16.3.
182 Institutes 3.11.1.
man without also sanctifying him. These blessings are conjoined by a perpetual and inseparable tie.\footnote{Institutes 3.16.1.}

Calvin, ever-warring against the notion of sanctification by human effort through the idolatrous triumvirate of “satisfactions, superstitions and idolatry,” opposed to them this “double grace” which includes our entire sanctification by grace. This doctrine of sanctification by grace left the believer doubly thankful, doubly humble and in a position then to receive from Christ even more grace to draw them along in sanctification.

**The Son works continually in our sanctification as Prophet, King and Priest**

Christ advances his people’s holiness in his offices of Prophet, King and Priest.\footnote{Institutes 2.15.1.}

This threefold office, unmentioned in the 1536 *Institutes*, appeared in the 1539 edition and then was fully developed in the 1559 version, perhaps under the influence of Martin Bucer’s *Commentary on the Gospels*.\footnote{Institutes 2.15.1.} In these offices Christ continually works to purify his people who are, without doubt, still deeply in need of daily purification and just as certainly assured that Christ will finish their holiness.\footnote{Commentary, John 8:32.}

As our Prophet, Christ continually teaches us “everything worth knowing” through his Spirit.\footnote{Institutes 4.8.12.} We come by no helpful truth of salvation by our own effort, but all is revealed by Christ as our teacher who “impresses his word on our hearts by his Spirit.”\footnote{Commentary, John 8:30.} The truth taught to us by our Prophet is not bare information but has real power to transform us by freeing us from the slavery to sin, including sinful thought patterns, “so that, loosed from the snares of Satan, we willingly obey righteousness.”\footnote{Institutes 2.15.4.}

As our King, Christ rules over us, subduing all his enemies including the world, the devil and our own flesh, and equipping us for battle, that his kingdom might advance both within us and outside of us. “Now he arms and equips us with his power, adorns us with his beauty and magnificence, enriches us with his wealth.”\footnote{Institutes 2.15.2.} It is as our King that Christ constantly “enriches his people with all things necessary
for the eternal salvation of souls and fortifies them with courage to stand unconquerable against all the assaults of spiritual enemies.”

As our High Priest, Christ has interceded for us, through the consecration of offering himself, so we are made partakers of his High-Priestly holiness. As our Priest only Christ can purify us, that in “purging away our defilements” he might further our sanctification, which the saints could never do. Christ then is completely active, not only in the establishing, but in completing the sanctification of his people.

Conclusions regarding the Son’s role in sanctification

Calvin puts forth the efficacy of Christ’s sanctification of his people both to defend the glory of Christ and to steer believers away from attempts to obtain holiness through the use of the false Roman methodology, which produced not holiness but hypocrites. Defending the glory of Christ, Calvin would write with fury against all efforts to diminish His role as sole savior. “Let Papists now go and proudly vaunt of their free-will, but let us, who are conscious of our own slavery, glory in none but Christ our Deliverer.”

Calvin hated Roman devices not only for the harm done to the glory of Christ but the harm done to believers, who were led astray in the quest for holiness when only the cross of Christ could help. While the Roman church offered satisfactions and indulgences, Calvin fought back, showing that holiness could be found nowhere but in the blood of Christ. “Indulgences proclaim: Sanctification, otherwise insufficient, is perfected by the martyrs. John says that ‘all the saints have washed their robes...in the blood of the Lamb.’”

Calvin wanted to steer his readers away from any idea that they can sanctify themselves by mere human effort but pointed them rather to Christ. We can add

---

192 Institutes 2.15.4.
193 Institutes 2.15.6.
194 Institutes 2.15.6.
195 Institutes 3.20.21.
196 Institutes 4.10.12, 4.13.7.
197 Commentary, John 8:32.
198 Institutes 4.18.3.
199 Institutes 3.5.2.
200 Commenting on 2 Cor. 7:11, Calvin will pause to take Erasmus to task for translating ἀπολογίαν as “satisfaction” because, “ignorant persons, misled by the ambiguity of the term, have applied it to popish satisfactions.” Calvin could not tolerate a translation of the biblical text that might support a Roman approach to sanctification. He takes the trouble to correct this single word, preferring Jerome’s
nothing to the glorious work of Christ to sanctify ourselves. True, the sinner may repent of sin, but he may not offer any work as a “satisfaction” for that sin. Calvin assures his readers that when Daniel (Dan. 4:27) seems to indicate that Nebuchadnezzar might, by his own effort of showing mercy to the poor, make satisfaction for his sin, this could not be the case: “Banish the thought that there should be any other ransom than the blood of Christ!” “Banish the thought,” cries Calvin, for anything that would subtract from the glory of Christ in either justification or sanctification must not even be considered as a possible solution.

Because Calvin wants believers to see that Christ is, as it were, the only grounds for our sanctification, apart from human effort, he will focus our attention on Christ’s supremacy more and more clearly in his teaching and preaching.

For this is eternal life: to know the one true God, and him whom he has sent, Jesus Christ, in whom he has formed the beginning, the middle and the end of our salvation. It is he who is Isaac, the beloved Son of the Father, who was offered in sacrifice….He is the vigilant shepherd Jacob, taking such great care of the sheep that are in his care….He is the faithful captain and guide Joshua, to lead us into the promised land. He is the noble and victorious King David subjecting with his hand all rebellious power.

In Christ we gain the knowledge of the glorious mercy and love of the Father, along with his justice, all played out in the cross. In Christ we also gain a knowledge of ourselves. As we gaze upon his perfect obedience, we see what we are designed to be, the true order for humanity. In the cross we see the agony of how far we have fallen short of the mark. We see, as well, our helplessness at self-improvement, our total inability to sanctify ourselves. We are reduced to humble dependence on the glorious Christ for our sanctification.

III. The Role of God the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit gives us a new will

For Calvin it is the Holy Spirit who brings the electing love of the Father and the gracious work of the Son to bear in our lives. It is the Holy Spirit who actually
effects the change in the human will, converting it from a bad to a good will. “Hence it appears that God’s grace…is the rule of the Spirit to direct and regulate man’s will. The Spirit cannot regulate without correcting, without reforming, without renewing….At the same time a new will is said to be created in man.”

205 Our sanctification is dependent, foundationally, on this work of God through his Spirit which allows us to respond to him with repentance. 206 It is the Spirit who not only restrains our will from evil but also regenerates us to walk in righteous obedience. 207 The Spirit, having begun the good work of regeneration by the shaping of a new will in the individual, presses on in this work by producing faith.

The Holy Spirit produces faith
The Holy Spirit is the one who brings about the inception and growth of faith as his “principle work.” 208 “For the Spirit is not only the initiator of faith, but increases it by degrees, until by it he leads us to the Kingdom of Heaven.” 209 Human effort can never produce faith, no matter how often we are commanded to believe. 210 It is the Holy Spirit who, giving us eyes to see and ears to hear, works in our hearts “to conceive, sustain, nourish, and establish faith.” 211 Barth rightly concludes that, for Calvin, faith comes as God’s imposition upon us. “It is the nature of faith to pierce the ears, close the eyes, wait upon the promise, and turn aside from all thoughts of human worth or merit.”

212 It is then through the work of the Holy Spirit that all the benefits of Christ are attained by us through faith, 213 including assurance of our adoption as God’s children. 214 As Muller says, “Faith is a gift that awakens all the powers of the soul, intellect and will, so that both are enlightened and moved, each in its own way, to grasp the gift of God in Christ.” 215 Since faith is “a firm and certain knowledge of

205 Institutes 2.5.15.
207 Institutes 2.5.14.
208 Institutes 3.1.4.
209 Institutes 3.2.33.
210 Institutes 3.2.35.
212 Barth, Theology of Calvin, 168.
213 Institutes 3.3.1.
214 Commentary, Rom. 8:16.
215 Muller, Unaccommodated, 172.
divine benevolence toward us…sealed upon our hearts through the Holy Spirit,” 216 
this increase in faith is both the measure of and the result of sanctification. 217

The Holy Spirit unites us to Christ
Calvin sees the Holy Spirit as the one through whom the believer is given real 
spiritual unity with Christ. 218 “To sum up, the Holy Spirit is the bond by which Christ 
effectually unites us to himself.” 219 This union is effected through faith, as 
Tamburello asserts, “The Holy Spirit brings the elect, through the hearing of the 
Gospel, to faith; in so doing, the Spirit engrafts them into Christ.” 220 It is the Holy 
Spirit who, by making us “true members of Christ,” 221 then unites us to his life which 
sanctifies us, “that as he has sanctified himself on our account, we may also 
through his Spirit be made partakers of the same sanctification.” 222

The Holy Spirit directly mortifies and vivifies
Calvin will argue that the very work of sanctification—mortification and 
vivification—are carried on for us by the Holy Spirit. Against all the Roman 
inventions, useless to fight our concupiscence, Calvin offers the work of the Spirit, 
who is not only “opposed to the old man and to the flesh” but works in us for the 
“reformation of all the parts.” 223 Indeed it is the “Spirit of sanctification through 
whom we are consecrated as temples to God,” 224 so that we will no longer be 
“dragged to and fro by wandering lusts.” 225 As Niesel summarized, “The death of the 
old man and the resurrection of the new…happens through the Spirit of Christ who 
binds us to Him and evokes in us faith and obedience.” 226

While putting to death concupiscence in us, the Spirit works at the same time 
to vivify a new principle of life within us, such that “we are no longer actuated by 
ourselves, but are ruled by his action and prompting.” 227 It is the Spirit who washes 
us with clean water to make us clean and to make us “fruitful to bring forth the buds

216 Institutes 3.2.7.
217 Wallace, Christian Life, 327.
218 Institutes 1.15.5.
219 Institutes 3.1.1.
220 Tamburello, Union with Christ, 86.
221 Institutes 4.1.7.
222 Commentary, Jer. 11:17; Institutes 3.1.3, 3.1.1.
223 Institutes 2.1.9.
224 Institutes 2.2.16.
225 Institutes 2.5.14.
226 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 128.
227 Institutes 3.1.3.
of righteousness.”228 It is the Spirit who kindles a holy fire within us so that “he enflames our hearts with the love of God and with zealous devotion.”229 It is the Spirit of sanctification who not only “quickens and nourishes us” but sows the heavenly seed in us.230 It is the Holy Spirit who brings to bear the very holiness of Jesus Christ which has a powerful cleansing and purifying effect.231 From the Spirit flows our regeneration, justification and sanctification.232 Indeed we are so dependent upon the Holy Spirit to transform us that we must ask God to “help us through his Holy Spirit, and not simply for him to make up for our frailty, but for him to begin and perfect everything in us.”233

While it is the Spirit who does the work of sanctification, Calvin is clear that we are to play a role inasmuch as we are to submit to the Spirit’s work.234 Thus when Scripture warns us to “grieve not the Holy Spirit of God” (Eph. 4:30), Calvin will agree that we are commanded to submit to the Spirit’s direction. “As God has sealed us by his Spirit, we grieve him when we do not follow his guidance, but pollute ourselves by wicked passions.”235 However, even this submission by faith236 is part of the Spirit’s work, so that “the Spirit claims for himself alone the office of sanctifying.”237 Calvin, always cautious of appearing to attribute sanctification to any work in man’s nature, drives home the point that our submission is drawn from us by God’s Spirit. Commenting on 1 Thess. 5:19, “quench not the Spirit,” a text which clearly lends itself to emphasizing human responsibility in sanctification, Calvin goes to great lengths to show that we cannot even truly quench the Spirit when he is at work.

Those, however, who infer from this that it is in man’s option either to quench or to cherish the light that is presented to him, so that they detract from the efficacy of grace, and extol the powers of free will, reason on false grounds. For…God works efficaciously in his elect…and…causes them to see, opens the eyes of their heart, and keeps them open….What God commands by Paul’s mouth, He himself accomplishes inwardly.238

228 Institutes 3.1.3.
229 Institutes 3.1.3.
230 Institutes 3.2.2.
231 Commentary, John 12:19.
233 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 274.
234 Gleason, Reformed Spirituality, 61.
235 Commentary, Eph. 4:30.
236 Marcel, “Justification and Sanctification,” 139.
237 Institutes 2.5.11.
238 Commentary, 1 Thess. 5:19.
What then is left for us to do in submission? It is our part to ask help from the Lord. Yet even when Calvin examines our call to repentance, he finds here again not human effort at improving ourselves but the Holy Spirit at work. “For although we are urged to come to him, we would remain obstinate, and never take the right steps unless we are touched by his Holy Spirit. Therefore, repentance is already a gift of God.” Calvin even hesitates to call our role cooperation, which seems to imply more innate ability than we possess. All our good works then, including repentance, come from the Spirit who “forms us anew unto good works,” leaving finally no grounds for claiming merit.

The Holy Spirit renews our mind

The Spirit also powerfully brings about our vivification by renewing our very minds that we might come to a true two-fold knowledge of God and self. It is impossible, apart from the Spirit, to ever come to the truth of God and self, for these truths are not accessible to the natural mind, which is blind to the light of the Gospel, until they are “enlightened by the Spirit of God.” The Spirit allows us to see ourselves as we are. As Wendel points out, “Sanctification consists partly then, in recognizing how far we still are in fact from true righteousness.” The Spirit, in renewing our minds, allows us to comprehend and apply the Word of God to our lives, “sealing our minds with that very doctrine which is commended by the gospel.” Indeed, “unless animated by the power of the Spirit,” the Word would be of no profit. Apart from the Spirit we could never derive right doctrine from Scripture, for unless “the Spirit of wisdom be present, to have God’s word in our hands will avail little or nothing.” With Holy Spirit illumination, the minds of the elect may also resist the temptation of Satan since they are able “readily to distinguish between light and darkness, because they had the Spirit as their guide.” And what is it from the Scriptures that we learn of God by the Spirit? “This knowledge of divine love towards us is instilled into our

239 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 567.
240 BLW, 195.
241 Commentary, Rom. 6:14.
243 Commentary, 1 Cor. 2:14; 1 John 2:20.
244 Wendel, Origins, 243.
245 Institutes 1.9.1.
246 Commentary, Ezek. 2:2.
247 Commentary, 1 John 4:21.
248 Commentary, 1 John 1:21.
hearts by the Spirit of God.”

The Holy Spirit does not just communicate bare information to us about God’s love but moves us to respond to that knowledge of God’s love with a reciprocal love toward him.

**Conclusions regarding the Holy Spirit’s role in sanctification**

The Spirit becomes Calvin’s refutation of the Roman technologies of sanctification.

It is not human assent to the teachings of the Church that produces faith (“implicit” faith), but the Spirit. It is not the human effort of meditating upon Christ that unites us to him, but the Spirit. It is not attempts at fasting that mortify our flesh, but the Spirit. It is not our effort at good deeds that make us better people, but the Spirit. It is not our power to understand God in nature, nor even our ability to see our own frailty that brings us to the true knowledge of God and self, but the Spirit. Hence we must “lay aside all confidence in our own abilities, and seek light from heaven,” allowing ourselves to be governed and directed by the Spirit of God.

We are entirely dependent on God, not human effort, to make us holy. “Indeed, instead of being able to perfect to the end what we have been commanded, we don’t even know where to begin. We can’t even conceive of one single good idea until God has reformed us, until he has drawn us to himself and given us the heart to do it; and then at the same time he must add the ability to put into practice what we will.”

**Conclusion**

From this study of God’s role in the sanctification of his people, we have seen that God is the author of our sanctification. In describing God’s role in our sanctification, Calvin means to help lay the groundwork for our understanding of the first half of the two-fold knowledge, knowledge of God. As Jones has argued persuasively, Calvin meant for knowledge of God to precede knowledge of self logically, if not rhetorically, in the *Institutes.*

Man must see God rightly in his glory before he can...
see himself accurately in his need. 255 “It is evident that a man never attains to a true self-knowledge until he has previously contemplated the face of God, and come down after such contemplation to look into himself [se ipsum inspiciendum descendat].” 256 As Torrance comments on this passage, he concludes that, according to Calvin, one cannot see oneself rightly until he has first seen the grace of God in sanctification. “A true knowledge of man is not only reflexive of the divine self-revelation but also of the divine action in grace. There is no true knowledge of man, therefore, unless it is conceived as grounded upon the downward motion of grace.” 257 It is only in knowing God that we truly know ourselves, as Calvin concludes in his 1560 French Institutes: “C’est qu’en connoissant Dieu, chacun de nous aussi se cognoisse.” 258

We are not brought to this God-given two-fold knowledge for knowledge’s sake. Rather, this true knowledge of God above ourselves brings us, as Richard says, to “the humble dependence upon God.” 259 That is we are forced by God in this knowledge to acknowledge him as Savior and turn to him, away from human effort and Rome, for help in holiness. 260 For in describing human sanctification first in terms of God’s role, as Father, Son and Spirit, Calvin very much means to force man away from his natural, but erroneously exalted, view of his own role and to see, rather, that God is the one who plays the exalted role in human sanctification. 261 As Battles concludes, “The lesson of this knowledge is that we learn to humble ourselves, cast ourselves before God, seek His mercy.” 262 Turning to God for help in sanctification, we are transformed by the mercy of God as we see him and ourselves rightly, our hearts are round and pure, the image of Christ is established in us and from whole hearts we love the God who has loved us so well. 263

The implications of the two principles we have discovered in this chapter for Calvin’s teaching and training for the men of the Genevan Academy are profound and sweeping when contrasted to the sixteenth-century Roman understanding of sanctification. To believe Calvin one must simply discard all Roman methods of advancing in holiness. Gone are satisfactions and indulgences. Gone are good works

255 Dowey, Knowledge of God, 18-19.
256 Institutes 1.1.2. Cf. Commentary, 1 Cor. 8:2.
257 Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 14.
258 CO 3:37.
259 Richard, Spirituality of John Calvin, 99.
260 Commentary, Mic. 7:9.
261 Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 56.
262 Battles, The Piety of John Calvin, 16.
263 Wallace, Christian Life, 322.
for merit. Gone are prayers to Mary and the saints. None but God can help. If the pastors of the Academy are to become holy men, they will need to look to God, Father, Son and Spirit, in deep and more dependent ways than they had been previously taught. Calvin will not, however, dismiss all external means as aids to sanctification; rather he will replace Roman methods with biblical methods. For Calvin will only offer approaches to sanctification which are God’s own, that is, which are taught or derived directly from Scripture, such as prayer, the Word, church discipline and sacraments to replace the human inventions of Rome.

In understanding Calvin’s view of God’s role in our sanctification, one is forced to a clear conclusion: man is helpless to sanctify himself apart from the work of God. This knowledge, of man’s inability and God’s ability, is a two-fold knowledge that is driven home even further by Calvin’s view of anthropology in sanctification.
Chapter II -- Calvin’s Anthropology and Its Implications for Sanctification

“In stare tantum Dei misericordia, quum a nobis ipsis non nisi mali simus.”

Introduction

In order to understand Calvin’s view of sanctification, one must understand his anthropology, for therein we discover the ideal state of human holiness, the current condition of sinfulness and the inability of man to help himself toward holiness. Calvin will paint a picture of man in four states: creation, sin, grace and glory, all in order to help us gain a true understanding of God and ourselves. This double-knowledge allows us to understand both, “in this sad ruin what our nature in its corruption and deformity is like” and also what God can do to change us “that we may be made like God.” This understanding, which comes by grace alone, leads man to an inescapable conclusion: he must stop trusting in his own goodness, or his own ability to make himself good, and instead continually turn to God’s grace for help in holiness. “Man, rendered utterly destitute in his own right, should learn to depend wholly upon God.”

Calvin would war against all the more flattering views of man not only among the Scholastics but even with the humanists, such as Erasmus. Calvin leaned heavily on Augustine for his anthropology, who himself fought with Pelagius to establish the depth of the fallen nature. Calvin went to great lengths to prove the absoluteness of the fallen nature, a logical necessity if he is to refute Catholic approaches to sanctification, which depended on some human ability to perform rites such as satisfaction and penance. The absoluteness of the fall also established the necessity of his alternate approach to sanctification by grace.

---

1 *Institutes* 2.2.11, “By God’s mercy alone we stand, since by ourselves we are nothing but evil.”
2 *Institutes* 1.15.1.
3 *Commentary*, Col. 3:10.
4 *Institutes* 2.2.9.
5 *Institutes* 2.3.5.
6 It was in order to refute an argument in Erasmus’s *De libero arbitrio* that Calvin wrote: “Our adversaries usually say that after we have accepted the first grace, then our own efforts co-operate with subsequent grace.” *Institutes* 2.3.11.
7 *Institutes* 2.3.5, 2.3.14.
8 This polemical necessity explains the length of this argument in the *Institutes* (eight chapters with 159 sections) and his frequent use of the Church Fathers (with over 75 mentions of Augustine on this topic).
In all his anthropology, Calvin will repeat two themes, as Torrance rightly observes, “The purpose of a Christian anthropology is twofold: by pointing the believer to his original creation in the image of God to produce gratitude, and by pointing him to his present miserable condition to produce humility.” It is precisely these two movements, prostrated before God in humility and exalting God in thanks, that we argue are the keys to Calvin’s entire scheme of sanctification. Humbled, we no longer rely on our own righteousness; exalting in God, we turn to him for help.

In each of the four states Calvin drives home the necessity of this double-knowledge. In presenting man in original creation, he shows both how good God is to create us with such majesty and from what a lofty height man has fallen, so that man might humbly seek help from God to return to holiness. Man’s fallen state, when viewed next to his created glory, proves that no human effort could ever repair the damage done in the fall, thus requiring man to turn to God for sanctification. The state of grace reveals a transformation so profound, in contrast to the state of sin, that clearly no human effort could produce it nor sustain it, leading man to a constant reliance on grace to conquer sin. The state of glory shows that man’s current state is so far from perfection that, again, he must rely on God to bring him to holiness.

To help us toward holiness, Calvin will try to lead us to an accurate two-fold knowledge of God and ourselves. Man, who consists of both body and soul, suffers the effects of the fall in both. But it is the soul, comprised of reason and will, with will subordinate to reason, that most needs reformation from its corruption. Both our reason and will are affected by our rejection of the truth, so that we no longer see ourselves, or God, rightly. “Having forsaken the truth of God, they turned to the vanity of their own reason…[and were carried away] into errors and delusions.” Central to Calvin’s understanding of sanctification then is the necessity of reversing this delusion, to restore man to a true double-knowledge which leads to both humility

alongside of Jerome, Chrysostom, Bernard and others) and Scripture (5 verses cited in just one of the typical 159 sections, 2.1.9), all used to build an unassailable case for his view of man.

9 Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 13.
10 Institutes 1.15.2.
11 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 65. Cf. Institutes 1.15.7.
12 A. N. S. Lane, “Calvin’s Doctrine of Assurance,” Vox Evangelica 11 (1979) 42.
13 Commentary, Rom. 1:21.
regarding our own virtue and gratitude as we turn to the grace of God for holiness. “By God’s mercy alone we stand, since by ourselves we are nothing but evil.”

**Calvin’s understanding of the double-knowledge**

The precise etymology of Calvin’s understanding of the double-knowledge is uncertain. If Battles is correct, it may be that Calvin’s view of the double-knowledge was shaped in part by his own personal encounter with the text of Rom. 1:18-25. Yet, as Serene Jones makes clear, the same idea was used by many before Calvin, from whom he may have borrowed the concept. We read, for example, in Clement of Alexandria, “If one knows oneself, one will know God.” Augustine writes, “I desire to know God and the soul.” Bucer, as well, sees a two-fold knowledge, “If we know God and ourselves we will ascribe to God glory in all things, but to our selves confusion.” We also find similar thoughts in Basil of Caesarea, “If we are penetrated by these truths, we shall know ourselves, we shall know God, we shall adore our Creator.” We may cautiously conjecture, warned by Lane, that here, as was often the case, Calvin built his ideas on others. As Muller notes, Calvin became increasingly attuned to the “insights both of the patristic and of the medieval periods.”

While it has been debated which precedes the other for Calvin, knowledge of God or knowledge of self, Calvin finally explains himself. For a proper double-knowledge, knowledge of God must precede knowledge of self, for “the beginning of religion is the knowledge of God.” “However the knowledge of God and of ourselves may be mutually connected: the right order of expression requires that we

---

14 *Institutes* 2.2.11.
21 These assumptions must be balanced with Lane’s important Thesis VIII: “A critical approach is necessary to determine which authors influenced Calvin, even where Calvin cites them extensively.” Lane, *Student of the Church Fathers*, 8.
22 Muller, *Unaccommodated*, 57.
24 *Commentary*, Jer. 10:25.
discuss the former first.”

This is the correct way, Spijker argues, in which to understand Calvin’s *ordo docendi*.

Understanding that the core of man’s fall was found in the rejection of the true knowledge of God and self, Calvin saw that being brought back to this right knowledge was the way back to holiness, to restoring the image of God. “Newness of life consists in knowledge…transforming the whole man…that we are renewed after the image of God.”

It is God, of course, who must restore our reason, bringing us from the lie that we are great and he is small to the truth: God is great and we are small before him. “We cannot attain to the full knowledge of God’s works…until we be transformed into His image.”

The true double-knowledge aids our sanctification first by showing us our need. “This knowledge of ourselves…shows us our nothingness.” Seeing our inability to meet God’s righteous demands in the law, we are forced to recognize that we are sinners in need of help. “In considering our powers, we learn that they are not only too weak to fulfill the law, but utterly nonexistent.”

Showing us our helplessness before God, a right double-knowledge also brings us to understand that we have no hope but to turn to God’s grace for help. “Yet, O Lord, thou art our Father, and we are but earth and mire.”

It is there in the tension within “the gulf between the all-holy God and the fallen sinner” that we are forced to reach out to Christ, who alone can bridge the gulf and make us holy.

The double-knowledge is not bare information but a relational understanding that leads us to a proper relational response to God. This relational response is the two-fold movement of the human heart, which we have asserted is essential to Calvin’s theology of sanctification: a downward movement, prostrating ourselves before God, accompanied by a simultaneous movement of the heart upward to exalt God in thankful reverence. “These two things then ought not to be separated, and

---

25 *Institutes* 1.1.3.
26 Spijker, “The Influence of Luther on Calvin,” 97. Muller concurs, see *Unaccommodated*, 95.
27 *Commentary*, Col. 3:10.
30 Fuhrmann, *Instruction*, 27.
31 *Institutes* 2.8.3.
33 Battles, *Interpreting Calvin*, 149.
cannot be—the acknowledgment of our sins, which will humble us before God—and the knowledge of his goodness, and a firm assurance as to our salvation."\(^{36}\)

To be sanctified, to be as we were in creation, as we shall be in glory, is to see God and ourselves rightly and to respond rightly to that knowledge of God and self. The double-knowledge then is both the medicine that cures us and the health we have once cured, which both flow from God. “The true knowledge of God is that which regenerates and renews us, so that we become new creatures; and that hence it cannot be but that it must conform us to the image of God.”\(^{37}\) To aid the cure, Calvin would convey the desperate nature of the human condition so we can, with proper humility, seek the right help.\(^{38}\)

I. The Created State

Knowledge of God’s goodness in creating us so well leads us to piety

Calvin pointedly describes the glory of man’s creation. He wishes to show not only God’s goodness but, by contrast to our created state, the depth of our eventual fall. “We shall see how far away men are from the purity that was bestowed upon Adam.”\(^{39}\) We were made in the very image of God,\(^{40}\) such that “the likeness of God extends to the whole excellence” of man.\(^{41}\) Our soul was upright, our mind sound and our will “free to choose the good.”\(^{42}\) Our essential integrity included “right understanding,” “reasonable affections” and a basic orientation of thankfulness toward God for all his good gifts.\(^{43}\) Man was a glorious “world in miniature.”\(^{44}\)

Man’s “right understanding” was comprised of a right knowledge of God and of himself, the original double-knowledge, revealing that man is fearfully and wonderfully made in order to serve and worship God.\(^{45}\) Reflecting Anselm, who taught that man “was made holy for this end, that he might be happy in enjoying God,”\(^{46}\) Calvin asserts we originally knew to “reverence his Deity.”\(^{47}\) This double-

\(^{36}\) Commentary, Mic. 7:9.
\(^{37}\) Commentary, 1 John 4:7.
\(^{38}\) Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 13.
\(^{39}\) Institutes 1.15.1.
\(^{40}\) Wallace, Christian Life, 105.
\(^{41}\) Institutes 1.15.3.
\(^{42}\) Institutes 1.15.8.
\(^{43}\) Institutes 1.15.3.
\(^{44}\) Commentary, Gen. 1.26.
\(^{45}\) Institutes 1.2.3.
\(^{46}\) Anselm, Cur Deus Homo (tr. S. N. Deane; Fort Worth, Tex.: RDMc Publishing, 2005) 82.
knowledge led man not to pride but humility, for while man is created in God’s image, he was, after all, “formed of clay” that man should not “exult beyond measure in his flesh.”  

This original double-knowledge drew forth relational responses from man such as humility, thankfulness, dependence and obedience, those “reasonable affections.” Humility came as man saw himself in comparison to his creator. A heart of thankfulness was produced as man rightly beheld “the wonderful works of God.” Dependence came in knowing that all good originated from God, seeking it there and “having received it, to credit it to his account.” In that God had ordained the use of all creation for us, man felt the desire to “devote and dedicate himself entirely to obedience towards God.”

This response of reverence and love toward God—piety—is the description of our original rightness. Piety at its simplest is “that reverence we owe God.” More elaborately Calvin writes, “I call ‘piety’ that reverence joined with love of God which the knowledge of his benefits induces.” Piety then is the heart orientation toward God that both looks to him in reverent faith, or reverential fear, to provide and returns to him love born of gratitude. Piety is affective, “a pure and true zeal which loves God altogether as Father, and reveres him truly as Lord.” Piety, pietas, will serve for Calvin as theological shorthand to describe the state of the human in created perfection and the state toward which we press in sanctification.

Note in his definition, however, from whence pietas emerges: “which the knowledge of his benefits induces.” The true knowledge of God, and ourselves in sight of God, is meant to bring forth not just correct understanding but piety. Reverence (reverentiam) and love (amore) are responses to God from the affective domain. Each glance up at God and down at ourselves drives us to these responses. The double-knowledge we possessed at creation was not just information but a deep

47 Commentary, Gen. 2:16.
48 Commentary, Gen. 2:7.
49 Institutes 2.1.3.
50 Commentary, Calvin’s introductory argument to Genesis.
51 Institutes 1.2.2.
52 Commentary, Calvin’s introductory argument to Genesis.
54 Institutes 1.2.1.
55 Fuhrmann, Instruction, 23.
56 Commentary, 1 Thess. 3:6.
57 Fuhrmann, Instruction, 22.
understanding that produced a heart response from us, those “reasonable affections,” from which we “bestir ourselves to trust, invoke, praise, and love him.”

**Conclusion: Knowledge of our creation leads to humble exalting in God**

Knowledge of the glory of our created state is useful to our sanctification, first, because it produces thankfulness toward God for having created us so wonderfully. Second, knowledge of our created state humbles us as we see how far we have fallen and thus how unable we are to restore ourselves apart from God’s help. This prevents man from seeking human solutions but has man turning to God for holiness “that they should seek nothing beyond him.” Knowledge of our fall from such a lofty height, while it strips us of our pride, does not leave us hopeless but will rather, as Torrance says, “lead men to the acknowledgment of the pure grace of God, and the adoration of His glory.” Third, seeing in the original blueprint of piety how we are called to reverence God, having been created in his very image, we should “be all the more moved to love him.” This true knowledge of our created state then brings us to a proper double-knowledge which brings forth the right response for relationship with God, pietas. We are humble, prostrating ourselves before God as we recognize that we cannot restore ourselves to such perfection, and at the same time exalting in God such that we in reverence and love turn to him for our sanctification. “He admonishes us from what excellence we have fallen, that he may excite in us the desire of its recovery.”

**II. The Fallen State**

**The nature of our condition: Misery and helplessness**

**Man is so thoroughly corrupt that he possesses no absolute good**

Calvin believed that after the fall man was so utterly sinful that, apart from the intervention of grace, there was nothing that man could do to help himself. “Nothing

---

58 *Institutes* 1.14.22.
59 Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 18.
60 *Institutes* 2.1.1.
61 *Institutes* 1.2.1.
62 Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man*, 17.
63 “Sermon on Deut. 6:4-9,” CO 26:439.
64 *Institutes* 2.1.3.
65 *Commentary*, Gen. 1:27.
has remained in the heart of man but corruption, since the time in which Adam lost
the image of God. Calvin drove this point home in order that man would give up
all hope of self-improvement and turn to God for help. Torrance writes, “Calvin
insists again and again that man must be reduced to nothing in his own estimation.”
To reduce man to nothing Calvin would describe man’s sin, often and in great depth.

Man is corrupted entirely, heart, mind and soul by original sin.

“Unspeakable impiety occupied the very citadel of his mind, and pride penetrated to
the depths of his heart.” Stemming from a heart of unbelief, with our initial act of
prideful “unfaithfulness” in disobeying God, man’s nature was corrupted by
“concupiscence” (concupiscencia). This term describes not so much the actions of
sin but the ever-present tendency to gratify the flesh, “fertile and fruitful of every
evil,” against the will and glory of God. This cupidity restlessly lusts for more and
more (cupidité de gagner) that the self might be built up in the pride of life. In sin
we “feel nothing but the flesh” and naturally hate the goodness of God and move
“furiously towards iniquity.” This sin nature continually generates new sins “just as
a glowing furnace continually emits flame and sparks.” Mankind is so sinful “they
cannot help but tumble from one sin into another, until they have exhausted them
all.” Indeed for Calvin, as for Augustine, man is una massa peccati and therefore
una massa damnata. To understand Calvin’s program for sanctification, one must
first see “there is nothing in us but sin,” so that man will be entirely disinclined to
look inward for help.

---

66 Commentary, Rom. 7:15.
67 Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 94.
69 Institutes 2.1.9.
71 Institutes 2.1.4.
72 CO 2:183, “Qui dixerunt esse concupiscentiam, non nimis alieno verbo usi sunt.”
73 Institutes 2.1.8.
74 Fuhrmann, Instruction, 26.
75 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 192.
76 Fuhrmann, Instruction, 25.
77 Institutes 4.15.11.
78 Sermons on Micah, 68.
79 D. N. Bell, Many Mansions, An Introduction to the Development and Diversity of Medieval Theology
80 Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:30.
Yet God’s image is not totally removed, so that man might hope for restoration
Calvin shows that while the *imago Dei* is broken in man,81 yet some hints of it still linger.82 “Should any one object, that this divine image has been obliterated
[deletam], the solution is easy; first, there yet exists some remnant of it.”83 The
remnants of that image were to be found both in man’s ability to reason, for he still
“sees and understands”84 and in his ability to conduct himself in “earthly things”
toward some common social goods.85 Neither could Calvin, trained as a humanist,
deny the relative splendor of man’s achievements, for “we cannot read the writings of
the ancients on these subjects without great admiration.”86 Hence Calvin will
conclude that “he, then, who truly worships and honors God, will be afraid to speak
slanderously of man.”87

This respectful view of fallen man, along with his obvious cultural
appreciations,88 has caused some to conclude that Calvin might rightly be called a
humanist. Hence Wendel89 points to Calvin’s philological methods and Ganoczy90 to
Calvin’s theological influences. Muller is more circumspect placing Calvin “at the
center of a significant confluence of nominally humanistic…patterns of discourse.”91
Cottret, while acknowledging humanism’s deep influences, correctly nuances the
label in Calvin’s case. “If by humanist one means a concern for fine literature and the
restoration of texts, Calvin was unquestionably a Renaissance humanist….If, on the
other hand, one means by humanism faith in man…Calvin was the absolute opposite
of a humanist.”92

This opposition to humanism is clear in Calvin’s handling of the *imago Dei,*
first in his downgrading of the natural gifts in contrasts to the spiritual. As Torrance
writes, “Any remnant of the image must refer to man’s natural gifts, which…are not
in any sense the spiritual image or part of it.”93 Second, Calvin is clear that pointing

81 *Commentary,* Gen. 3:1.
82 *Commentary,* Jas. 3:9; Gal. 5:14.
83 *Commentary,* Gen. 9:6.
84 *Commentary,* John 1:5.
85 *Institutes* 2.2.13.
86 *Institutes* 2.2.15.
87 *Commentary,* Jas. 3:9.
88 See, for example, Calvin’s lengthy defense of knowledge and learning where he says, “Knowledge is
good in itself,” *Commentary,* 1 Cor. 8:1.
90 Ganoczy, *Young Calvin,* 180-81.
91 Muller, *Unaccommodated,* 157.
92 Cottret, *Calvin,* 331.
93 Torrance, *Calvin’s Doctrine of Man,* 83.
to the *imago Dei* is not for man to take pride in himself but rather that he may hope toward the restoration of that image, “the end of his original creation,” by the grace of God.\(^{94}\)

**Our will is in bondage to sin, such that we cannot will well apart from grace**

Calvin steers between two extremes in describing the fallen will, maintaining that the will still functions as a will, yet it is so corrupt that it never cooperates with God. Against critics, such as Pighius, who charged Calvin with destroying man’s will by making us into “stones,”\(^{95}\) Calvin maintained that the will still functioned even in depravity.\(^{96}\) Neither the fall, nor the grace of God, can efface our will.\(^{97}\) While detesting the confusion of the term “free will,” lest man thinks he can “turn himself toward either good or evil,”\(^{98}\) Calvin concurs with Augustine\(^{99}\) that the will has a certain freedom: either free from righteousness, or by grace, free from sin.\(^{100}\)

Precisely because we still possess a working will, we are rightly held responsible for our willful sin.\(^{101}\) “No one can claim that anything else is responsible for his sinning except an evil will.”\(^{102}\) While the will sins of necessity, the necessity is found in our own evil nature, not in some outside coercion,\(^{103}\) so that we are responsible for our willful sin.\(^{104}\) We are no more excused by necessity than is the devil.\(^{105}\) Calvin, who takes Anselm to task at other points, agrees here: the necessity of our sin derives from our own sinfulness and so rightly condemns us, not God.\(^{106}\) Therefore the root of blame remains firmly with us, for we will with “deliberate evil intent”\(^{107}\) and thus sin voluntarily.\(^{108}\)

Calvin fought the Roman concept that the will possessed enough goodness to cooperate with grace, and thus warrant merit from God, because he did not want man

\(^{94}\) *Commentary*, Gen. 9:6.
\(^{95}\) *BLW*, 200.
\(^{96}\) *BLW*, 231.
\(^{97}\) *BLW*, 123.
\(^{98}\) *Institutes* 2.2.7.
\(^{99}\) *Institutes* 2.2.8.
\(^{100}\) *BLW*, 130.
\(^{101}\) *Commentary*, John 8:34.
\(^{102}\) *BLW*, 169.
\(^{103}\) *Institutes* 2.3.5.
\(^{104}\) *BLW*, 68-69.
\(^{105}\) *BLW*, 147.
\(^{106}\) *BLW*, 169; Anselm, *Cur Deus Homo*, 76, “So inexcusable is man, who has voluntarily brought upon himself a debt which he cannot pay, and by his own fault disabled himself, so that he can neither escape his previous obligation not to sin, nor pay the debt which he has incurred by sin.”
\(^{107}\) *BLW*, 37.
\(^{108}\) *Commentary*, Rom. 1:28.
claiming credit for good works or relying on his own power to do good. He would argue against Pighius, “The human will should not even be considered a follower of grace’s leadership, as though it cooperated by itself.” Since the fallen human will always sins and wills only evil, rather than cooperating with God, it always defies him in every way. Humans are, in Niesel’s words, “cramped within themselves instead of being expanded outwards to God in the desire to do His will.”

Since we are not capable of cooperating with God, then any move toward holiness must flow from the power of God whose Spirit directs our will to any good. It is God who makes us will to obey him, who “arouses then guides man’s will to do good.” We must look to God to sanctify us, relying moment by moment on his grace to produce a good will. Calvin quotes Bernard with favor: “Therefore simply to will is of man; to will ill, of a corrupt nature; to will well, of grace.” It is only as we rely on grace, not on our ability to will well, that our will itself is liberated “from the bondage that made it the slave of sin.”

Our reason is corrupted, such that only God can heal our thinking
The “whole of their mental system” was corrupted by sin, for “sin properly belongs to the mind.” As a result our minds cannot, apart from grace, understand the things of God well enough for salvation. “Their foolish mind, being involved in darkness, could understand nothing aright.” Ironically, our reason was destroyed by our original sinful desire “to know more than was lawful, in order that they might become equal with God.”

109 Tamburello, Union with Christ, 31.
110 BLW, 225.
111 BLW, 183.
112 BLW, 115.
113 BLW, 213.
114 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 89.
115 BLW, 231.
116 BLW, 211.
117 BLW, 177.
118 BLW, 174.
119 BLW, 114.
120 Institutes 2.3.5.
121 BLW, 92.
122 Commentary, Col. 1:21.
123 Commentary, Rom. 2:1.
124 Commentary, Rom. 1:21.
125 Commentary, Gen. 3:6.
Human reason, while fallen, still functions in part.\textsuperscript{126} Man “still sees and understands”\textsuperscript{127} well enough that he can reasonably conduct himself in the daily world. Also, human conscience, the seed of religion (\textit{semen religionis}) and the sense of the divine (\textit{sensus divinitatis}) still operate.\textsuperscript{128} The conscience is the moral part of man’s reasoning, telling him that God’s law should be obeyed,\textsuperscript{129} while the \textit{sensus divinitatis} pertains to his intellectual understanding of God,\textsuperscript{130} informing him that God should be worshipped.\textsuperscript{131} “The impious themselves therefore exemplify the fact that some conception of God is ever alive in all men’s minds,”\textsuperscript{132} for they cannot open their eyes “without being compelled to see him.”\textsuperscript{133}

It is, however, debated just how much efficacy Calvin attributed to either conscience or the \textit{sensus divinitatis} to help man understand God apart from grace. While Brunner found much in Calvin to suggest that natural man may understand God and Barth found little,\textsuperscript{134} Bouwsma concludes that the debate is futile because Calvin “can be cited on both sides of the issue.”\textsuperscript{135} We would concur with Steinmetz, however, that Calvin distinguishes between what is offered to natural reason and what is received—too little to help—due to “culpable human blindness.”\textsuperscript{136} Fallen man has some capacity to understand about God, who is clearly manifested, yet man willfully refuses to accept true knowledge of God “since their mind is corrupted with contempt of God.”\textsuperscript{137} Man’s conscience and \textit{sensus divinitatis} lead finally to a dead end, bearing no fruit, for “conscience perverts every decision” and “natural reason never will direct men to Christ.”\textsuperscript{138} Since impiety, rather than \textit{pietas}, holds sway over the human mind,\textsuperscript{139} we are willfully blind to the light of God\textsuperscript{140} and persist in our blindness until grace frees us.\textsuperscript{141}

\begin{thebibliography}{99}
\bibitem{126} \textit{Commentary}, John 1:4.
\bibitem{127} \textit{Commentary}, John 1:5.
\bibitem{129} \textit{Commentary}, Gen. 4:8; \textit{Institutes} 1.3.2.
\bibitem{129} Tamburello, \textit{Union with Christ}, 38.
\bibitem{131} Dowey, \textit{Knowledge of God}, 71-72.
\bibitem{132} \textit{Institutes} 1.3.2.
\bibitem{133} \textit{Institutes} 1.5.1; \textit{Commentary}, John 3:16; Rom.1:19.
\bibitem{134} Steinmetz, \textit{Context}, 24.
\bibitem{135} Bouwsma, \textit{Sixteenth-Century Portrait}, 262, note 51.
\bibitem{137} \textit{Commentary}, Gen. 8:21.
\bibitem{139} \textit{Institutes} 2.1.9.
\bibitem{140} Battles, \textit{Interpreting Calvin}, 269.
\bibitem{141} \textit{BLW}, 77.
\end{thebibliography}
Man does perceive just enough of the knowledge of God that “the ignorance of the ungodly is without excuse.”¹⁴² Niesel concurs that “in face of God we cannot shelter behind the excuse that we have no knowledge of Him.”¹⁴³ Men’s natural knowledge of God serves not to save them, but so they “cannot allege anything before God’s tribunal for the purpose of showing that they are not justly condemned.”¹⁴⁴

Fallen human reason “enveloped in hypocrisy and deceitful craft”¹⁴⁵ offers man no hope for attaining true knowledge of God or self but, as with the fallen will, only shows how dependent we must be on the grace of God for both salvation and sanctification. The human mind, unable to find a saving knowledge of God on its own, must be entirely transformed, renewed by grace through faith so that we can come to a true knowledge of God and ourselves.¹⁴⁶ It is faith then which overcomes our blindness and becomes “the light by which man can gain real knowledge from the work of creation.”¹⁴⁷ Faith, a kind of knowledge itself, is not gained by our fallen reason but is a gift “acquired by the teaching of the Holy Spirit.”¹⁴⁸ Faith, aided by the Holy-Spirit-illuminated-Scriptures, serves as a kind of “spectacle” which allows a man to see and finally understand God.¹⁴⁹ Man, once he is rightly humbled about his own reason,¹⁵⁰ may finally find the needed help in the grace of God to think aright.

The results of the fallen state: Enmity toward God and self-reliance

Regarding God: Hating God we create idols, cannot please God, suffer his wrath
Our rejection of God leads us to hate God as our enemy with “every affection of our heart.”¹⁵¹ We reject the authority of God’s Word which might require us to reform or submit.¹⁵² Determined to live in unbelief, man wants freedom to give full reign to his flesh.¹⁵³ We are hateful to God as well, who only loves purity,¹⁵⁴ so that we are

¹⁴² Commentary, Heb. 11:3. Cf. Tamburello, Union with Christ, 37.
¹⁴³ Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 49.
¹⁴⁵ Institutes 2.5.19.
¹⁴⁶ Commentary, Rom. 12:2.
¹⁴⁷ Commentary, Rom. 1:20.
¹⁴⁸ Commentary, Eph. 3:19.
¹⁴⁹ Institutes 1.6.1.
¹⁵⁰ Institutes 2.2.1.
¹⁵¹ Commentary, John 5:25.
¹⁵² Institutes 2.1.4.
¹⁵³ Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 81.
¹⁵⁴ Institutes 4.15.10.
subject to his wrath “rather than any friendship from him.”155 Counting God our mortal enemy, we flee his presence.156 

Having rejected the truth of God’s Word, man scrambles to create order out of his own chaos by devising his own idolatrous religions. “All who forsake the word fall into idolatry.”157 This basic human tendency, to fashion and worship idols, is “the root of all evil” which must inevitably occur once we have turned “aside from knowledge of God.”158 It takes no prompting for us to “contaminate ourselves with idolatry,”159 such that we are “a perpetual factory of idols.”160 

Rather than turn to God for help, motivated by the “irreligious affectation of religion,” man will only turn to his own idols in order to acquire “righteousness apart from God’s Word.”161 We learn to turn to idols for righteousness naturally “without ever having to go to school.”162 Because Calvin identified the Catholic practices of penance and indulgences as the very heart of idolatry, that is, superstitious human efforts to secure righteousness apart from Christ through reliance on human ability and goodness,163 he would consider them lethal to sanctification. 

Idolatry creates a kind of addiction that keeps us bound to it. “All are nevertheless addicted to idolatry.”164 Idolatrous to the core, man continuously robs God of his glory, “transferring to himself what belongs to God.”165 In the end we are “brute beasts” who cannot help but flee the presence of God.166 Man’s idolatry renders him doubly helpless. Refusing to turn to God for help, man turns to idols which are powerless to help and only drag him deeper into the rebellion of self-reliance. 

In our state of rebellion there is nothing we can do which could ever merit “the favor of God by works.”167 Even our best works “are without exception sinful,”168 so

---

155 *Institutes* 2.1.8.
156 *Sermons on the Ten Commandments*, 257.
158 *Sermons on Micah*, 30.
159 *Sermons on Micah*, 57.
160 *Institutes* 1.11.8.
161 *Institutes* 2.8.5.
162 *Sermons on Micah*, 37-38.
163 *Commentary*, Ex. 32:4.
164 *Commentary*, 1 Thess. 1:9.
165 *Commentary*, Rom. 1:18.
166 *Sermons on Job*, 605.
168 *BLW*, 28.
that they “derive no praise at all.”\textsuperscript{169} Yet while man has no ability to merit God’s favor, he is rightly held responsible for his willful rebellion.\textsuperscript{170} Nor can he object that God is unreasonable to command him to do what he cannot do in his own strength, since the very purpose of the command is “that we should know what we ought to seek from [God].”\textsuperscript{171} Man is left a helpless, but culpable, sinner. An enemy of God, who can do nothing to please God, man flees his presence and creates idols which bind him to their worthless rituals, leaving him even more helpless and guiltier before God.

**Regarding Himself: Man blindly imagines himself good, and God evil, so he futilely turns to himself for help in holiness**

Calvin finds a bitter irony in man’s fallen nature: it includes a deep blindness, such that he cannot perceive his own sin but rather dupes himself into believing well of himself.\textsuperscript{172} As Battles summarizes, “We suffer from *lippitudo*, blearedness.”\textsuperscript{173} We have such a wrongly inflated opinion of ourselves that we seek nothing “more eagerly than to be flattered.”\textsuperscript{174} We are so blinded that, “there is not a single person who does not deceive himself or become a deceiver.”\textsuperscript{175}

Since we perceive ourselves as being good, and we perceive God, opposed to us in our sin, as being evil, we turn “upside down all the heavenly wisdom,”\textsuperscript{176} which leads us to a kind of insane hatred of his glory.\textsuperscript{177} Unable to see our sin or God’s goodness, we are rendered incurable on two counts. Thinking we are healthy, we will not seek a cure. “Through this subtlety Satan attempted to cover up the disease and thus to render it incurable.”\textsuperscript{178} Thinking God evil, we will avoid the only one who can cure us, “for when our minds are inflated with foolish self-confidence, we neglect God.”\textsuperscript{179}

The corruption in man leaves him in an unnatural state regarding his self-understanding. At one moment man will strive to achieve honor,\textsuperscript{180} fill his every

\textsuperscript{169} *Institutes* 2.2.16. Cf. *Commentary*, Rom. 7:19; Jonah 1:15.

\textsuperscript{170} *Institutes* 6.5.1.

\textsuperscript{171} *BLW*, 141–42.

\textsuperscript{172} *Institutes* 3.2.10.

\textsuperscript{173} Battles, *Interpreting Calvin*, 130.

\textsuperscript{174} *Institutes* 2.1.2.

\textsuperscript{175} Sermons on Micah, 59.

\textsuperscript{176} Fuhrmann, *Instruction*, 24.

\textsuperscript{177} *Commentary*, Rom. 11:36.

\textsuperscript{178} *Institutes* 2.1.5.

\textsuperscript{179} *Commentary*, Mic. 5:11.

\textsuperscript{180} Sermons on 2 Samuel, 13.
desire\textsuperscript{181} and boast\textsuperscript{182} of his own vain power,\textsuperscript{183} being filled with “irrational self-confidence.”\textsuperscript{184} At the next moment, he finds himself cast down in despair, for while he boasts vainly, he lives in the real world where the law of God, written on all hearts, convicts his imperfect conscience of his own miserable failures. This awareness is made more acute by the fact that even fallen man will “naturally long for the undamaged condition.”\textsuperscript{185} Unable to rid his conscience of his sense of failure, he vacillates\textsuperscript{186} between two equally unhelpful positions: overly-confident boasting and hopeless despair.\textsuperscript{187}

This internal warfare also drives men into conflict with others, to gain self-esteem at others’ expense. “Such arrogance indwells us, that we each want to be elevated over our neighbors.”\textsuperscript{188} Their slightest failing becomes an opportunity to exalt ourselves over them,\textsuperscript{189} for we are “inclined to speak indiscreetly and heap blame and scandal”\textsuperscript{190} on others. Rather than actually improving us, these conflicts, as with all our efforts at self-improvement, only make us guiltier.

Feeling his internal conflict and wanting to improve his righteousness, man turns to self-help which is finally futile because original sin has rendered humans unable to help themselves. “When we are taught to wage our own war, we are but borne aloft on a reed stick, only to fall as soon as it breaks!”\textsuperscript{191} Blinded to his true condition, man cannot see that it is beyond his ability to cure himself, but rather in his self-dependency, he makes matters worse. “Born we have been with no power to do what is acceptable or pleasing to our God, yet the very thing we cannot supply we do not cease to owe.”\textsuperscript{192} We are unable to take what good God has graciously allowed to remain in us and stir it up to piety,\textsuperscript{193} for we are “so far from making progress in piety,
that [we] fall into what is worse.”\footnote{Institutes 2.2.12.} There is nothing that man can do to sanctify himself apart from God granting him regeneration.\footnote{Commentary, 1 Thess. 1:9.}

Nowhere did Calvin fight the notions of self-help more powerfully than against the Roman “satisfactions, superstitious and idolatries,”\footnote{Institutes 2.2.12.} which had reduced holiness to the point that it could rightly be said that there were “none with disciplined character, none knowledgeable in sacred literature, none reverent in divine things.”\footnote{Institutes 3.4.16.}

Theologically, these Roman practices were sympathetic toward the semi-Pelagian notion that man could perform works which merited God’s favor,\footnote{Institutes 2.3.9.} rendering man capable of self-improvement. This idea Calvin endlessly opposed as a kind of dark cancer that ate away souls.\footnote{Commentary, Rom. 4:14.} Against all notions of self-sanctification, he declared that the Lord “both begins and completes the good work in us.”\footnote{Institutes 3.4.1.}

Methodologically, Rome relied too heavily on the external disciplines of penance, allowing sinners to progress in their holiness through contrition, confession and satisfaction. Calvin understood these disciplines as failing to touch the heart of man and therefore the heart of the issue, the need for God to grant true repentance.\footnote{Institutes 3.4.3.} Contrition could never be full and true,\footnote{Institutes 3.4.29.} confession never complete enough\footnote{Institutes 3.4.16.} and satisfactions an affront to the free grace of Christ.\footnote{Institutes 3.5.2.} The most extreme example of satisfactions, the practice of purchasing indulgences, he would denounce as a “profanation of the blood of Christ” which only serves to turn people “aside from the true way of salvation.”\footnote{Institutes 3.17.15.} Seeing the lost sheep of the church being led away from true holiness toward futile human efforts, Calvin would call all to see their own inability so as to drive them to seek the help of grace.\footnote{Institutes 3.17.15.}
Conclusion: Seeing our misery turns us toward God for help
This proper double-knowledge of our fallen nature makes us “doubly ashamed.”\(^{207}\) We must admit that any good in us is from God, not ourselves.\(^{208}\) We must also admit that we are helpless and have to rely on God’s grace\(^{209}\) to “recover us from that bottomless pit.”\(^{210}\) As Niesel summarizes, “The independence of man is crushed into dust in the presence of the majesty of God.”\(^{211}\) Calvin does not intend to leave man crushed but, properly humbled, he aims to show man that his only source of hope is “not partially but wholly from God.”\(^{212}\) Men are brought finally to a contrite submission before the hand of God,\(^{213}\) wherein they “stake their entire refuge on God’s loving-kindness.”\(^{214}\) We must always understand Calvin’s doctrine of the fall in light of God’s grace, both in creating us in his image and redeeming us through his Son,\(^{215}\) rather than, as some have thought, as something morosely negative.\(^{216}\) Calvin painted such a bleak picture of human nature precisely so we might turn from human efforts and turn to grace for help in holiness. “Goodness results from the grace of the Holy Spirit and so is his own work.”\(^{217}\)

III. The State of Grace

Only God’s grace can transform man’s mind and will to a true double-knowledge
Man, in a state of grace, is so altered by the work of God’s redemption that will and mind are transformed “from their innate wickedness to obedience of his law.”\(^{218}\) We who were hateful as God’s enemies “now begin to bear the image of Christ,”\(^{219}\) so that seeing the “features of his own countenance”\(^{220}\) we are lovely to God.

\(^{208}\) BLW, 162.
\(^{209}\) BLW, 114.
\(^{210}\) J. Calvin, Sermons on Election and Reprobation (tr. J. Fielde; Willowstreet, Pa.: Old Paths Publications, 1996) 42.
\(^{211}\) Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 167.
\(^{212}\) Reid, Treatises, 197-98, “Necessity of Reforming the Church,” 1543.
\(^{213}\) Institutes 2.1.2.
\(^{214}\) Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 299.
\(^{215}\) Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 20.
\(^{216}\) Barth, Theology of Calvin, 120.
\(^{217}\) BLW, 115.
\(^{218}\) BLW, 123-24.
\(^{219}\) Commentary, 1 Cor. 15:49.
\(^{220}\) Institutes 3.17.5.
The will, regenerated through the Holy Spirit, is set free from sin “that man reflects, like a mirror, the wisdom, righteousness, and goodness of God.” Man’s mind is also freed, so he can think “free from guile and feigning” and seek from God “the cultivation of holiness and righteousness.” The end result of the renewed will and mind is the “transforming [of] the whole man” from a state of rebellion against God to a state of humility before him. It is only by the work of God that we come to a real double-knowledge, which is not a “simple and bare knowledge,” but leads us to respond to God as we rightly prostrate ourselves before God and adore his glory.

Only the grace of God can transform man into the image of God

Grace transforms us into the image of God and conformity to the law

In this state of grace, God begins to restore us to what we were in the Garden, to the “true order” (verum ordinem) wherein we bear with increasing clarity the image of God, or the image of Christ, which is “Stamped anew upon us.” This restoration of the true order is “the idea that dominates the whole of Calvin’s theological exposition,” as Wendel suggests. Within the true order, God and man move toward their proper relationship. Man, with “eyes prepared to see God,” is humble, thankful and dependent on God; God is glorified and exalted by man.

The restoration to the image of God, or to the true order, is the same as being restored to the pattern of the law. “The law of God contains in itself that newness by which his image can be restored in us.” The law, which is the “perfection of wisdom,” was always the pattern to which the people of God were to conform, so “there was good reason why all the precepts of the law should be observed.”

---

221 Institutes 2.2.12; BLW, 226.
222 Commentary, Col. 3:10.
223 Institutes 3.6.5.
224 Commentary, Col. 3:10.
225 Commentary, Col. 3:10.
226 Institutes 2.2.12 ; Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 17.
227 Commentary, Eph. 4:24.
229 Institutes 3.6.3.
230 Commentary, 2 Cor. 3:18.
231 Wendel, Origins, 151.
232 Commentary, 1 John 3:2.
234 Institutes 3.6.1.
235 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 291.
law, never intended to be set aside, remains inviolable as the plan for our lives, any deviation from which is certain to lead us to “nothing but ruin.”

Our conformity to the law is not merely external but a change in our very “affections and cupidity,” such that the law finds “a seat and resting place in the inmost affection of the heart.” External conformity, “false appearances in order to be approved,” could never be enough, for without the right motive, external obedience becomes disobedience. We are transformed internally, into those who love and long to obey the law, for it arouses us “to a zeal for holiness and innocence.” Since we love the law we hate any transgression of it but desire purity, holiness and to avoid all corruptions. Calvin follows the sentiment of Bernard regarding loving the law: “It is given them as to willing subjects, with a freedom equal to the sweetness with which it is breathed into them.”

Our growing conformity to the law means that God will give us “the blessings which under the covenant were owed to the observance of his law.” Our imperfect obedience is really blessed but not for its own merit. Rather our obedience of faith is kindly rewarded by our Father because of Christ “to make us aware of the fruits of his grace.” While the reward is far beyond what the good works actually merit, the reward will not come without the good works produced by Christ, through the obedience of faith, so that it is rightly said that men are “crowned according to their own works.” God intends for his blessing also to stir us to greater obedience. “When he bestows his favor on us in this way it serves to move us more effectively and results in our serving him with far more ardent heart.”

---

237 Institutes 2.7.14.
238 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 244.
239 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 219.
241 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 111.
242 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 109-11.
243 Institutes 2.7.12, 3.14.9.
244 Institutes 3.19.2. Cf. Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 52.
245 Commentary, 1 John 3:1.
246 McKee, Pastoral Piety, 257, 264.
248 Institutes 3.17.3.
249 Institutes 3.18.3; Commentary, 1 John 2:17.
250 Institutes 3.17.8, 3.17.3, 3.17.5.
252 Institutes 3.18.1.
253 Institutes 3.19.5.
254 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 296.
In grace, while we are conforming more to the law, we have the blessing of freedom of conscience before the law, two aspects of which are relevant here.\textsuperscript{255} First, the conscience is free from the law’s power to condemn, finding its justification in faith alone.\textsuperscript{256} Second, the conscience is free to obey from a willing heart and not under the constraint of perfect obedience.\textsuperscript{257} As Leith explains, “They do not have to earn salvation by obeying every jot and tittle of the law.”\textsuperscript{258}

Freedom of conscience before the law of God also renders us free from manmade laws, such as “abominable” monastic regulations,\textsuperscript{259} that would restrict us beyond the law of God.\textsuperscript{260} While we rightly observe local statutes, they have no power over our consciences.\textsuperscript{261} This freedom of conscience before the law of God and men ultimately leads to a good conscience, which is “nothing but inward integrity of heart.”\textsuperscript{262} Our good conscience does not encourage laxity towards either God’s or man’s law, but rather, knowing we are graciously forgiven “renders us far more prompt to obey.”\textsuperscript{263} Thus as man is transformed into the image of God, or the law, he receives a double blessing: from outside God pours blessing upon his obedience and internally he is given an untroubled conscience, both results that could come to sinful man only by reliance on God’s grace.

**We become lovers of God**

Finally recognizing that “he will provide all that we need,”\textsuperscript{264} we respond to God with a sincere love.\textsuperscript{265} No longer passing over “in ungrateful thoughtlessness”\textsuperscript{266} his many kindnesses, but seeing that “God has destined all things for our good,”\textsuperscript{267} we are prodded on to love him even more. Loving him, we trust him as the sole source of every good in our lives.\textsuperscript{268} Love for God grows, forcing out anything in us that may

\textsuperscript{255} Calvin speaks of three Christian freedoms, but the third, freedom in things indifferent, does not pertain to our discussion here. Cf. *Institutes* 3.19.7.

\textsuperscript{256} *Institutes* 3.19.2.

\textsuperscript{257} *Institutes* 3.19.4, 3.19.5.

\textsuperscript{258} Leith, *Christian Life*, 49.

\textsuperscript{259} *Institutes* 4.13.12.

\textsuperscript{260} *Institutes* 4.10.8.

\textsuperscript{261} *Institutes* 3.19.14.

\textsuperscript{262} *Institutes* 3.19.16.

\textsuperscript{263} Commentary, 1 John 4:3; *Institutes* 3.19.8.

\textsuperscript{264} Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 196.

\textsuperscript{265} *Institutes* 3.6.5.

\textsuperscript{266} *Institutes* 1.14.21.

\textsuperscript{267} *Institutes* 1.14.22.

\textsuperscript{268} Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 27.
“conflict with this love for him.” Neither is our love a repayment for the gifts rendered by God, a spiritual quid pro quo. Rather, we delight in him as our Father, beyond his bounty to us, and grow in heartfelt love for him. It is from this new heart, “afame with a love and desire to walk in all holiness,” that we grow in loving obedience.

Love for our Father runs so deep that we have a “zeal to illustrate the glory of God” above all other good in our lives, gladly ascribing to him any glory we might have claimed. Thus we fulfill our created purpose, the true order, that God “might be glorified in us.” Seeking God’s glory leads us to a grateful worship of God which flows naturally from the regenerate soul, such that we “gather every day to call upon the name of God.” Worship from the whole person, “prompt and active in rendering thanks,” becomes the only rational response for anyone who realizes the goodness of God as Father. “Then knowing that we owe our life to Him, we ought to do homage to Him.”

We become lovers of others

Love for our neighbor springs from the reality that “we have been loved freely” and therefore comes from the pure motive of Christ’s love for us “as an instance of perfect love.” In the state of grace, we are freed from self-love, such that love of neighbor will be “the principle of all our purposes and all our actions.”

This love can only be lived out in the context of the church and society and not in monastic isolation, for true Christianity “is lively and full of vigor, so that it
spares no labor, when assistance is to be given to one’s neighbors.” 286 This is easily seen as we are moved to supply their material needs, 287 particularly by giving to the poor among us, which “the Lord reckons as given to himself.” 288

We become moderate in all of life

The “true order” brings us to moderation in emotions, desires and conduct as an expression of our newfound humility. 289 Emotionally, while we are not “stones,” neither are we to be carried away by extreme emotions, even grief, for God “requires moderation in our mourning.” 290 Calvin rebukes King David for the depth of his lament over the deaths of Jonathan and Saul, for he showed “excessive grief, with complete lack of self-control.” 291 But Calvin applauds Christ whose “feelings were adjusted and regulated in obedience to God” as he mourned Lazarus. 292 Not only grief, but our joy must not depart from an even keel lest we display an “unseemly levity.” 293

Along with moderate emotions, our very desires proceed from a well-regulated heart that has no “uncontrolled desire” or “immoderate prodigality.” 294 Christ models for us the moderation of desire, for when he was “distressed by grief and fear, he did not rise against God, but continued to be regulated by the true rule of moderation.” 295

The inner temperance is accompanied by moderation of conduct, particularly public conduct, touching on clothing, food, drink, parties, ambition and even war. 296 We will be moderate with our wealth, not increasing it too much, but will be “tighter” with ourselves, 297 excluding “luxuries and overflowing abundance.” 298 Calvin holds up Jethro’s preservation of the true order in discreetly advising Moses and not upsetting “the due order [verum ordinem] of things.” 299

287 Commentary, 1 John 3:17.
289 Commentary, Rom. 12:16.
290 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:13-14.
292 Commentary, John 11:33.
293 Institutes 3.19.11.
294 Institutes 3.19.9.
295 Commentary, Mark 14:32-40.
296 Wallace, Christian Life, 170-80. See this for one of the best presentations of moderation in Calvin.
297 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 195.
298 Commentary, 1 Tim. 6:8.
299 Commentary, Ex. 18:17.
We follow God’s calling in life
Each Christian, created for the “purpose of laboring, and of being vigorously employed, in his work,” is called by God to contribute to the good of society. Hence it is true that “no sacrifice is more pleasing to God, than when every man applies diligently to his own calling.” This calling is into the world, not the monastery, which as Torrance observed, “…cast a slur on the ordinary life and work of men.” Women, too, should be in the world, not induced to take on the “cursed halter” of a nunnery. The most humble calling in society far outstrips the monastery in holiness.

Our vocation marks out the particular path of obedience that each is to walk, unique in many respects to the one called. “The Lord bids each one of us in all life’s actions to look to his calling.” To deviate outside our particular calling would be sinful, “let no man go beyond his bounds.” The “true order” finds us pursuing our calling as a good citizens, generally enjoying a good reputation, as we attend to all the duties of our call.

This restoration to the image of God is pietas
As we have said, Calvin often uses one single concept to summarize the life of man in a state of grace: piety. The pious will look for all good from God, “confide in his power, trust in his goodness, depend on his truth, and turn to him with the whole heart.” Because piety is primarily a heart condition, it grows as we obtain a true knowledge of God as loving Father “to defend, govern, and cherish us” and ourselves as dependent children. Loving God means the pious will “make true holiness their concern,” for it is God’s intention in calling us to make us holy.

---

302 Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 64.
303 Institutes 4.13.19.
304 Institutes 4.13.16.
305 Institutes 4.13.3.
306 Commentary, John 7:30.
307 Commentary, 2 Cor. 8:21.
308 Institutes 3.10.6.
309 Institutes 4.13.3.
310 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:3. Cf. Institutes 3.6.2.

68
In a state of continuous dependence on God, we render the obedience of faith

Even renewed in a state of grace, Calvin is clear; man is still entirely a dependent creature who, in order to think clearly and will well, must rely on God’s grace “without interruption.” The renewed will relies on grace, as God “both prepares a good will in man, so that it may be helped, and helps it when it has been prepared.” Calvin, who parts with some Church Fathers over Romans 7, interprets it as a description of the Christian struggle to constantly depend on grace to defeat sin. Torrance argues that this state of constant dependence is, in fact, the natural order to which grace restores us from the disorder of rebellious independence. We are forced to humbly recognize our complete dependence on God’s grace for all good in us. “If God has implanted in us anything that is good, we are so much the more debtors to his grace.” We can never wean ourselves from grace, for our fruitfulness depends on the “continuous supply of his aid” and his “constant activity.” We have nothing good but what God’s grace has given us, and “we do nothing good but what he worketh in us.”

Having reduced our role in sanctification to one of utter dependence upon God, Calvin is left with a conundrum: What role is left to man in sanctification? Although he wanted to dispel sluggishness, Calvin could not bear to dispel it by insisting that God needed our “cooperation” or that our will is even “attendant” to grace. Rather he will present a more dependent posture, as Tamburello states, “Calvin…wants nothing to do with any notion of ‘cooperative’ grace.” Rejecting cooperation Calvin still maintains our wills are active in sanctification. “Having now been reformed, the will presents itself as ready and compliant to the Spirit.” But Calvin will not allow this to be called cooperation, because it concedes too much to

---

315 BLW, 114.
316 BLW, 68-69.
317 BLW, 162.
318 Steinmetz, Context, 111.
319 Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 47.
320 Commentary, 1 Cor. 4:7.
322 BLW, 230.
323 Commentary, 1 Cor. 15:10.
324 Institutes 2.5.14.
325 Institutes 2.3.7.
326 Tamburello, Union with Christ, 39.
327 BLW, 225.
man, who would then share credit with God for his good works and would therefore have a basis for merit, unthinkable for Calvin.\footnote{Institutes 2.3.11.}

Rather than cooperation Calvin will prefer terms such as service, submission and obedience to describe our role in sanctification.\footnote{Institutes 3.7.1.} Most often he will resort to the concept of obedience, itself a gift of God.\footnote{Institutes 3.8.4.} “Through the Spirit of sanctification, [God] guides the faithful to obedience.”\footnote{BLW, 231.} Calvin will further qualify obedience, modifying it as the “obedience of faith” (obedientiam fidei or obsequium fidei).\footnote{Institutes 3.2.8.} The “obedience of faith” is the term that suits our humble role and denotes that everything we do in sanctification comes only in response to the initiation of God in our salvation.

**Conclusion: Man must constantly depend on God**

With a growing and proper double-knowledge, man can come to God, not in cooperation, but depending on God for the continual grace to render the obedience of faith. His will, freed from rebellion against God, can finally desire and follow the truth. His mind, freed from vain pride, can rightly see his poverty and God’s great goodness. Being restored to the image of God, he loves God and his neighbor freely, no longer constrained by a slavish obedience to the law or futile Roman ritual. He humbly lives out his calling from his Father among his brethren, not driven by passions but moderate in all things, returning thanks to God from a heart of piety.

The totality of these transformations, from the impiety of the fall to the growing pietas of grace, argues against the possibility of external human means ever effecting such a change. Man is forced to look to God’s grace alone to make us not just children of Adam but “brothers of angels.”

We have said that regeneration is like another creation; and if we compare it with the first creation, it far surpasses it. For it is much better for us to be made children of God, and reformed after his image within us, than to be created mortal: for we are born children of wrath, corrupt and degenerate; since all integrity was lost when God’s image was removed. We see, then, the nature of our first creation; but when God re-fashions us, we are not only born sons of Adam, but we are the brothers of angels, and members of Christ; and
this our second life consists in rectitude, justice, and the light of true intelligence.\textsuperscript{333}

Here with a true double-knowledge, man lives in response to God’s grace with the two-fold movement of pietas: downward, prostrating himself as helpless before God, and upward, exalting in God’s transforming grace.

**IV. The State of Glory**

**Glory is so beyond us, we see our need for God’s grace**

Calvin held a real hope for the complete sanctification of man in the state of glory. “Let us imagine...enjoyment, clear and pure from every vice.”\textsuperscript{334} His occasional mentions of glory served both to show us the lofty goal of sanctification and to demonstrate the inadequacy of man-centered approaches to sanctification. To achieve both ends, Calvin will contrast the “holiness” in the Roman Church with true glory, where man is restored to God’s image, perfectly fulfilling the law to love God and neighbor.

The definition of glory, complete sanctification, is to be restored to the image of God as we were originally made.\textsuperscript{335} In this Calvin follows such Church Fathers as Anselm of Canterbury: “For if man is to be perfectly restored, the restoration should make him such as he would have been had he never sinned.”\textsuperscript{336} Our nature must be changed into sinless perfection in order to be “admissible into the kingdom of God.”\textsuperscript{337} We will only know the joys of sinless holiness as we emerge renewed from the grave,\textsuperscript{338} a reality adumbrated by the immortality of our souls.\textsuperscript{339} Then we will be in the most beautiful place, free from immoderate want, with every true desire met perfectly by our Father.\textsuperscript{340}

Calvin was no Platonic dualist; the glory of heaven will not find us disembodied souls but reunited with our bodies.\textsuperscript{341} For it could not be that our flesh, in which we bear the “death of Christ,” should fail to experience his same

\begin{footnotes}
\begin{enumerate}
\item[333] Commentary, Ezek. 18:32.
\item[334] Institutes 3.25.11.
\item[335] Marcel, “Justification and Sanctification,” 133; Commentary, Gen. 1:26.
\item[336] Anselm, Cur Deus Homo, 84.
\item[337] Commentary, 1 Cor. 15:53.
\item[338] Commentary, 1 Cor. 15:54; Institutes 3.25.5.
\item[339] Institutes 3.25.6.
\item[340] Institutes 3.25.11.
\item[341] Institutes 3.25.7; Tamburello, Union with Christ, 15.
\end{enumerate}
\end{footnotes}
resurrection but must, like his, be made incorruptible. In glory we will finally know the joy of experiencing all the excellences of God as he “will somehow make them to become one with himself.”

To be restored into the image of God is to look like Christ. Not that we will be equal to Christ but rather, holy as he is holy, putting off all sin and taking on all righteousness so we might resemble him entirely. We must also look to Christ in order to gain the assurance that we will be like him, for he is the “pledge of our coming resurrection.” For Calvin there is a neat symmetry. Christ, who restores us to the “proper order” (verum ordinem), is at last the true order to which we are restored.

We finally become true lovers of God and neighbor

Restoration of the true order brings man back to his original creation design where he loves “God in sincerity of heart” and acquiesces “to his good will” with thankfulness for all of God’s blessings. Then God gives us the greatest reward of all: himself. United to God we cannot but love others, for “brotherly love flows immediately from the love of God.” In glory the law of God is completed, for love of God and man “is right fulfillment of the law.”

Conclusion: Knowledge of glory leads us to depend on grace

Calvin’s portrait of glory aids the proper double-knowledge and our response to it. God is exalted in his goodness as he recreates heavenly perfection out of fallen man. Man is humbled as he sees both the contrast of his present and future states and his inability to reform himself. From this double-knowledge, man has a two-fold response: a movement of the heart upward in exaltation and a downward movement in

342 Institutes 3.25.7.
343 Institutes 3.25.8.
344 Institutes 3.25.9.
345 Institutes 2.15.4, 3.25.5.
346 Commentary, 1 John 3:2.
348 Commentary, 1 John 3:2.
349 Institutes 3.25.3.
350 Commentary, Isa. 35:1.
351 Commentary, 1 John 2:5.
352 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 119-20.
353 Institutes 3.19.6.
354 Institutes 3.25.10.
355 Commentary, 1 John 2:5.
356 Commentary, 1 John 3:10.
humble prostration. The move upward has us longing for heaven, such that we “always have in mind the eternal happiness,”357 a necessity in order to advance in holiness.358 The promise of heaven draws us upward toward life with God and away from sin in the world,359 while also giving us courage here that we “may not fail in this race.”360 The downward movement forces us to “groan and travail” over our current miserable state of sin which appears in sharp contrast.361 This negative comparison forces us to repent in humility, for we are “ashamed to languish in our corruption.”362 Forced to recognize our inability to close the gap between what we are and what we are to be, we must turn to God, who alone “accomplishes the salvation of his people,”363 a salvation that only grace, never human good works or Roman methods, could ever procure.

**V. Implications for Sanctification from his Anthropology**

In his anthropology Calvin patiently builds a case for the absolute need for divine help toward holiness. This help comes in the form of a true two-fold knowledge of God and self. We have seen in Chapter I the work of God in sanctification; to this we must add the insights of Calvin’s anthropology. Man, in a state of creation, shows us both God’s greatness in creating us so well and our own present littleness by contrast. The state of sin shows us how incapable we are of curing our sinfulness. The state of grace shows how continually dependent on God’s grace we are to effect our ongoing transformation into the image of God. The state of glory forces us to realize we cannot obtain the perfection we long for apart from depending on God. From these and Chapter I, we deduce a new principle from Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification which is so central and foundational we number it as 1:

**Principle 1: Two-fold Knowledge.** Because God created us to lovingly revere him, therefore gain knowledge of God and self thus to offer God prostration and reverence. The two-fold knowledge, of God’s greatness and of man’s depravity and inability to improve himself, leads the believer to respond to God with the two-fold motion of faith: downward in humble prostration before God and upward in thankful and loving reverence to God.

---

357 *Institutes* 3.25.9.
358 *Institutes* 3.25.1.
359 *Institutes* 3.25.2, 3.25.9.
360 *Institutes* 3.25.2.
361 *Institutes* 3.25.11.
362 *Institutes* 3.25.2.
363 *Commentary*, 1 Cor. 15:54.
As Calvin turned his hand to enhance the sanctification of the pastors he prepared for the ministry, he knew too well what he was up against. Sitting before him in his lectures and sermons were men filled with concupiscence, who cast down the name of God in order to lift up their own, who outstripped one another in pride and arrogance. His understanding of human nature in its four states applied directly to the sanctification of the students he would train in the Genevan Academy. He knew that he must convince them of their need to turn to Christ for holiness. “Therefore, if he seeks resources to succor him in his need, he must go outside himself and get them elsewhere.” These were the men he was soon to release on his beloved France, his beloved church. However, before he would they would require a cure, and the only cure that Calvin knew was the holiness that came from God, sought through faith and repentance.

364 Institutes 3.2.18.  
365 Institutes 3.20.1.
Chapter III -- Faith and Repentance

“Or nous-nous prosternerons devant la Maiesté de nostre bon Dieu.”

While we have seen both the divine role in making men holy and the human need for holiness, it is as Calvin looks at faith and repentance that we see more precisely how the work of God comes to fruition in the souls of men to make them holy. Faith and repentance become the essential gifts from God through which the benefits of Christ are applied to the lives of believers. Here we see the two-fold knowledge of God and self leading man to the proper two-fold response before God. With faith men are made to stop trusting in either their own goodness or ability to improve themselves and trust rather in the mercy of God in Christ for help. With repentance men are made to humble themselves before God and to turn to God for help.

I. Faith

Faith is knowledge of God’s goodness that bids us look to Christ

Calvin will define faith as knowledge. It is a “firm and certain knowledge of God’s benevolence toward us, founded upon the truth of the freely given promise in Christ, both revealed to our minds and sealed upon our hearts through the Holy Spirit.” This is not just any knowledge, such as an assent to the historical facts about Christ, but a certainty that God will be benevolent towards us because of Christ. Faith entails a two-fold movement: downward, we cease to trust in our ability to improve ourselves; upward, we look to Christ to transform us. As Dowey explains, “This knowledge involves a conscious turning away from false gods and an awareness of the promise of mercy of the true God as revealed in Christ.” Here we will explore the relationship of faith to sanctification by looking at the nature of faith by itself and the impact of faith on sanctification.

---

1 “Sermon on Gen. 25:21-22,” CO 58:44, “Now let us prostrate ourselves before the majesty of our good God.”
2 Institutes 3.2.7.
4 Institutes 3.2.8.
5 Dowey, Knowledge of God, 172.
In the logic of Calvin, faith precedes repentance, for no sinner would be willing to turn from their self-trust to trust in God until they first believed that God would receive and pardon sinners because of Christ. “Repentance not only constantly follows faith, but is also born of faith.” Repentance must also always be accompanied by faith for it to be true repentance and not a work of the flesh which can bear no fruit. It is the promise of faith that allows us to face our sin honestly and, seeing it as it is, to turn from our sinful self-confidence to rely wholly on the promises of God in Christ.

The nature of faith

Faith, a gift of God, is knowledge, certainty and trust

While we must have faith for sanctification to move forward in our lives, we cannot create faith by ourselves—faith is the gift of God. Neither is faith synergistic, partly God’s contribution and partly ours, but it is all of God. “Faith is a work of God.” The Holy Spirit is the author of faith in the life of God’s elect, since our minds are “too rude to be able to grasp the spiritual wisdom of God which is revealed to us through faith.” Faith is knowledge, but a higher knowledge. While reasonable, it is beyond the confines of human reason, for no one “can arrive at faith by his own sagacity.” This knowledge is assurance more than simply comprehension, persuasion more than just cognition, involving the will and reason.

True faith must consist of certainty—assurance. “For Calvin it was not possible to partake of salvation without being sure of it.” Thus he argued with Rome, which saw the Reformer’s certainty as a “vain and ungodly confidence,”

---

6 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 64.
7 Commentary, Jer. 26:3.
8 Institutes 3.3.1.
9 Commentary, Jer. 23:22.
10 Institutes 3.2.8.
11 Commentary, Rom. 1:8.
12 Commentary, John 6:29; 2 Pet. 1:3; Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 123.
13 Commentary, John 6:38.
15 Institutes 3.2.3.
16 Institutes 3.2.14.
17 Commentary, John 6:65.
18 Institutes 3.2.14.
19 Richard, Spirituality of John Calvin, 152; Dowey, Knowledge of God, 184.
20 Muller, Unaccommodated, 170-72.
21 Institutes 3.2.15; Commentary, John 6:40; Rom. 10:10.
22 Lane, “Assurance,” 32.
23 Canons of Trent, 35.
since Rome maintained only pure holiness could ever make one certain of salvation.\textsuperscript{24} Calvin’s certainty, however, was founded upon election,\textsuperscript{25} based upon Christ,\textsuperscript{26} given by the “inward and secret testimony of the Spirit”\textsuperscript{27} and arising from the doctrines of Scripture as applied to the individual believer.\textsuperscript{28} “It is the knowledge of my salvation…of God as my Father.”\textsuperscript{29} As Beeke writes, faith “contains personal, \textit{subjective} assurance,” so that the believer may know that God is gracious toward him.\textsuperscript{30} While assurance is not grounded upon either an internal self-examination or a survey of one’s good works,\textsuperscript{31} either may serve to confirm assurance.\textsuperscript{32} Such an examination may lead us to a right faith which will “repose in the safety and favor of God…with a firm and steadfast assurance.”\textsuperscript{33} This is not to say that an imperfect faith is not real faith, for Calvin was careful to distinguish between our always imperfect faith and counterfeit faith.\textsuperscript{34}

Faith is not only a higher knowledge than reason alone can comprehend, but faith also includes a “devout disposition”\textsuperscript{35} of the mind and heart toward God—trust.\textsuperscript{36} Faith in its essence contains not only assent (\textit{assensus}) to objective knowledge (\textit{cognitio})\textsuperscript{37} but also subjective trust (\textit{fiducia}).\textsuperscript{38} “Faith is trust. It is a trusting and confident knowledge.”\textsuperscript{39} This trust cannot be trust in the abstract; one must personally trust in Christ for mercy.\textsuperscript{40} This trust requires the heart to turn from all

\begin{footnotes}
\item[26] \textit{Commentary}, Rom. 4:21; 1 John 2:3.
\item[28] \textit{Institutes} 3.2.6.
\item[29] Lane, “Assurance,” 43.
\item[31] Lane, “Assurance,” 35.
\item[33] \textit{Commentary}, 2 Cor. 13:5.
\item[35] \textit{Institutes} 3.2.8.
\item[36] \textit{Institutes} 3.3.2.
\item[37] Beeke, “Assurance,” 49.
\item[38] Lane, “Assurance,” 43.
\end{footnotes}
other trusts to trust in God alone,\textsuperscript{41} and therefore faith must reside “not in the ears, but in the heart.”\textsuperscript{42}

Faith leads to more faith, which is more knowledge and more trust, “a lively and real sense of his power, which produces confidence.”\textsuperscript{43} This trust of God spills over into love for him as well. “To believe is to love God on account of his goodness toward us.”\textsuperscript{44}

**Faith rests on the Word of God which promises us mercy in Christ**

Faith always arises from the Word of God and depends upon it for its continued existence.\textsuperscript{45} “The same Word is the basis whereby faith is supported and sustained.”\textsuperscript{46}

As sun rays are dependent on the sun, as the fruit depends on the fruit tree, so is faith dependent on the Word.\textsuperscript{47} Faith, however, does not arise from the Word impersonally but as God’s Word is personally apprehended and applied.\textsuperscript{48}

While faith is wholly dependent on Scripture, it is not faith in the Bible, *per se*, but faith in Christ as presented in Scripture to which one must look as the final object of faith.\textsuperscript{49} “It is Christ alone on whom, strictly speaking, faith ought to look.”\textsuperscript{50} More than that, it is Christ who creates the “experiential certitude of faith in the heart.”\textsuperscript{51} Mere belief in the facts of Scripture could never be enough.\textsuperscript{52} Faith must look through Scripture to see Christ.\textsuperscript{53}

It is Christ to whom faith must look, yet not all of Scripture holds forth, with equal clarity, the truth of the mercy of God in Christ. While faith accepts all of God’s Word, it does not spring from commandments and threats, true as they may be, but from the freely given promise of Christ.\textsuperscript{54} Even in the Old Testament era, faith was

\begin{thebibliography}{9}
\bibitem{41} Dowey, *Knowledge of God*, 172.
\bibitem{42} *Commentary*, John 5:24; Fuhrmann, *Instruction*, 38.
\bibitem{43} *Commentary*, 1 John 2:28.
\bibitem{44} Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 192. Calvin appears to concur with Aquinas on this, insisting, however, that love only follows faith. Cf. Godfrey, “Faith Alone,” 270; *Institutes* 3.2.41.
\bibitem{47} *Institutes* 3.2.31.
\bibitem{48} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 213.
\bibitem{50} *Commentary*, Gen. 12:2; cf. Jonah 3:5; John 3:16.
\bibitem{51} Schreiner, “Certainty,” 117.
\bibitem{52} *Institutes* 3.2.30.
\bibitem{53} *Institutes* 3.2.31; Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 124.
\bibitem{54} *Institutes* 3.2.29.
\end{thebibliography}
only truly faith as it looked to Christ, though he was seen less clearly.\textsuperscript{55} We may rightly teach all the Word of God with its call to good works, but it is ultimately to have our hearers “contemplate the grace of Christ” that we teach.\textsuperscript{56} To grow in faith we must be fed on a constant diet of Christ.\textsuperscript{57}

**Faith and prayer**

For Calvin faith and prayer are tied together. “But after we have been instructed by faith to recognize that whatever we need…is in God…it remains for us…in prayers to ask of him.”\textsuperscript{58} Prayer relies on faith since prayer is not the “idle lifting up of the voice, but the presentation of our petitions from an inward principle of faith.”\textsuperscript{59} While prayer, as “the expression of a living faith,”\textsuperscript{60} should be constant, it is wise to have times during the day when one especially focuses on prayer: in the morning, before starting work, at meals and bedtime.\textsuperscript{61} Prayer, while in essence humble, should be at the same time bold, based on God’s promises in Scripture.\textsuperscript{62} “A dauntless spirit of praying rightly accords with fear, reverence, and solicitude.”\textsuperscript{63} In a way prayer, being connected to faith, was the “vital heart of piety for Calvin”\textsuperscript{64} and underscored all the virtues of the Christian life.\textsuperscript{65} Self-denial, cross-bearing, meditation on the future life, repentance—all of the Christian life involves this essential dialogue with God in prayer. “The primary exercise which the children of God have is to pray; because here indeed is the true proof of our faith.”\textsuperscript{66}

**The result of faith**

**Through faith we are sanctified by Christ**

As Calvin considers the role of faith in sanctification, he has a simple conclusion: sanctification is growth in faith, growth in faith is sanctification.\textsuperscript{67} It is as the Lord

\begin{footnotes}
\footnote{55 Dowey, *Knowledge of God*, 164-65.}
\footnote{56 Commentary, 1 John 2:11.}
\footnote{57 Institutes 3.2.7.}
\footnote{58 Institutes 3.20.1. Cf. Lobstein, *Die Ethik Calvins*, 94.}
\footnote{60 Wallace, *Christian Life*, 271.}
\footnote{62 Wallace, *Christian Life*, 279.}
\footnote{63 Institutes 3.20.14.}
\footnote{64 McKee, “Spirituality,” 466.}
\footnote{65 Lobstein, *Die Ethik Calvins*, 94.}
\footnote{66 “Sermon on 1 Tim. 2:1-2,” CO 53:125.}
\footnote{67 Institutes 3.2.17.}
\end{footnotes}
“breathes faith into us” that we have “newness of life.” Godfrey correctly concludes, “True faith is also the fountain of sanctification, love, and repentance.” Every aspect of our new life, regeneration, forgiveness, repentance, is all “attained by us through faith.” All our progress in holiness is linked directly to our growth in faith, which is sanctification’s “subjective” cause.

It is not that faith possesses some magical power to improve us, but rather that faith is the conduit through which Christ flows to us, and he does have the power to make us holy. “For since faith…receives Christ, it puts us in possession…of all his blessings.” The more faith we have, the more we are united to Christ, who transforms us and advances us in holiness. “We conquer by faith, because we derive strength from Christ.”

We must never think or act as though we could become holy by the effort of flesh and blood. While conformity to the law from the heart outward is God’s plan for us, he accomplishes this not by human power but through faith in Christ. “Faith achieves what the law commands.” Nor should we expect, as did Rome, that we must add to faith our love, rather it is faith which produces love. As we are justified by faith, so too are we sanctified by faith, the double grace given to us by Christ. Faith mortifies the old man and quickens the new, it leads us to humility, it obtains what we ask in prayer, and it quiets our mind with a “firm and steady conviction” so that we may boldly face any foe.

---

68 Commentary, John 1:13.
69 Godfrey, “Faith Alone,” 274.
70 Institutes 3.3.1.
72 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 28.
74 Marcel, “Justification and Sanctification,” 139.
75 Commentary, John 1:13.
76 Kolhau, Christusgemeinschaft, 35-36.
77 Institutes 3.2.19.
78 Commentary, 1 John 5:5.
80 Institutes 2.5.7.
81 Godfrey, “Faith Alone,” 274.
82 Institutes 3.11.1.
83 Institutes 3.3.3.
84 Commentary, Ps. 37:7.
85 Institutes 3.20.11.
86 Commentary, Eph. 1:13.
87 Institutes 3.2.15.
Sanctification is a struggle for growth in faith against unbelief

Faith does not exist in a placid pool in the heart of the believer. Rather faith is constantly engaged in a battle, a struggle in the human heart, always fighting against doubt and unbelief. Indeed, the Christian struggle is not primarily for outward morality but “the struggle between faith and doubt, certainty and fear, belief and unbelief.” We rightly aim for an increase in faith, but the increase itself is a struggle. "Our faith cannot and should not exist without battle." This is not a struggle that we enter into episodically but a battle that must be fought each hour of each day.

There is an apparent contradiction in Calvin, who asserts that faith is assurance yet acknowledges that all believers have a “perpetual conflict with their own unbelief” as they struggle for a “fuller confirmation.” “While we teach that faith ought to be certain and assured, we cannot imagine any certainty that is not tinged with doubt, or any assurance that is not assailed by some anxiety.” The contradiction is, however, only apparent. Calvin carefully defines faith as being comprised in its essence as certainty, yet he recognizes that the whole of the human soul is not possessed by faith, because unbelief, doubt, dwells right beside it. While faith possesses assurance by nature, man possesses doubt by his fallen nature. It is the presence of unbelief in the fleshly heart of man, not any defect in faith proper, that causes the struggle within us.

This struggle between faith and doubt is a struggle between two world-views, one which doubts God’s goodness and one which believes in it. “In the struggle of faith there are internal conflicts.” Our flesh, the world and, in particular the devil, want to draw our attention to the hardships and disappointments of life to

88 Schreiner, “Certainty,” 119.
89 Commentary, John 2:11.
90 “Sermon on 1 Tim. 1:5,” CO 53:29.
91 Institutes 4.17.40.
92 Lane, “Assurance,” 33.
93 Institutes 3.2.17.
94 Commentary, 1 John 5:13.
95 Institutes 3.2.17.
96 Institutes 3.2.15.
97 Institutes 3.2.4.
98 Lane, “Assurance,” 33; Beeke, “Assurance,” 54.
99 Steinmetz, Context, 117.
100 Beeke, “Assurance,” 53-54.
101 Commentary, Jonah 2:4.
convince us that God cannot be trusted. \(^{102}\) “Satan hunts for nothing more than to involve us in various and intricate disputes, and he is an acute disputant, yea, and a sophist.” \(^{103}\) Selderhuis explains this “theology from below.” “Satan takes advantage of such a theology and the feelings generated by it. We do not feel anything of God’s benefits, and so, we think, he has probably forgotten us.” \(^{104}\) Likewise those who prosper are tempted to think it is by their own hand and therefore discount God’s role. \(^{105}\) The Lord, however, wants to draw our attention to the promise of His Word, to assure us that he can be trusted despite any circumstance. \(^{106}\)

We must struggle all our lives with doubt as part of the normal Christian life, \(^{107}\) yet unbelief “does not hold sway within believers’ hearts” but assails us, as if it were, from outside. \(^{108}\) The simple struggle for faith is itself the victory, for when we strive for faith we are “already in large part victorious.” \(^{109}\) The struggle for faith against unbelief is necessary for faith to grow, just as exercise is necessary for an athlete, it is the very “struggle for faith that changes us.” \(^{110}\) Without the struggle faith would not only fail to advance but atrophy. \(^{111}\) While we always struggle for faith, we always triumph by faith in Christ. \(^{112}\)

Growth in faith means an increase in two aspects of faith: we move from ignorance of God to knowledge of him and we move from uncertainty to certainty in that same knowledge. \(^{113}\) As we fight for more certainty, we fight for more of what is known by faith: that God will keep all of his promises to us. \(^{114}\) Even while in the struggle, the promises of God give us the repose of certainty. “As soon as the promises have been embraced, souls that were restless and uneasy are made calm.” \(^{115}\)

It is precisely at this point that Calvin faults the Roman doctrine of fides implicita, even while acknowledging that faith is always imperfect and in some way


\(^{103}\) Commentary, Jer. 16:19.


\(^{105}\) Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 204-05.

\(^{106}\) Institutes 3.2.6.

\(^{107}\) Institutes 3.2.17.

\(^{108}\) Institutes 3.2.21.

\(^{109}\) Institutes 3.2.17.

\(^{110}\) Institutes 4.17.40.

\(^{111}\) Wallace, Christian Life, 252.

\(^{112}\) Institutes 3.2.18.


\(^{114}\) Commentary, 1 John 5:13.

\(^{115}\) Commentary, Isa. 30:15.
Whereas *fides implicita* calls for faith in the Church and leaves faith stagnated in uncertainty, true faith, as distinguished from false, must be both placed in the right object—Christ—and growing in certainty that his promise applies to us. From this we derive our next principle concerning the struggle for faith.

**Principle 6: Faith. Because God sanctifies by giving more faith, therefore struggle daily for more faith to become more holy.** Holiness grows with faith, and faith, as a gift of God, arises from hearing the Word of God while also ignoring the world, the flesh and the devil, which all bid us to doubt God by focusing on negative circumstances.

The godly teacher will teach of Christ to increase faith

Since we must have more faith for growth in holiness, and since we cannot create faith ourselves, we must seek faith from God by hearing the “preaching of the Gospel” which grows faith, “that our faith may increase through the whole course of our life.” Because of this dynamic, Calvin was certain that the Roman Catholic approaches to sanctification, which failed to rightly grasp the role of preaching Christ, could not possibly increase faith, the essential goal and means of sanctification, and were therefore contrary to holiness.

Because faith only rightly takes Christ as its object, then the faithful pastor only rightly has one subject which to emphasize: “God’s benevolence toward us, founded upon the truth of the freely given promise in Christ.” It is only as we are taught of the “office and power of Christ” that faith grows, and therefore sanctification presses forward in our lives. The godly teacher must therefore return constantly to this one theme: “It is therefore the duty of a godly teacher, in order to confirm disciples in the faith, to extol as much as possible the grace of Christ, so that being satisfied with that, we may seek nothing else.”

---

118 *Institutes* 3.2.19.
119 *Institutes* 3.2.16; Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 195.
120 *Commentary*, Mark 9:24.
121 *Commentary*, Heb. 3:15. Cf. *Institutes* 3.2.21.
122 *Commentary*, 1 John 5:13.
123 *Commentary*, 1 John 5:13.
124 *Institutes* 3.2.7.
125 *Commentary*, 1 John 5:13; John 6:29.
126 *Commentary*, 1 John 5:13.
II. Repentance

Gospel repentance was Calvin’s answer to Roman penance

As with the other reformers who preceded him, Calvin would emphasize the vital role of repentance for progress in sanctification.\textsuperscript{127} “For Calvin, the Christian life is simply the constant practice of repentance.”\textsuperscript{128} While modern Reformed theologians define repentance as a narrow subset of sanctification,\textsuperscript{129} Calvin, while sometimes using the term that way, often uses it to represent sanctification in its entirety. Similarly, Calvin will at times use the terms repentance and regeneration synonymously.\textsuperscript{130} However, in general, regeneration is used to refer to God’s work in making us holy, and repentance is used to describe the human response to God’s work.\textsuperscript{131} Calvin does offer a succinct working definition of repentance, which mirrors the modern emphasis on turning: “It is the true turning of our life to God, a turning that arises from a pure and earnest fear of him; and it consists in the mortification of our flesh and of the old man, and in the vivification of the Spirit.”\textsuperscript{132} Repentance then contains a two-fold movement, a sorrowful turning from sin and a hopeful turning to God, both of which have a view to the mercy of God in Christ.\textsuperscript{133} Calvin will often use repentance in two distinct senses: he refers to the “first repentance” of conversion\textsuperscript{134} and then to the daily repentance needed throughout the Christian life.\textsuperscript{135} It is this later use which we explore.

Repentance relates to faith as a stream does to a spring, for repentance flows from faith.\textsuperscript{136} While repentance and faith “are so linked together that they cannot be


\textsuperscript{129} As does the Westminster Shorter Catechism Question 87: “Repentance unto life is a saving grace, whereby a sinner, out of a true sense of his sin, and apprehension of the mercy of God in Christ, doth, with grief and hatred of his sin, turn from it unto God, with full purpose of, and endeavor after, new obedience.” P. Schaff (ed.), \textit{The Creeds of Christendom}, 3 vols. (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Book House, 1977) 3:695.

\textsuperscript{130} Such as \textit{Institutes} 3.3.9, “Therefore, in a word, I interpret repentance as regeneration, whose sole end is to restore in us the image of God.”

\textsuperscript{131} C. P. Venema, \textit{Accepted and Renewed in Christ: The "Twofold Grace of God" and the Interpretation of Calvin’s Theology} (Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht, 2007) 111-12.

\textsuperscript{132} \textit{Institutes} 3.3.5.

\textsuperscript{133} \textit{Institutes} 3.3.3.

\textsuperscript{134} \textit{Commentary}, Heb. 6:1.


\textsuperscript{136} \textit{Institutes} 3.3.1.
separate,” they must be distinguished. They are distinguished by their nature: repentance is a turning to God, faith a receiving of grace “offered us in Christ.” They are distinguished as well by their order: repentance both follows faith and is “born of faith.” Repentance cannot precede faith, for we must first understand God’s gracious mercy before we can avail ourselves of it in repentance.

**Repentance occurs primarily in the grieving heart of man rather than externally**

Calvin differed sharply with Rome over the nature of repentance, as did the other Reformers. The Roman notion of penance emphasized external contrition manifested by “many tears and labors” and the “outward fruits of penitence,” often to the exclusion of “the inward renewal of the mind, which bears with it true correction of life.” Calvin, following in line with the *devotio moderna*, emphasized the internal life of the heart in relationship with God. “In order to serve God properly our hearts must be surrendered to him…affection must precede [everything else].” True repentance is the “ rending not of garments but of the heart,” for repentance occurs “in the soul itself,” so that a man is “renewed in the spirit of his mind.”

True repentance must include grief, for “repentance takes its rise in grief,” along with a “dissatisfaction and hatred of sin,” such that we are “made sore by the sting of sin,” and angry with our sin, we turn to the Lord for relief. When we do experience the sorrow of repentance it both flows from a heart changed by God and changes our heart for God.

---

139 Institutes 3.3.1.
140 Institutes 3.3.2. Cf. Commentary, Hos. 6:1.
142 Canons of Trent, 90.
143 Commentary, Ezek. 18:30.
144 Institutes 3.4.1.
146 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 109.
147 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 293.
148 Institutes 3.3.17.
149 Institutes 3.3.6.
150 Commentary, Acts 2:38.
151 Commentary, 2 Cor. 7:10.
153 Institutes 3.3.4.
154 Commentary, 2 Cor. 7:11.
155 Commentary, 2 Cor. 7:10; Jer. 14:20.
156 Commentary, 2 Cor. 7:10.
Calvin draws several careful distinctions between a heart that rightly hates sin in Gospel repentance and the Roman Catholic desire to self-flagellate in order to atone for sins with contrition. First, while Trent proclaimed that one must, “with a hatred of sin and a sincere sorrow of heart, detest so great an offence against God,” Calvin asserted that this was for Rome generally only a superficial exercise. Second, our hatred of our sin cannot be considered in any way to “compensate to God for the punishment due to him.” Third, contrition, “repentance of the law,” would always leave the Christian unsure if his grief had been deep enough, producing “truly miserable consciences,” “stricken by dread of God’s wrath.” By contrast, Gospel repentance makes the conscience quiet with assurance before God.

**Repentance produces deep changes in behavior and is life long**

While Calvin will insist that true repentance occurs first in the heart, he will equally insist that repentance must then demonstrate itself outwardly, as the “fruits and proofs of repentance” which are “proved by the conduct” that is, a life conformed more and more toward obedience. The fruit of repentance can never be merely some “frivolous works” of satisfactions, assigned by a confessor; rather it must be a real turning away from the sins which had been committed toward “innocence and holiness.”

Though Roman penance was practiced over the entire lifetime, it was often relegated to an annual observance during Lent, rather than a daily, even hourly, struggle. Calvin recognized that since we will never be sinless in this world, expecting Christ to perfect us in heaven, we must continually, daily, even “every moment,” practice repentance to make progress in holiness.

---

156 *Canons of Trent*, 89.
157 *Institutes* 3.4.1.
158 *Commentary*, 2 Cor. 7:11.
159 *Institutes* 3.4.2.
160 *Institutes* 3.3.4.
161 *Institutes* 3.4.3.
162 *Institutes* 3.3.6.
163 *Commentary*, Ezek. 18:30.
164 *Commentary*, Matt. 3:8.
167 *Institutes* 3.3.2; *Canons of Trent*, 94.
168 *Institutes* 3.17.15.
169 *Institutes* 3.25.10.
170 *Commentary*, Heb. 6:1.
171 *Institutes* 4.1.23.
Repentance is a work of God yet requires effort from man

Repentance is gift of God, by grace, given through the Holy Spirit

Although man is active in repentance, it is not a work accomplished by the power of man but rather “a singular gift of God,”174 “attained by us through faith,”175 such that “it cannot be ascribed to human powers.”176 Even the command to repent does not prove our ability to repent by human effort.177 Rather, the command is meant to underscore our inability to even repent on our own, so that we must seek God’s help more fully178 and appreciate his help more deeply.179

If repentance “is given by God,”180 then what does God give us in repentance? God confronts our sin, externally through his Word and internally through his Spirit.181 He grants us the conviction that we have sinned against him, so we no longer blame others for our sin.182 Having been confronted by God, he holds out “the hope of pardon” to us, turning us toward him183 to “implore God’s forgiveness.”184 God softens our heart185 toward him, so we are not only able to turn to him in repentance186 but will actually do so.187

Repentance calls for man to participate in response to God’s work

As clearly as Calvin will assert that repentance is a work of grace, he will argue that man has a role.188 He says, “We must strive toward repentance itself.”189 We are to humble ourselves before God asking him to make us feel our sins all the more.190 We must always “shake off sloth and carelessness,” standing guard against sin191 and

---

173 Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:8.
174 Institutes 3.3.21. Cf. Commentary, Matt. 3:2; Rom. 6:21.
175 Institutes 3.3.1.
176 Commentary, Jer. 31:19.
177 Commentary, Jer. 31:19.
178 Calvin, BLW, 141-42.
179 Institutes 3.2.23.
180 Commentary, Heb. 6:6.
181 Calvin, BLW, 163-64.
182 Commentary, Ezek. 18:32.
183 Commentary, Jer. 8:4-5.
184 Sermons on Micah, 11.
186 Sermons on Micah, 7; Commentary, Jer. 31:19.
187 Calvin, BLW, 211.
188 Institutes 2.16.13.
189 Institutes 3.3.20.
190 McKee, Pastoral Piety, 265.
191 Institutes 3.3.14.
praying that God will turn us from sin. We must heed God’s condemnation of our
sin, confessing them rather than clinging to them, lest God proves himself “far
more obdurate than we” in forcing us to repent. We are to “struggle manfully” for holiness, actively resisting sin, all the while trusting that God will complete his
good work in us.

We must not make the mistake of Rome, however, thinking that our repentance purchases for us the grace of God by merit, for it is God’s grace, in both faith and forgiveness, which leads us to repentance. Our repentance, always imperfect, could not merit grace but flows from the grace we have already received, inviting yet more unmerited grace.

**Repentance flows from fear of God’s judgment, with an eye to mercy**

Repentance emerges from the belief that God will punish the unrepentant sinner. “Repentance proceeds from an earnest fear of God.” We must believe we are sinners, for the man who judges himself righteous will detect no cause to repent. We must believe that God’s word of judgment threatens us, a regular theme in Calvin’s sermons. We only truly learn to hate our sin and turn from it when we see how it invites God’s judgment.

Not all fear of God leads to godly repentance, however. There is a fear which does not view God’s mercy but rather leaves the sinner “tormented by a sense of their own punishment.” This fear, a repentance of the law, may lead the sinner to

---

192 Commentary, Ps. 19:13.
193 Sermons on Micah, 133, 152; Commentary, 1 John 1:9.
194 Sermons on Micah, 11.
195 Institutes 4.15.11.
196 Commentary, Rom. 6:11.
197 Institutes 3.6.5.
198 Institutes 3.1.3.
199 Institutes 3.4.27.
200 Commentary, Matt. 4:17.
201 Commentary, 2 Cor. 7:10.
202 Commentary, Matt. 3:2.
203 Institutes 3.4.27.
204 Calvin, BLW, 152.
205 Calvin, BLW, 175.
temporarily flee the sin but always leads to fleeing God’s presence, trapping the sinner “in that disturbed state.”

Therefore, we must not think of repentance as being exclusively attached to judgment and faith to mercy, for repentance, too, has its origin in grace. Unless we first believe that God will be gracious to us, we will not repent. Even God’s wrath and our subsequent fear are meant to lead us to mercy. Repentance only comes as faith in God’s judgment on our sin intersects with faith in God’s mercy to us. There is an “inseparable link” between God’s love and our repentance: “The foundation of repentance is the mercy of God.”

**Repentance entails two motions: downward in prostration and upward in reverence**

**The downward movement: prostration**

Calvin called for the downward movement before God in his earliest version of the *Institutes*. “From this knowledge of our poverty and calamity we learn to humble ourselves and to cast ourselves before God to seek his mercy.” He will use one term in particular to describe this downward movement of the human soul: prostration (La.: prosterno, Fr.: prosterner). As they come to a true knowledge of God and self, men are “to prostrate themselves before God.”

Everyone must prostrate themselves before God. “He exhorts them to stand in awe of him, and to prostrate themselves [se prostrant] humbly before him.” Calvin would typically close each sermon with a call to prostration. “But now let us

---

212 *Commentary*, Heb. 12:17.
213 *Institutes* 3.3.4.
214 Wallace, *Christian Life*, 97. We would contend that Leithart overstates, or at least over simplifies, the role of fear when he states, “Calvin claimed that the Christian life of repentance is motivated by fear.” Certainly fear is an element but so is mercy, and perhaps an even greater one. P. J. Leithart, “Stoic Elements in Calvin’s Doctrine of the Christian Life, Part 2: Mortification,” *Westminster Theological Journal* 55 (1993) 195.
215 *Institutes* 3.3.2; *Commentary*, Jer. 18:11; 26:3; Mark 1:14; Lobstein, *Die Ethik Calvins*, 66.
217 *Commentary*, Acts 8:22; Venema, *Accepted and Renewed*, 118.
218 *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 569.
221 *Commentary*, Ps. 22:27.
222 *Commentary*, Ps. 72:11.
fall down [nous-nous prosternerons] before the majesty of our good God, in acknowledging our faults.”

The call to prostration before God is no accident; it is a return to the natural order which was supplanted in the fall by the unnatural act of man standing in arrogance before God. Man must be humbled before God, as reflected in the requirement for humility before a parent,\textsuperscript{225} in order that the kingdom of Christ may be established. Indeed, Christ came to restore man to his rightful place—kneeling before God.\textsuperscript{226}

**The upward movement: reverence**

Several terms compete, in Calvin’s usage, to describe the upward turn to God: fear, love, trust, thankfulness, reverence and piety.\textsuperscript{227} While Gerrish has made an argument for describing this upward movement with the term thankfulness,\textsuperscript{228} we find another term more dominant in Calvin: reverence (La.: reverentia, Fr.: révérence).\textsuperscript{229} Selderhuis concurs, “The attitude we must assume toward God is best expressed in the word ‘reverence.’”\textsuperscript{230} Reverence more easily encompasses love, fear, trust and thankfulness.\textsuperscript{231} It captures more neatly the relationship that we are to have with God in sanctification: “to reverence him as our Father.”\textsuperscript{232}

Reverence, born of God’s benevolence\textsuperscript{233} yet with an appreciation of his wrath,\textsuperscript{234} leads us to glorify God and worship him for his mercy rather than to glory in any work of our own.\textsuperscript{235} Reverence calls us to obey and serve our God,\textsuperscript{236} in order to bring him honor,\textsuperscript{237} as we did at creation.\textsuperscript{238} This reverence, though similar to the

\textsuperscript{224} “Sermon on Gen. 25:20-22,” CO 58:44.
\textsuperscript{225} Institutes 2.8.35.
\textsuperscript{226} Commentary, 1 Cor. 10:4.
\textsuperscript{227} Institutes 1.2.2, 2.8.16, 1.2.1.
\textsuperscript{228} B. A. Gerrish, Grace and Gratitude, the Eucharistic Theology of John Calvin (Eugene, Oreg.: Wipf & Stock Publishers, 2002) 41.
\textsuperscript{229} Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 293, “Accordingly, if we want to keep the law correctly and want our life acceptable to God, then we must begin in this way: by showing him reverence.” Cf. Commentary, Luke 1:46-50; Rom. 4:23-25; 1 Cor. 3:16-23; Eph. 3:1-6.
\textsuperscript{230} Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 192.
\textsuperscript{231} Institutes 2.8.1.
\textsuperscript{232} Institutes 3.17.6.
\textsuperscript{233} Commentary, Gen. 4:2.
\textsuperscript{234} Commentary, Jonah 1:16.
\textsuperscript{235} Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 298.
\textsuperscript{236} Sermons on Micah, 55.
\textsuperscript{237} Institutes 3.20.41.
\textsuperscript{238} Commentary, Gen. 2:16.
filial love for a parent, must exceed all earthly loves\textsuperscript{239} and thus fulfill the whole duty of the first table of the law “by showing him reverence.”\textsuperscript{240}

**The two-fold movement is simultaneous**

These two movements of the heart—prostration and reverence—are to occur simultaneously and constantly in repentance.\textsuperscript{241} “Now let us fall down before the majesty of our good God…and give ourselves wholly to our Lord Jesus Christ.”\textsuperscript{242} Knowledge of ourselves before God will lead us simultaneously to “arouse” ourselves to divine worship (reverence) and to prostrate ourselves in “extreme confusion.”\textsuperscript{243} These right motions of repentance stand in contrast to the wrong motion of sin, as Torrance points out. “That is the essential motion of sin, unthankful arrogance and self-glorification, which runs directly contrary to the very motion of the grace of God.”\textsuperscript{244} Torrance describes another motion, the motion of grace, which initiates the two-fold motion of repentance.\textsuperscript{245} We will find these two motions connected repeatedly in Calvin’s thought and exhortations. “To despair in ourselves so that we may be comforted in him; to abase ourselves so that we may be lifted up by him; to accuse ourselves so that we may be justified by him.”\textsuperscript{246}

**Prostration is necessary because man is naturally proud**

The original order of man was one of humility before God, an order which was entirely reversed by the fall such that man lives in a state of arrogant pride and self-exaltation, denying God his rightful place.\textsuperscript{247} Because “humanity craves to be flattered,”\textsuperscript{248} man must be “brought to nothing in his own estimation.”\textsuperscript{249} Men must be stripped entirely of any thought of their own glory, for any good in them comes from God\textsuperscript{250} and only makes them “debtors to his grace,”\textsuperscript{251} that they might live sanely in the real universe with a God who alone is all glorious. Man’s pride in

\textsuperscript{239} Commentary, Matt. 10:37.
\textsuperscript{240} Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 293.
\textsuperscript{241} Institutes 3.20.42.
\textsuperscript{242} Sermons on Galatians, 498; cf. Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 47.
\textsuperscript{243} Institutes 2.1.3.
\textsuperscript{244} Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 115.
\textsuperscript{245} Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 115.
\textsuperscript{246} Institutes 4.17.42.
\textsuperscript{247} Institutes 2.1.2.
\textsuperscript{248} Sermons on Micah, 9.
\textsuperscript{249} Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:31.
\textsuperscript{250} Commentary, Isa. 2:22.
\textsuperscript{251} Commentary, 1 Cor. 7.4.
trusting his own reason must be humbled too,\textsuperscript{252} in order that he may meekly receive the Word of God.\textsuperscript{253} Since humility is contrary to man’s fallen nature, God must work to humble him, by opposing his “in-turned understanding and self-grounded reason” in order to reduce man to dependence on the Word and Spirit\textsuperscript{254} that he might be filled with truth.\textsuperscript{255} Man must come to an accurate self-assessment, wherein he sees himself in his lowly estate\textsuperscript{256} in order to make “any approach to the doctrine of Christ.”\textsuperscript{257} This humility must never be merely a lowly appearance but a true lowness of spirit,\textsuperscript{258} an “unfeigned submission of our heart,” arising from true knowledge of its “own misery and want.”\textsuperscript{259}

Humility is given to us as we gain a true knowledge of ourselves before God as totally dependent creatures.\textsuperscript{260} We are dependent moment by moment on the sustaining hand of God just to exist.\textsuperscript{261} Even the immortality of our souls is borrowed from the continued power of God who maintains them.\textsuperscript{262} We are dependent on God’s providence who orders our lives as he wills, so we must “render subjection to him in all humility and obedience.”\textsuperscript{263} We are dependent upon God for all our good and success in this world,\textsuperscript{264} for “just one little breath of God can remove our glory for eternity.”\textsuperscript{265}

Scripture, too, humbles us by comparing us to God, rather than to other sinful men whom we may outshine.\textsuperscript{266} Compared to the spotless purity of God, we are dark blotches on his universe, even our best deeds pale next to his holiness.\textsuperscript{267} Scripture humbles us by appraising us of our current “miserable ruin,”\textsuperscript{268} comparing it to our created state, so that we have nothing left in which to take pride\textsuperscript{269} and must “humble

\begin{footnotes}
\item 252 Calvin, \textit{BLW}, 25.
\item 253 \textit{Sermons on Micah}, 50.
\item 254 “Sermon on Deut. 4:19-24,” \textit{CO} 26:160.
\item 255 \textit{Commentary}, 2 Cor. 10:5.
\item 256 \textit{Commentary}, 2 Cor. 10:4.
\item 257 \textit{Commentary}, 2 Cor. 10:5.
\item 258 \textit{Sermons on Micah}, 23.
\item 259 \textit{Institutes} 3.12.6.
\item 260 Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 190.
\item 261 \textit{Commentary}, Ps. 103:15.
\item 262 “Sermon on 1 Tim. 1:17-19,” \textit{CO} 53:89-100.
\item 263 “Sermon on Job 1:1,” \textit{CO} 33:21.
\item 264 \textit{Institutes} 3.20.27.
\item 265 \textit{Sermons on Micah}, 60.
\item 266 \textit{Institutes} 3.12.2.
\item 267 \textit{Institutes} 3.12.4.
\item 268 \textit{Institutes} 1.1.1.
\item 269 \textit{Institutes} 2.1.3.
\end{footnotes}
ourselves...before God.”

“Its whole end is to restrain our pride, to humble us, cast us down, and utterly crush us.” Scripture convinces us of sin and reduces us to humility before God that we might “flee to grace,” through repentance.

Man, however, will not yield himself easily to this understanding of sin and will at times need the church to confront his sinfulness when he obstinately refuses to yield to God’s Word on its own merit. Steinmetz suggests, “Repentance is, if you will not misunderstand me, a churchly function.” The church is given clear instructions as to how to confront one caught in sin so as to lead them to repentance. Aware of this need, it was arranged that both the members of the Company of Pastors and the students of the Academy would have ample opportunity for their sins to be personally confronted by others.

**Humility comes from self-examination and confession**

Because humility is given to us as we are convicted by the Word, we must be willing to examine ourselves for the least sin. Self-examination, supplemental for assurance of faith, is essential to the humility of repentance. “If they descended within themselves, and sincerely examined their whole life, they would be instantly humbled before God; hence that thought should stimulate them to repentance.” This descent into the self, or descensus in se, is part of the downward motion where man, after looking at God, must descend “from contemplating him to scrutinize himself.” Battles describes this in saying, “Two movements, as we have seen, mark for John Calvin the initial steps of the soul’s return to God: our upward vision of God as he accommodates himself to our feeble capacity, and our downward contemplation of ourselves within...the...descensus in se.”

---

271 *Institutes* 3.18.4.
272 *Institutes* 2.7.9.
273 *Commentary*, Jer. 15:10; 26:3.
279 *Institutes* 2.1.2.
281 *Commentary*, Ezek. 18.30.
282 *Institutes* 1.1.2.
While some self-examination may take place in a corporate confession of sin, each one must examine “his own case” to be brought to genuine repentance. Our standard for judging ourselves can be none other than the objective Word of God, a light to expose sin accurately in the dark recess of our soul. This soul-searching cannot be superficial but must be done seriously and regularly, each morning and evening, so that our consciences may “straightway smite” us, that displeased with ourselves we are forced to seek God’s mercy. When we are reproved by God, or discover a sin, we must be “doubly critical” to search for other hidden sins so we might “prostrate ourselves before God.”

In order for self-examination to have its fully-humbling impact, and thus lead us to grace, we must confess the sins we discover. Evangelical confession, unlike the Catholic practice, was no effort to merit grace but rather to see it. Confession must be made primarily to God, not a priest, since God is the most aggrieved party and the one who can grant forgiveness. After we have confessed to God we may confess to a fellow believer and to our pastor, if the sin is grievous or our conscience is still burdened.

While man will confidently endeavor to rid himself of vices and by his own power “to exert himself with all his ardor” toward the good, self-examination brings him to the end of such self-confidence and self-help. “Convinced that they cannot deliver themselves,” believers turn to God from sin, crying out from the depth of their heart. As they cry out to God in faith and repentance, God extends grace to

284 Institutes 3.4.11.
285 Commentary, Jer. 26:3.
287 Commentary, John 9:2.
288 “Sermon on Deut. 9:6-7,” CO 26:657.
289 Commentary, Lev. 4:13.
290 Commentary, Gen. 3:22.
291 Reid, Treatises, 234, “Reply to Sadolet.”
292 Commentary, Jonah 1:7.
293 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 231.
294 Commentary, Ps. 51:6.
296 Institutes 3.4.27.
297 Institutes 3.4.9.
298 Institutes 3.4.10.
299 Institutes 3.4.12.
300 Institutes 2.1.3.
301 Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 189.
302 Commentary, Ezek. 18:30.
303 Battles, Interpreting Calvin, 239.
help make them holy. Though pride will try to convince us to find life by deflecting all accusations of sin, since grace only comes to the humble, we must seek life through self-examination which leads to repentance and therefore healing.

Reverence is necessary because man naturally despises God
Sanctification not only calls us to humbly prostrate ourselves before God but bids us as well to move up toward God in newness of life, “to live to God” in reverence. This upward movement toward God is only possible for believers as a thankful sacrifice of the heart to God by faith in Christ. Reverence, which must arise from a sincere heart, is the very goal of sanctification, reversing man’s natural belittling of God. As such reverence includes worship of God, obedience to him, trust and hope in him and thanksgiving for all his grace to us, so that all the rest of our lives “become sacred offerings” for his glory. Repentance leads to a reverence which thanks God for all the good we receive from him, our very lives, even down to the details of food and shelter which he provides. In yielding our lives to God in gratitude, our lives are to “express Christ,” to show forth the same attitude of love and gratefulness that the life of Christ evidenced, that we might come to know and be more like Christ.

III. How Repentance Aids in Sanctification: Grace Flows Down to the Lowly

Repentance puts us in the low place so God can lift us up
As we consider how repentance aids in our sanctification, Calvin offers a very simple insight, critical to his understanding: God humbles the proud but lifts up the humble,

---

304 Reid, Treatises, 234, “Reply to Sadolet.”
305 Commentary, Jer. 8:4-5.
306 Institutes 3.3.3.
307 Institutes 3.3.2; Sermons on Micah, 98-99.
309 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 292.
310 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:3; 1 John 2:5. Cf. Sermons on Micah, 107.
311 Institutes 3.3.14, 3.14.9.
313 Wallace, Christian Life, 32.
314 Institutes 3.20.43.
315 Sermons on Micah, 55.
316 Sermons on Micah, 51.
317 Institutes 3.6.3.
318 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 27.
offering them his grace. Hence Calvin cites Augustine with glowing approbation, “If you ask me concerning the precepts of the Christian religion, first, second, third, and always I would answer, ‘Humility.’” Calvin’s very first thoughts in the 1536 Institutes show this pattern. “After we descend in this humility and submission, then our Lord smiles on us, he shows himself lenient, merciful, gentle.” God has two hands with which he deals with men, one hand with a hammer to beat down the proud and “the other, which raises up the humble.”

God actively opposes and abases all those who do not fear him but wish to exalt themselves. He “uncovers their crime by force. When they wish to advance themselves, he throws them back.” The proud heart, full of itself, has no room for the grace of God. God will gravely wound all those who are proud in order that they may be “completely humbled.” Since the proud will be brought down by God, we must “walk in such humility” so as to remove God’s need to humble us.

Just as certainly as God will abase the proud, he will lift up the humble. It is only the heart that is “utterly empty of all opinion of its own worth” that is opened to receive God’s mercy and grace. God will “raise us up when he sees that our proud spirits are laid aside.” Grace is not, as had taught Gabriel Biel (d. 1495), the reward for those strong in their own virtues, rather it is offered to those who are “overwhelmed with shame, and flee to the undeserved mercy of God.”

Here we find the beating heart of Calvin’s sanctification—humility. The two-fold knowledge of God and self destroys our self-assurance and humbles us. In the humble the verum ordinem is restored: man humbled, God glorified. Humility is the essential ingredient in piety as we correctly see ourselves before God, looking up

---

319 Institutes 3.12.5-6.
320 Institutes 2.2.11. Calvin’s citation of Augustine can be found in: Augustine, Epistolae, 118.3.22.
321 CO 1:30, 1536 Institutes.
322 Commentary, 1 Pet. 5:5.
323 Institutes 3.12.8.
324 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 128.
326 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 567-68.
327 Sermons on Micah, 23.
329 Institutes 3.12.6.
330 Commentary, Jas. 4:10.
331 Steinmetz, “Reformation and Conversion,” 27.
332 Commentary, John 5:44.
333 Fuhrmann, Instruction, 27.
334 Institutes 1.2.1.
into his face with full reverence, knowing that God is “glorified in our littleness.”

These two are ever-linked in our sanctification: our humility before God which leads to God’s grace for us. “No one is permitted to receive God’s blessings unless he is consumed with the awareness of his own poverty.”

**The help God gives the humble: sanctification**

God does not humble men to leave them in disgrace “but that they may seek a better glory, for God delights not in the degradation of men.” God wants men humble in order that “humbled by a true knowledge of themselves, they flee to the grace of Christ.” God then “cares for all who humble themselves before his majesty,” offering them grace. Because the rain flows to the valleys more than the mountain tops, we must, therefore, “become a valley... to receive the heavenly rain of God’s spiritual grace.”

As God’s grace is poured out upon us, the work of sanctification is accomplished. He gives the humble more faith to know his mercy. “Humility is the best preparation for faith.” Through increased faith we receive the blessings of union life with Christ, such as an increase in holiness and a soft heart which buds with the fruit of repentance. Attracted by his “gentle kindness,” we are eager to serve him in the obedience of faith, which God then lavishly rewards with a rounder heart from which flows yet more obedience.

**Since humility comes by grace, always seek the grace of humility**

We do not gain even humility by our own power; it is the work of God, who grants this through his Holy Spirit, to bring us low enough to receive grace. It is God’s

---

336 Commentary, Hos. 14:3.
337 Institutes 2.2.10.
338 Commentary, Jer. 9:24.
339 Commentary, Heb. 4:12.
341 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 569. For Calvin’s personal application of this see: CSW, Vol. 4, 75, Letter from Calvin to Farel, Aug. 4, 1538.
342 Commentary, 2 Cor. 12:9.
343 Commentary, Jer. 16:21.
344 Wallace, Christian Life, 78.
345 Institutes 3.3.16.
346 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 298; Commentary, Rom. 1:5.
347 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 284.
Spirit who humbles us internally, taming us as God’s providential hand, through trials, forces us externally to our knees before him. God grants humility in response to dependent prayer, as we ask God for the very grace of humility, “that we may be humbled so much that we experience his salvation.”

Humility must be the aim of the Christian life, for it both leads to, and follows from, true knowledge of God and self and is thus the restoration of the true order. We must seek humility because “salvation has been prepared for the humble people” who recognize how far they are from true righteousness. We can never seek any other worthiness before God than to offer him our weak selves in full humility. We should aim for humility whether God is blessing or disciplining us. Blessings, even receiving mercy, may lead us to pride, unless we hold ourselves in check by humbly recognizing that all blessings come from God. When we are under discipline, we may want to rise up against God but again must check our pride and humble ourselves in true repentance.

Because of our need for humility and our natural disinclination towards it, Calvin will persistently call men away from the insanity of pride to the sanity of humility, for “there is no other means of serving God except in humility.” Calvin will pray ceaselessly for humility: “But now let us fall down before the high majesty of our good God, with acknowledging of our faults.”

---

350 Calvin, BLW, 193.
351 “Sermon on Gen. 25:24-28,” CO 58:63-64.
352 Institutes 3.20.9.
353 Institutes 3.20.8.
354 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 564.
355 Commentary, Ps. 22:27.
356 Institutes 3.12.6; cf. Commentary, Jas. 4:10.
357 Wendel, Origins, 243.
358 Institutes 4.17.42.
359 Institutes 3.23.12; cf. 3.21.1.
360 Sermons on Micah, 55.
361 Wallace, Christian Life, 258.
362 Commentary, Ps. 22:23.
364 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 234.
IV. Repentance as a Vital Christian Response to God

Repentance a vital key to the whole Christian life

Because repentance leads us to experience more and more grace from God, it holds a prominent place in Calvin’s theology of sanctification. Through repentance we “are being purged from…sins” and made more holy. Repentance is central to virtually all Christian counsel, teaching and worship. Although Calvin did not think all suffering was caused by some immediate sin, yet, as a matter of spiritual discipline, he encouraged anyone undergoing suffering to examine their life to see if there were some sin God wished to chastise, and then repent. For the Christian to make progress there is a daily and life-long necessity of self-examination and repentance.

Since God’s Word brings about “our humiliation and sighing and true repentance,” we must hear the Word preached to grow in holiness. The sermon should not only show us our sin, and the hope of mercy, but call to repentance. “This sermon must continually sound in the Church, repent.” So sermon after sermon in Geneva called the people to repentance. “Every time he gives us the opportunity to repent, let us learn that he wants us to think of our sins, and…to bow our head in utter humility.”

Calvin’s Bible lectures also called the hearers not just to understand the passage but to practice repentance. Consider these teachings from his 1563 lectures on Jeremiah, “Let us then know that this is necessary in repentance—that he who has offended God should present himself willingly.” Calvin explains that God invites us to repentance, brings us suffering to produce repentance, stimulates us to repentance and judges our sin to lead us to repentance.

365 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 128-29.
366 Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:8.
367 Commentary, John 5:14; Sermons on Micah, 99-100.
368 Institutes 3.3.9, 3.3.10.
371 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 573.
372 Commentary, Jer. 10:24.
373 Commentary, Jer. 1:10; 3:4.
374 Commentary, Jer. 3:3.
375 Commentary, Jer. 3:22.
376 Commentary, Jer. 24:7.
Worship, both public and private, should be marked with repentance in the form of a confession of sin, a distinctive trait in Calvin’s form of worship. Sermon, commentary, worship and even prayer will drip with a call to repentance, “praying him that…we may more and more be brought both to repentance and to humility.” Calvin would echo with Luther that the whole of the Christian life must be one of repentance.

We derive from the necessity of having the Word instruct us in humility for repentance, as seen here, and from its role in giving faith, as seen earlier, a new principle from Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification:

**Principle 2: Bible Preaching. Because God has given his Word to lead us to life, therefore submit to the preaching of the Word of Christ.** Bible preaching proclaims both God’s judgment on man’s sin, and an offer of God’s grace in Christ, calling man to turn in faith and repentance to the grace of God, who makes him holy for the obedience of faith.

**Repentance leads to humble boldness**

One feature peculiar to Calvin’s call to humble ourselves before God is that in doing so the humble are made confident, even bold. The humility and confidence, however, have essentially different orientations. We are humble regarding ourselves—our sins, our words—but we are confident in God—his salvation and his Word. Humbled by our sin, we lose confidence in our goodness and no longer lean on it, but we gain confidence in God’s grace, upon which we do firmly lean.

With consciences quieted by grace, we have full confidence to approach the throne of grace and thus to boldly face any future circumstance. The result of the certainty that accompanies faith was, according to McWilliams, “incredible boldness in Christian living.” Those who were humbled in Geneva would go forth to exhibit an unusual boldness in the world. “It followed naturally for the Calvinist to exhibit an unusual aggressiveness in history.”

---

377 *Institutes* 3.4.11, 3.4.14.
378 *Sermons on Election and Reprobation*, 142.
381 *Institutes* 3.12.4.
382 *Institutes* 1.2.2.
383 *Institutes* 3.2.15.
384 *Institutes* 3.20.11.
385 *Institutes* 1.17.7.
386 McWilliams, “Certainty,” 530-31.
387 Leith, *Christian Life*, 82.
All the disciplines of the Christian life are part of repentance

The disciplines of the Christian life—self-denial, cross-bearing and even meditation on the future life—can all be seen as applications of repentance.\(^{388}\) We find repentance at the very heart of self-denial.\(^{389}\) To deny one’s self is to repent,\(^{390}\) turning from the self-centeredness of our sin.\(^{391}\) Similarly, cross-bearing is both an act of, and an aid to, repentance, wherein God allows the elect to endure their sufferings as his discipline.\(^{392}\) “Thus repentance does ever of itself lead to the bearing of the cross.”\(^{393}\) God uses cross-bearing to wake us from our slumber in sin,\(^{394}\) forcing us to examine ourselves and discover that our cross is “an invitation to repentance.”\(^{395}\)

Repenting of our sins allows us to submit to the cross; the cross trains us to be conscious of our sins, from which we must repent. Meditation on the future life requires us to turn from our hope in this world and look to the hand of God for our blessing in the next.\(^{396}\) It is this repenting of our hope in the present life which allows us to “exercise ourselves on earth in meditating on the heavenly life.”\(^{397}\) The disciplines of the Christian life then are all simply applications of repentance.

From repentance we derive this new principle:

**Principle 7: Repentance. Because God gives grace to the lowly, therefore repent humbly to find more grace.** The grace of God for sanctification only flows to the humble penitent who, through self-examination, based on the Word preached, read and held forth by others in the church, seeks out all sin in his life so that in seeing his sin, he will ask God for the humility to turn from sin to Christ and there receive forgiveness and grace to make him holy.

Having seen how faith and repentance work together to produce holiness, it remains next to see how they are lived out daily in the life of the Christian within society and the church, which we now explore in Chapter IV.

---

\(^{392}\) Commentary, Jer. 31:19.
\(^{393}\) Commentary, Mic. 7:9.
\(^{394}\) Commentary, Jer. 31:19.
\(^{396}\) Institutes 3.20.42.
\(^{397}\) Commentary, Matt. 3:2.
Chapter IV -- The Life of the Christian Man within the Church

“Summa vitae christianae: ubi de abnegatione nostri.”\(^1\)

Introduction

In this chapter we move from the theology of sanctification to the practice of sanctification in the daily life of the Christian. Here we will see the essential paradigm of Calvin’s sanctification lived out: growth in the two-fold knowledge of God and self leading to the two-fold movement of the heart toward piety, downward in prostration and upward in reverence. “The reaction is twofold: man stands awestricken in fear, and yet is drawn in love. These two responses are not antithetical, but belong side by side in the pious heart.”\(^2\) We will do this by exploring two topics: first, Calvin’s chapters on the Life of the Christian Man and second, how the church was to contribute to that life. The few short chapters on the Christian Life, which first appeared in the 1539 *Institutes*, perhaps influenced by reading Bucer,\(^3\) were only ever slightly revised\(^4\) and reveal “a pattern for the conduct of life.”\(^5\) His four practices, drawn from Matthew 16:24,\(^6\) self-denial, cross-bearing, meditation on the future life and proper use of this life, hold together as a unified approach to yielding oneself to the work of God. Each leads to a humble prostration before God and reverent turning upward toward him for help, thus restoring us our “rightful places”\(^7\) in the true order (verum ordinem),\(^8\) the natural way of being.\(^9\) For Calvin the experience of sanctification was far from individualistic but could only take place in the church, as Luke indicated in Acts 2:47. “He teaches that this is the means to attain salvation, if we be incorporated into the Church.”\(^10\) It is within the church that Christ engenders growth in faith through her Word,\(^11\) shepherds us with her pastors\(^12\) and

---

\(^3\) Wendel, *Origins*, 142.
\(^5\) *Institutes* 3.6.1.
\(^6\) *Commentary*, Matt. 16:24.
\(^7\) Wendel, *Origins*, 151.
\(^10\) *Commentary*, Acts 2:47.
strengthens his union with us through her sacraments. But before we begin these topics we must understand the role of human effort in sanctification.

**Christian life requires desire and effort, but these depend upon grace**

Calvin definitely calls the believer to be active in the pursuit of holiness, “that ye may sanctify yourselves to God” and thus “make some unceasing progress in the way of the Lord.”

Our effort must start with the God-given desire to actually become more holy so that we will turn to God to make us holy. “The highest perfection of the godly in this life is an earnest desire to make progress.”

Seeing from Scripture that God is holy and desires his people to become holy, human effort is birthed in a desire to be like the Father. Because this desire is such an essential part of Calvin’s understanding of the right pursuit of the Christian life, we derive from this another principle from his theology of progressive sanctification.

**Principle 5: Desiring Holiness. Because God is holy and loves holiness, therefore desire deeply to become holy.** The believer must see God’s intention to conform his people to the Scriptural standard of holiness and thus desire to become more holy, rendering the obedience of faith from a heart of integrity.

Though we must desire holiness and make an effort to grow in holiness, since conformity to the law/the pattern of Christ is still required, we should not confuse our role as “cooperation” with God. While we do make “a deliberate and continuous conscious effort,” our effort only proceeds by continually relying on the grace of God. We should not think, even as Christians, that we have the inherent ability to obey God, for we are still totally dependent upon God, “drawing all our help from him.” The new life in us is precisely this: a true knowledge of our inability to obey and Christ’s ability, which leads us to turn to Christ for help to “conquer the will

---

13 Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 221.
14 *Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:3.*
15 *Institutes 3.6.5.*
16 *Commentary, Eph. 3:16.*
17 *Commentary, Rom. 12:1.*
19 This has not prevented others from using the term in reference to Calvin: “Sanctification becomes a work in which the believer cooperates by faith.” Marcel, “Justification and Sanctification,” 139.
21 *Institutes 3.6.3.*
22 *Sermons on Micah*, 183.
of the flesh.”  

23 We work, but our work is turning to Christ and resting in his power that he may work in us through his Spirit.  

24 “We must rest entirely, in order that God may work in us; we must resign our own will, yield up our heart, and abandon all the lusts of the flesh.  In short, we must desist from all the acts of our own mind, that God working in us, we may rest in him.”  

25 Our effort is entirely based upon God’s prior efforts in Christ and comes in response to his effort.  

26 As Lane has written, “We act only to the extent that we are acted upon.”

We are active, but Calvin directs our activity toward faith, faith that looks to God’s grace to make us holy. “The denial of ourselves…is impossible except by faith in Christ.”  

27 Sanctification only proceeds from faith which looks to Christ to work, vivifying our spirit and mortifying our flesh.  

28 Our activity in sanctification is to make way for God to transform us. Niesel notes this dynamic: “The substance of Christian ethics is in no sense the positive shaping of life by the initiative of the pious man. The essential action which we are called upon to perform is rather the renunciation of all that is our own, that we may give scope to the action of God.”

The origins of Calvin’s thoughts on self-denial, cross-bearing, etc.

Calvin’s thoughts on the Christian life were not new, but rather drew upon a long Christian tradition highlighted with Augustine and culminating with medieval monasticism, as Lucien Richard has shown.  

29 Regarding self-denial, we find that Benedict of Nursia (480-543) taught of this in “the twelve steps of humility.”  

30 Similarly, the Imitation of Christ bid one to find grace by shrinking “from all self-esteem and account myself as the dust which I am.”  

31 Bernard called for self-denial by losing “yourself as though you were not.”  

32 When we consider cross-bearing, we

---

24 Commentary, 1 John 3:9.  
25 Institutes 2.8.29.  
28 Wendel, Origins, 248.  
29 Commentary, Rom. 6:7.  
30 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 42.  
31 Commentary, 1 Pet. 4:1.  
32 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 144.  
33 Institutes 2.2.11.  
34 Richard, Spirituality of John Calvin, 50-51.  
36 Imitation of Christ, 3.8.  
37 Bernard, Love of God, 44-45.
find that Gregory the Great had written, “The sick are to be admonished to realize that they are sons of God by the very fact that the scourge of discipline chastises them.”

As well we read in à Kempis, “In the cross is salvation, in the cross is life…in the cross is perfect holiness.” The concept of meditating upon the heavenly life was found in Bernard as in others: “The remembrance of eternity should prove a source of delight.”

While Calvin did not invent any new Christian disciplines, he did take them in new directions relevant to the general concerns of his fellow reformers. Calvin would argue that self-denial best occurs in community, not the monk’s cell. He transformed what had been in the fourteenth century an absolute contemptus mundi into a comparative one, hating this world only relative to the glory of the world to come. He broke with the medieval ascetic view that the holy life was primarily to focus on the future, and he taught that the right use of this present life was a holy calling.

I. Self-Denial

Understanding self-denial

Self-denial contains both a negation and an affirmation; we must first deny our own wills so that we may take up in its place the will of God. “We are not our own: in so far as we can, let us therefore forget ourselves and all that is ours. Conversely, we are God’s: let us therefore live for him and die for him.” Since man is a “perpetual factory of idols,” who lives in defiance of God’s will, the first step to return to the obedience of faith is to renounce our own will and reason, submitting rather to God in his Word, offering ourselves as living sacrifices to God. Self-denial, then, is a first

---

39 Imitation of Christ, 2.12.
40 Bernard, Love of God, 17.
41 Institutes 3.7.7.
42 Imitation of Christ, 1.20.
43 Richard, Spirituality of John Calvin, 104.
44 Wendel, Origins, 247.
45 Institutes 4.5.8.
46 Institutes 3.7.1.
47 Institutes 1.11.8.
49 Commentary, Rom. 12:1.
Christian discipline for sanctification, the principle move away from self and toward the grace of God. “Self-denial may be said to be the commencement of piety.”

How we should practice self-denial
Self-denial begins with a heart-felt desire to deny our own will, even our own good, which may be thought of as self-hatred. “We must transfer the hatred that we naturally feel for God and our fellow man back on ourselves.” This even entails denying what the world suggests ought to be ours, so that we never seek any blessings apart from God’s Word but take from the world only what is delivered by God’s hand. Self-denial requires us to understand what Scripture and a careful descensus in se reveal as evil in our own will. Discovering this evil we are to confess and deny it, turning from it to seek God’s revealed will for his glory.

Self-denial demands that we submit to God’s will by recognizing that all life circumstances are really God’s providence, to which one must submit, since “it is with God he has to deal.” This favorite concept of Calvin’s is witnessed in his own readiness to return to Geneva, against his own will but in subjection to God’s. “I am well aware, however, that it is God with whom I have to do.” As we seek God’s will, we offer ourselves to his service, as in our Sabbath observance, and thus experience what Wallace describes as self-immolation, being consumed into the will of God. It was on this concept that Calvin founded his personal motto and the signet for his ring, “cor meum velut mactatum Domino in sacrificium offero.”

---

50 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 149. Cf. Commentary, 1 Cor., “Introduction.”
51 Commentary, John 3:12.
52 Institutes 3.7.1.
54 Institutes 2.15.5.
55 Institutes 3.7.9.
56 Institutes 3.7.8.
57 Institutes 3.7.2, 3.7.8.
58 Commentary, 1 John 3:21.
59 Institutes 3.7.2. Cf. Barth, Theology of Calvin, 171.
60 Institutes 2.15.5.
61 Wendel, Origins, 249.
62 Institutes 3.7.2.
63 CSW, Vol. 4, 281.
64 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 69.
65 Commentary, Jer. 17:24-25.
Self-denial also requires that we yield to the will of our neighbor\textsuperscript{68} for the “dethroning of self in face of the claims of our fellow man,”\textsuperscript{69} which fulfills the second great commandment.\textsuperscript{70} We must do anything we can to help our brothers no matter how great an inconvenience to ourselves.\textsuperscript{71} Indeed, the more inconvenient, the deeper the self-denial. “Whatever man you meet who needs your aid, you have no reason to refuse to help him.”\textsuperscript{72}

**How self-denial works in the process of sanctification**

**Self-denial is faith and repentance at work**

Self-denial is both the fruit and the practice of faith, for without faith in Christ, no man would imagine denying himself.\textsuperscript{73} We must first believe that we are not our own but the Lord’s,\textsuperscript{74} and that his will for us is better than our own, before we will deny ourselves and trust him to prosper us.\textsuperscript{75} Faith is required to believe that in all circumstances we are dealing with God,\textsuperscript{76} who will reward\textsuperscript{77} those who, “with Christ, voluntarily abase themselves.”\textsuperscript{78} We must believe that the “hope of blessed immortality”\textsuperscript{79} awaits before we will see the benefit in denying ourselves temporally. Human reason must give way to faith and “submit and subject itself to the Holy Spirit.”\textsuperscript{80} Self-denial is faith, which, looking to Christ to bring life, allows the Christian to abandon all other self-oriented schemes of grasping for life.

In calling us to self-denial, the practice of repentance becomes a real and daily affair as we “unremittingly examining our faults call ourselves back to humility.”\textsuperscript{81} Self-denial is repentance in that we turn from our sinful “ambition and all craving for human glory”\textsuperscript{82} to Christ, in order to find life.\textsuperscript{83} As repentance, self-denial turns us toward God to serve him and his desires. “We are God’s: let us therefore live for him

\textsuperscript{68} Parker, *Calvin’s Thought*, 89; *Institutes* 3.7.5.
\textsuperscript{69} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 62.
\textsuperscript{70} Lobstein, *Die Ethik Calvins*, 81.
\textsuperscript{72} *Institutes* 3.7.6.
\textsuperscript{73} Wendel, *Origins*, 248.
\textsuperscript{74} *Institutes* 3.7.1.
\textsuperscript{75} *Institutes* 3.7.8.
\textsuperscript{76} *Institutes* 3.7.2.
\textsuperscript{77} *Institutes* 3.7.9.
\textsuperscript{78} Commentary, Phil. 2:9.
\textsuperscript{79} *Institutes* 3.7.3.
\textsuperscript{80} *Institutes* 3.7.1.
\textsuperscript{81} *Institutes* 3.7.4.
\textsuperscript{82} *Institutes* 3.7.2.
\textsuperscript{83} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 59.
and die for him.”

The effort required for self-denial, always reliant on Christ, is primarily of a negative nature: we yield our sinful passions to God in order that he might subdue them.

**Self-denial humbles us before God who makes us into happy people**

Self-denial, as the daily practice of humbling ourselves before God, empties oneself of “all opinion of its own worth,” and opens up the heart to receive God’s mercy. In this humble place God can and will work to transform us into holy creatures as he pours out his grace. “Having prostrated ourselves in the dust before him, he may raise us up.”

God’s grace to the humble restores them to happiness before God, who leads them in the good way (qu’il nous ait ramenez au bon chemin). “Man becomes happy by self-denial.” This is entirely contrary to the world’s way, which tells us we find happiness in self-indulgence and self-absolution, covering our sins. Calvin will suggest that peace is found in accusing oneself through self-denial and allowing Christ to absolve us. As we cease managing our lives by enforcing our wills and yield to God’s will, he gives us a “peaceful and grateful mind,” no matter what the circumstances. Though there are superficial similarities here to the Stoic ideal of tranquility, the joys of self-denial are so God-oriented that it is clearly distinct from Stoicism, despite Leithart’s claims. Made free of the “deadly pestilence of love of strife and love of self,” we become those who love their neighbors, having “a heart imbued with lowliness and with reverence for others.”

---

84 *Institutes* 3.7.1.
87 *Institutes* 3.7.2.
88 *Institutes* 3.12.7.
91 *Commentary*, Ps. 34:18.
93 *Commentary*, Heb. 4:10.
94 *Commentary*, 1 John 3:21.
95 *Institutes* 3.7.10.
96 *Institutes* 3.7.9.
98 *Institutes* 3.7.4.
Implications for Calvin’s model of sanctification

Self-denial becomes the active obedience of faith that the Christian renders to the Lord, so Calvin will call for it often in writing and sermons. The true order is restored through self-denial: man moves downward in prostration before God, denying his will, while God is rightly lifted up in reverence before him, as man submits to his will. Here we derive another principle:

Principle 8: Self-denial. Because God gives life to those who lose it, therefore deny yourself as a practice of faith and repentance. To progress in holiness the believer must practice faith and repentance by constantly considering the interests of God and others before his own and yielding to God’s will, as it is revealed in Scripture, through his neighbor’s needs and to his conscience.

II. Cross-bearing

Understanding cross-bearing

While self-denial has to do with the internal voluntary struggle to submit to the rule of God, cross-bearing pertains to the external trials, crosses, that God in his providence sends our way, in order to tame us to his will. Thus mortification always proceeds on two fronts: internally and externally. Cross-bearing is the willing submission to the external trials as we come to understand they are all actually from God’s loving hand. Cross-bearing must involve real suffering, whether physical, spiritual, social or economic, accompanied by emotional pain, which must be endured.

Since cross-bearing requires faith that God is behind and working through suffering, only believers can rightly be said to bear the cross, for while God burdens all men with suffering, “unless they willingly bend their shoulders to it, they are not said to bear the cross.” In the unbeliever suffering will have a deleterious effect, hardening them toward God, “like an anvil under the blows of a hammer.”

---

99 Wallace, Christian Life, 68.
100 Winecoff, “Mortification,” 92.
102 Institutes 3.8.10.
103 Wallace, Christian Life, 183.
104 Commentary, Rom. 8:24.
105 Institutes 3.8.10.
106 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 85.
107 Commentary, Matt. 16:24.
108 Commentary, Jas. 1:3.
It is not the suffering *per se* that produces holiness but rather the work of the Holy Spirit\textsuperscript{110} who bears us up under the load.\textsuperscript{111}

Every Christian *must* bear the cross as a normal, although not constant, part of life,\textsuperscript{112} in order to put to death the old man.\textsuperscript{113} “Christ calls his disciples: that each must bear his own cross.”\textsuperscript{114} Cross-bearing is so important to growth in holiness that it may appear that God “treats his children more harshly than he does strangers,” but we must always understand that God uses our crosses for our good.\textsuperscript{115} We are to bear the cross even to death,\textsuperscript{116} because Jesus went this way before us.\textsuperscript{117}

**Three types of cross-bearing**

Calvin outlines three types of cross-bearing: 1) suffering to cure us from the disease of sin, 2) suffering as direct chastisement for sin and 3) suffering for righteousness.\textsuperscript{118}

In the medicinal use of the cross, since we all have different sin patterns in our lives,\textsuperscript{119} God individualizes each person’s “remedy of the cross” according to their type of sin, treating “this one with greater harshness, that one with more kindly indulgence.”\textsuperscript{120} God will use for one poverty, for another shame, or disease, or family suffering, or hard labor, but in each instance God will apply precisely the “appropriate remedy,”\textsuperscript{121} which is “healthful for each man,”\textsuperscript{122} to best foster holiness.

When we bear the cross as chastisement for sin,\textsuperscript{123} it would be “utterly foolish to think”\textsuperscript{124} that chastisement is a judicial penalty for sin, because Christ has already born the penalty due our sin. Here Calvin draws a fine distinction, which at first may seem as though he were quibbling over words, but in the end the distinction is central to his understanding of cross-bearing. Calvin will assert that fatherly chastisements *(paternis castigationibus)*\textsuperscript{125} are different from the punishments of iniquity *(supplicia*
iniquitatis\textsuperscript{126}). Judicial punishment (poena\textsuperscript{127}) is vengeance taken on God’s enemies and accompanied with his wrath. Fatherly chastisement (castigatio\textsuperscript{128}) is correction offered to God’s children from a heart of love,\textsuperscript{129} to train them for the future.\textsuperscript{130}

While both may rightly be called punishment, it is God’s intention that distinguishes a “judgment in vengeance” from a “judgment in chastisement.”\textsuperscript{131} “The one is the act of a judge; the other, of a father.”\textsuperscript{132} The distinction is critical for the believer to comprehend, for it is only as we see the cross as loving correction and not penalty that we can come to trust God during suffering.\textsuperscript{133}

Believers will be called to suffer for righteousness’ sake, as was Christ, and this should both comfort us and cause us to rejoice.\textsuperscript{134} We should always anticipate that the world may rise up against us,\textsuperscript{135} ready to “vomit out their venom” in slander, attacks, or opposition.\textsuperscript{136} Yet, we may find real “spiritual joy”\textsuperscript{137} in bearing this cross, even as it holds “bitterness and pain,”\textsuperscript{138} for we are united with Christ who, sanctifying us like Job,\textsuperscript{139} will one day “turn reproaches, slanders, and mocks of the world, into great honor.”\textsuperscript{140}

**How we should practice cross-bearing**

**We can only bear the cross by faith in the good providence of God**

Cross-bearing is supremely an act of faith.\textsuperscript{141} We must believe that God is both sovereignly in control\textsuperscript{142} and working for our good,\textsuperscript{143} such that any trial in our life is finally seen as a providential good from his hand.\textsuperscript{144} As we believe in God’s providence,\textsuperscript{145} his absolute control over every aspect of life,\textsuperscript{146} we can submit to any

---

\textsuperscript{126} CO 2:485; Institutes 3.4.33.
\textsuperscript{127} CO 2:483; Institutes 3.4.32.
\textsuperscript{128} CO 2:483; Institutes 3.4.32.
\textsuperscript{129} Institutes 3.4.31.
\textsuperscript{130} Parker, Calvin’s Thought, 91.
\textsuperscript{131} Institutes 3.4.32.
\textsuperscript{132} Institutes 3.4.31.
\textsuperscript{133} Institutes 3.4.34.
\textsuperscript{134} Institutes 3.8.7.
\textsuperscript{135} Commentary, Matt. 5:10.
\textsuperscript{136} Commentary, 2 Tim. 3:12.
\textsuperscript{137} Commentary, Acts 5:41.
\textsuperscript{138} Institutes 3.8.8.
\textsuperscript{139} Commentary, John 9:2.
\textsuperscript{140} Commentary, Acts 5:41.
\textsuperscript{141} Wallace, Christian Life, 73.
\textsuperscript{142} Commentary, Lam. 3:37-38.
\textsuperscript{143} Institutes 1.17.8.
\textsuperscript{144} Institutes 3.8.11.
\textsuperscript{145} Institutes 1.16.2.
difficulty, whether arising from enemies or inanimate objects, knowing they occur not by blind fortune, or even by God’s mere permission, but by his decree.

God providentially manages all the activities in the world in such a way as to benefit the church. "The church is indeed the real object of divine providence." While God governs all his creatures through his providence he shows special “vigilance in ruling the church, which he deigns to watch more closely.” God is a Father who, while being fair to all people, is careful to preserve his best inheritance for his own children. However, since God is more concerned for the church’s holiness than her ease, his providence for the church, rather than simply pleasant, is often brutal in appearances.

We must learn to submit to God in difficult providences

There is one single overarching response necessary for the Christian in cross-bearing: we must submit to God under his difficult providences. God has designed the cross that his people “might resignedly and humbly submit to the condition allotted to them” with trust, patience and joy. The essence of submission is an attitude of trust. Our heart must not be allowed to complain bitterly toward God, seeking escape from our circumstances, as is our natural tendency. “If God singles us out first for chastisement and in the meantime we observe that others are enjoying their ease we murmur: ‘Whoa! What is this? What’s going on here?’” We are called “with becoming humility” to submit to the level of health, wealth, popularity and success God grants us. This trust is faith lived out, believing God’s Word rather

\[\text{Commentary, Gen. 2:2. Cf. Torrance, Calvin’s Doctrine of Man, 61. This concept of \textit{creatio continua} is important for Calvin who writes, “We and all the creatures do not, strictly speaking, live, but only borrow life from Him.” Commentary, 1 Tim. 6:16.}\]

\[\text{Institutes 1.16.8.}\]

\[\text{Commentary, John 5:14.}\]

\[\text{Wallace, Christian Life, 260. Cf. Institutes 1.17.8.}\]

\[\text{Wendel, Origins, 179.}\]

\[\text{Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 74.}\]

\[\text{Institutes 1.17.1.}\]

\[\text{Commentary, Ps. 31:19.}\]

\[\text{Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 75.}\]

\[\text{Commentary, Gen. 3:19; 8:1; Hos. 7:12.}\]

\[\text{Commentary, Rom. 8:30.}\]

\[\text{Wallace, Christian Life, 182.}\]

\[\text{Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 88.}\]

\[\text{Sermons on Micah, 53.}\]

\[\text{Institutes 1.17.2.}\]

\[\text{Sermons on Micah, 43.}\]

\[\text{Institutes 3.8.11.}\]
than “believing” negative circumstances or our own limited understanding, from which the devil would encourage our doubt.

We must be patient because the cross always has a temporal aspect. Our crosses will both arrive at inopportune moments and remain for inordinate lengths of time, such that we must “languish long under them,” until they become effective. We must learn to “bear with patience whatever it pleases God to send us,” for however long he pleases. This endurance is not, however, an emotionless, stoical self-reliance, but rather a “humility that prostrates itself in the dust before God.”

We are to welcome the cross, which “renders tribulations to be loved by us,” so we may persevere in hope, gratitude and even joy. Since the cross conforms us to the image of Christ, we “should lovingly kiss the cross rather than dread it.” Kissing the cross we reject impatience and insolence, and instead, consoled that God is at work for our salvation, “undergo them with a thankful and quiet mind.” Each cross can be honestly welcomed as an opportunity to find and mortify sin in our lives. Even welcoming the cross, we may still ask God to deliver us from them, moved by the cross to pray, as long as our prayers are humble and submissive, readily accepting “no” for the answer.

This submission to God in difficult providences will form the cornerstone of Calvin’s understanding of the role of suffering in our sanctification, and therefore is the bedrock of his pastoral counsel. It is this lesson Calvin taught all those around

---

163 Institutes 1.16.9.
165 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 84.
166 Commentary, John 11:15.
167 Commentary, John 12:25.
168 Sermons on Micah, 54.
169 Commentary, Rom. 14:8.
172 Commentary, Rom. 5:5.
173 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 127.
174 Institutes 3.7.10.
175 Institutes 1.17.7. Cf. Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 86.
176 Commentary, Heb. 2:10.
177 Institutes 3.8.8.
178 Institutes 3.8.11.
179 Institutes 3.8.6.
180 Wendel, Origins, 253.
181 Commentary, John 5:11.
him, perhaps one of his most profound. As he dealt with his own grief over the death of Calvin, Beza wrote, “I would also have profited very little from his teaching…if I had not learnt through all these means to submit to God’s providence and be completely satisfied and content.”

**How cross-bearing works in the process of sanctification**

**We are mortified, brought to the end of ourselves and prostrated before God**

Cross-bearing, a kind of enforced repentance from pride and encouragement to turn to God in faith, is used by God to return man to a properly prostrated place before him. When life is easy, man may remain in his proud self-confidence, but God brings the cross to humble the proud. “He can best restrain this arrogance when he proves to us by experience not only the great incapacity but also the frailty under which we labor.” To end our self-confidence, the cross threatens us with death, for our flesh will only finally yield under such duress. It is the threat of death which forces men to see their own weakness, and “falling into utter despair,” they no longer consider their power up to the task and will turn to God.

**We are vivified, brought to reverence God and seek him for help**

Broken down by the cross, we turn toward God in reverence, seeking from him deliverance from the cross. “Our experience of affliction reveals to us our own weakness and nothingness, so that we abandon all trust in ourselves, and are more

---

184 Institutes 3.4.33; Commentary, Hos. 2:7.
185 Commentary, Ps. 119:67.
186 Commentary, Jonah 1:5.
187 Institutes 3.8.2, 1.17.1; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 576.
188 Institutions 3.8.2.
189 Commentary, 2 Cor. 1:9; Institutes 3.8.3.
190 Commentary, 2 Cor. 1:8.
191 Commentary, 2 Cor. 1:9.
194 Institutes 3.8.2.
deeply humbled by the true knowledge of ourselves.”196 This enforced prostration is critical to turn us toward God and away from our self-confidence.

And it is of no slight importance for you to be cleansed of your blind love of self that you may be made more nearly aware of your incapacity; to feel your own incapacity that you may learn to distrust yourself; to distrust yourself that you may transfer your trust to God; to rest with a trustful heart in God that, relying upon his help, you may persevere unconquered to the end.197

In looking to God, we see not only his ability to deliver us but always “the fatherly love of God,”198 who in using the cross “is actually encouraging them by these things to return to himself.”199 Seeing God’s loving hand behind each blow of the cross, all history teaches us to trust God,200 and so come to transfer our confidence from ourselves to him, as the one who can deliver us from suffering by his grace.201

Indeed, we come to see that it has been our lack of submission which has often invited the cross from God,202 who uses it to lead us back to him,203 even as a donkey must be lead with blows.204

**God extends his grace and remolds us in the image of Christ**

As we humbly and reverentially turn to God for help, our Lord is kindly to extend his grace to us and change us more and more into his own image.205 He works to produce in us more faith in Christ206 by continually bringing us to circumstances where we can only live by faith.207 Through faith we are made holy, conformed more to the image of God.208 We are transformed bit by bit into those who obey God, having been “instructed by the cross to obey.”209 We are brought to a place of peaceful rest,210 knowing that no matter what tempests rage around us, “a constant quiet and serenity

---

197 Institutes 3.8.3.
200 Institutes 1.17.6.
201 Wallace, *Christian Life*, 76.
202 Institutes 3.4.35; Commentary, Hos. 5:13.
203 Institutes 3.8.6.
204 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 580-81.
205 Institutes 3.8.2.
206 Institutes 3.8.11.
210 Commentary, Matt. 5:3; 10:29.
ever remain in heaven.”

We rest knowing that God is at work, making us holy by his cross, giving us a future and a hope.

Implications for Calvin’s model of sanctification
There is no way to be made holy other than by cross-bearing, which yields a faith-filled submission to God who mortifies and vivifies us by the cross. Hence Calvin will consistently call his hearers to submit to God in the difficult providence of cross-bearing. From this we derive another principle:

Principle 9: Cross-bearing. Because God mortifies through suffering, therefore bear the cross to mortify our flesh. God sanctifies the believer by providentially bringing him the sufferings of the cross, which he should bear with joy and patience, as he submits to God in difficult providences.

III. Meditation on the Future Life

Understanding meditation on the future life
Meditation on the future life involves the two-fold movement: first downward, away from a love for this life, as we consider its miseries, and then upward as we contemplate the glorious life to come. This two-fold movement begins with our thought patterns but must include a two-fold affective response: a repentant groaning over our love for this world and a faith-filled longing for the next. Meditation on the future, or heavenly life, requires us to “strive with all our heart” to consistently contemplate the reality and glory of the life to come, in order to overcome the natural domination of thoughts of this present life. Looking ahead we long to dwell with Christ in his glory, with “the unspeakable sweetness of his delights” and all the blessings of God.

211 Institutes 1.17.1.
212 Institutes 3.2.28; Commentary, John 12:24.
213 Commentary, Rom. 5:4.
214 Commentary, Ps. 119:166.
216 Institutes 3.9.4.
218 Commentary, Rom. 8:23.
220 Institutes 3.9.2.
221 Wallace, Christian Life, 90.
222 Commentary, 1 Thess. 1:9.
223 Institutes 3.9.6.
224 Commentary, 1 Thess. 1:9.
How we should practice meditation on the future life

Beginning from youth the believer is to think of the glories of the world to come in real and concrete terms, which can draw their hearts heavenward. We are to meditate constantly on the promise of heaven, not only when we are tempted with this world, or forced by death, to think of the next. When the “many allurements” of this world do capture us, we should recognize that temporary bliss is nothing without eternity, and so lay up our treasure in heaven. When trials assail us, we use them to launch us into thoughts of heaven. When blessings please us, we use them to “whet our hope and desire” for the even greater blessings to come. Any bodily infirmity is reason enough to think upon the glorified state of our body. Even the Lord’s Supper is to become a “serious exercise of meditation on the heavenly life.” We can materially focus our attention on heaven by sending “our possessions thither” as we provide for the poor.

Meditation on the future life requires a consistent _contemptus mundi_ in which we despise the present world due to our own sin and trials, such as disease, want and the vicissitudes of this world. However, contempt for this life is not absolute but only relative to the glory of the future life, since even this life is to be received as God’s good gift. Hence meditation on the future life actually enables one to live righteously in this life, by allowing the focus on the ultimate to add perspective for existence in the penultimate.

---

226 _Commentary_, Rom. 8:17.
227 _Commentary_, Rom. 8:17.
228 Reid, _Treatises_, 228, “Reply to Sadolet.”
229 _Institutes_ 3.9.2.
230 _Sermons on Micah_, 79-80.
231 _Commentary_, Matt. 6:20.
232 _Institutes_ 3.9.2.
233 _Institutes_ 3.9.3; _Sermons on the Ten Commandments_, 286.
235 Reid, _Treatises_, 266, “Partaking of the Flesh and Blood.”
236 _Institutes_ 3.18.6.
237 _Commentary_, John 12:25.
238 Fuhmann, _Instruction_, 27.
240 _Institutes_ 3.9.3.
241 Venema, _Accepted and Renewed_, 126, note 68.
How meditation on the future life works in the process of sanctification

Meditation on the future life becomes another way to apply faith and repentance. In faith we “turn our eyes to the glory of the life that is to come,” and God replaces our hopes and fears in this world with hope in the world to come. As we look forward to Christ’s final triumph over our flesh, we behold him more clearly and are united to him more completely, thus he transforms us into his likeness.

As repentance, meditation on the future life leads us away from self-confidence to look to Christ. We naturally love this world, confident that we can achieve “immortality for ourselves on earth.” This confidence must be pried out of our hearts by coming to a true knowledge, both of our despised condition here, relative to heaven, and of our inability to manufacture heaven on earth.

Meditation on the future life leads us to this knowledge and to humbly repent of our worldly affections. Humbled before God in acknowledging our inability to derive full pleasure from this world, we turn to him, trusting him to create a perfect life for us in the next.

Implications for Calvin’s model of sanctification

Calvin will constantly call his hearers to contemplate the reality of their future life with God, in order to draw them away from the world and toward heaven thus leading them toward holiness. From this we derive another principle:

Principle 10: Future Life. Because God grants us an eternal inheritance, therefore meditate on the future life with Christ. The believer progresses in holiness as he is constantly drawn through public preaching and private meditation to contemplate the heavenly life with God, away from an inordinate desire for the world.

244 Institutes 3.9.6.
245 Commentary, Col. 3:1.
247 Institutes 3.9.5.
248 Institutes 3.9.2.
249 Institutes 3.9.1.
250 Institutes 2.1.3.
251 Institutes 2.1.3.
254 Commentary, Gen. 5:22; John 20:17.
IV. Use of this Present Life

Understanding the proper use of this life

Calvin’s paradigm for sanctification included careful instruction in the right use of the present life as a good gift from God, since Christ and his people are supposed to possess and enjoy the earth. In sharp distinction from the monkish ideal and Platonic dualism, Calvin called his hearers to walk a tight-rope, a via media, of thankfully enjoying the pleasures of this world, such as the arts, fine food and beauty, as blessings to God’s children, while always avoiding hedonism. “To love this life is not in itself wrong, provided that we only pass through it as pilgrims.” God filled the earth with beautiful and delightful things for our benefit, exceeding bare necessity, that we might enjoy them thankfully.

How we should properly use this present life

Calvin lays down several rules to guide our proper use of this life. First, we must hold this life loosely. As pilgrims we “should not be too much at home upon this earth,” remembering that God may always take it away. Second, we are to use things in this life according to our vocation, which requires using them moderately for their intended design. “The Lord bids each one of us in all life’s actions to look to his calling.” What is moderate for a prince would be indulgence for a pauper. As we look to our calling we may enjoy good food and drink, moderately, for our body’s health and our soul’s delight. Third, we are to use this world as accountable

254 Institutes 3.10.2.
256 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 139.
257 Tamburello, Union with Christ, 15.
258 Battles, Interpreting Calvin, 152-54.
259 Commentary, Gen. 4:20.
261 Commentary, Ps. 25:13.
263 Commentary, John 12:25. This is contra Shin, who claimed that Calvin relatively neglected the present life, Shin, “Calvin’s Theology of Holiness,” 75.
266 Wallace, Christian Life, 134.
268 Institutes 3.10.1; Commentary, Gen. 2:15; Jonah 3:1, 4:2.
270 Institutes 3.10.6.
271 Institutes 3.10.4, 3.10.6.
272 Institutes 3.10.3.
273 Commentary, John 4:32.
stewards in order to meet the needs of others. “Let him have pity and compassion on those in need, in order to help them.” This charity includes the sharing of one’s material and spiritual resources to help others, for true holiness is lived out in family and community.

**How use of this present life works in the process of sanctification**

A cursory reading of Calvin’s call to moderation produces the sense of a man fearful of excess. A more careful understanding finds in Calvin’s call to moderation his essential paradigm for living by faith and repentance. “The chief virtue of the faithful is moderation.”

The right use of this present life becomes the training ground in which God teaches us, and we practice, a humble, prostrating moderation within our calling. God helps us by bringing periods of material dryness—an enforced moderation—to bring us low before him in repentance. As we are humbled in our moderation, God meets us and helps us let go of the world even more.

The right use of this present life is an exercise in faith, only possible for the faithful. They reverently look to God for, and serve him with, all the blessings in this life. The ungodly may glut themselves like pigs, but they are never satisfied in their souls, for they do not know God’s fatherly love. It is only faith that allows us to submit to our vocation and puts an end to craving for the world’s goods, knowing that we may rest in God’s providence. “If a man knows to make use of present abundance in a sober and temperate manner, with thanksgiving, prepared to part with everything whenever it may be the good pleasure of the Lord, giving also a

---

274 *Institutes* 3.10.5.
275 *Sermons on Micah*, 146.
276 *Commentary*, Ps. 23:5.
279 *Commentary*, Rom. 12:16.
280 *Sermons on Micah*, 71.
282 *Commentary*, Ps. 25:13.
283 *Commentary*, Ps. 25:13.
284 *Commentary*, Ps. 128:3.
285 *Commentary*, Ps. 36:8.
287 *Commentary*, Ps. 36:8.
288 *Commentary*, John 3:27.
289 *Sermons on Micah*, 71.
share to his brother, according to the measure of his ability, and is also not puffed up, that man has learned to excel, and to abound.”\footnote{Commentary, Eph. 4:12.}

**Implications for Calvin’s model of sanctification**

In the right use of this present life, God transforms his children into the true order for humanity: those who use this life moderately, thankfully and for others.\footnote{Commentary, Rom. 13:14.} Here we discover another principle:

**Principle 11: Present Life. Because God providentially guides all of life, therefore rightly use this present life to love others.** God produces holiness as the believer practices the obedience of faith in the schoolroom of this daily life: enjoying life without lusting, being moderate within his vocation and benefiting others as a steward of his resources.

**V. How the Life of the Christian Man Works Together**

All four aspects of the life of the Christian work together as exercises in faith\footnote{Leith, *Christian Life*, 76; Wallace, *Christian Life*, 92.} and repentance,\footnote{Institutes 3.8.2, 3.9.4.} contributing to growth in holiness.\footnote{Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 149; Lobstein, *Die Ethik Calvins*, 14.} “The doctrine of repentance containeth a rule of good life; it requireth the denial of ourselves, the mortifying of our flesh, and meditating upon the heavenly life.”\footnote{Commentary, Acts 20:21.} Cross-bearing aids self-denial by forcing us beyond what we would voluntarily demand of ourselves.\footnote{Wallace, *Christian Life*, 74-75.} As we meditate on our “future blessedness,” our hearts are given faith to endure even greater crosses here,\footnote{Wendel, *Origins*, 252; Commentary, Rom. 8:25; 2 Cor. 4:17.} for crosses here “stir us up to meditation on the future life.”\footnote{Wallace, *Christian Life*, 89; Institutes 3.9.1.} Both self-denial and meditation on the future life increase our satisfaction with, and thus moderate use of, this present life.\footnote{Institutes 3.10.4.} Calvin will freely associate these four aspects of the Christian life. “No man will indeed calmly and quietly submit to bear the cross, but he who has learnt to seek his happiness beyond this world.”\footnote{Commentary, Rom.12:12.}
VI. The Church

The church and sanctification

Calvin’s view of sanctification, while intensely personal, was never individualistic but always looked to the “community of faith.” The church, the primary institution created by God to sanctify, aids our sanctification as she provides the authoritative teaching of the Word, the sacraments and discipline, by which Christ transforms us into his holy people. While each church has freedom to establish its particular organization, Christ’s presence is especially realized within the church through the Gospel and sacraments, the two marks whose presence shows that “a church of God exists.” However, the right use of the Word is the primary mark, without which there can be no church. “We may discern which is the true Church of God, namely one that follows the pure truth.” Discipline, while not listed formally as a mark of the church, was, however, critical to Calvin’s understanding of the work of the church. “There are three things on which the safety of the Church is founded and supported: doctrine, discipline, and the sacraments.”

God sanctifies his people within the church. God first sanctifies his people by setting them apart from the “degrading pollutions of the world” that they may then be joined to his church, the “holy and peculiar people of God.” The very gathering of a people for God as his holy people is the fulfillment of the plan of redemption which culminates finally in the heavenly church. God continues to sanctify his people only as they are part of the church, where he uniquely produces holiness among his elect. The church, as our mother, is absolutely necessary for our growth in holiness, thus she must “keep us under her care and guidance” until

---

303 *Institutes* 4.1.1.
304 *Commentary*, Acts 8:38; 1 Cor. 11:12.
305 Parker, *Calvin’s Thought*, 131.
306 *Institutes* 4.1.9.
307 “Sermon on Dan. 8:1-7,” *CO*, 41:482.
309 *Commentary*, 1 Cor. 11:17.
311 *Commentary*, Ps. 16:4.
312 *Commentary*, Ps. 16:3.
313 *Commentary*, John 11:51.
315 *Institutes* 4.1.20; Wallace, *Christian Life*, 197.
death and glory.\textsuperscript{317} As God gathers his people for biblical corporate worship,\textsuperscript{318} which humbles man even as it exalts God,\textsuperscript{319} God is present to transform them in holiness.\textsuperscript{320} However, for participation in the church’s life to be beneficial,\textsuperscript{321} one must truly love the church\textsuperscript{322} and should love her more than life,\textsuperscript{323} submitting to her as unto the Lord, since he reigns as her head.\textsuperscript{324}

Because the Christian cannot hope to grow in holiness outside the church, “it becomes his duty to adhere loyally to the visible Church.”\textsuperscript{325} Calvin did not take schism lightly, warning against it by the monk’s bad example\textsuperscript{326} and maintaining that one should only depart from the church when she was, in effect, no longer the church, having abandoned God’s Word.\textsuperscript{327} Calvin therefore felt it necessary to defend his break from Rome, making himself the faithful soldier who, seeing the troops scattered, raises “the leader’s standard, and recalls them to their posts.”\textsuperscript{328} He encouraged his fellow pastors to remain in the Genevan Church after he was cast out, so as not to harm the unity of the church.\textsuperscript{329} For her health and witness, and for ours, we must not abandon the church.\textsuperscript{330} Hence we find another principle:

**Principle 12: Church. Because God sanctifies his church, therefore engage fully in the life of church.** The believer is sanctified by Christ only as he fully participates in the life of the church, in its preaching of the Word, its right administration of the sacraments and its shepherding through discipline.

**The church provides feeding on God’s Word**

The church will nurture us by feeding us on the Word, “a live and efficacious force,”\textsuperscript{331} which she has uniquely been given in order to teach her children\textsuperscript{332} as they are gathered corporately.\textsuperscript{333} The authoritative ministers of the church preach the

\begin{flushright}
\textsuperscript{317} *Institutes* 4.1.4.  
\textsuperscript{318} *Sermons on Micah*, 36.  
\textsuperscript{319} *Sermons on Micah*, 37-38.  
\textsuperscript{320} McKee, *Pastoral Piety*, 4.  
\textsuperscript{321} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 243.  
\textsuperscript{322} *Commentary*, Ps. 102:3.  
\textsuperscript{323} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 248.  
\textsuperscript{324} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 195; *Sermons on Micah*, 207.  
\textsuperscript{325} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 232.  
\textsuperscript{327} CO 10:310, Letter of Calvin to Antonio Pignaeo, Jan. 1539.  
\textsuperscript{328} CSW, Vol. 1, 58-59.  
\textsuperscript{329} Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 196.  
\textsuperscript{331} Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 183.  
\textsuperscript{332} *Institutes* 4.1.1.  
\textsuperscript{333} *Sermons on the Ten Commandments*, 268-69.
\end{flushright}
Word, with the power of the Holy Spirit, such that her members advance in faith, “solely by outward preaching.”

Because the preaching of the Word is so vital for the Christian life, Calvin has clear duties for both hearer and preacher. The hearer, understanding that his private reading by itself is inadequate for holiness and may lead to error, must attend public preaching to be conformed to God’s truth. He must receive the sermon as the Word of God, even from flawed pastors, and must apply it to himself deeply to change mind and heart. Pastors must constantly provide preaching to give the flock “their proper food.” They must preach only from the Word and focus on the love of God in Christ to be “faithful stewards of God’s Word.”

The Word, preached faithfully and received humbly, is quickened by the Holy Spirit to transform believers by giving them more faith by which they embrace Christ and his kingship, and thus they are conformed more to his image. “It is [Christ] who must rule over us and in us, in order that by his teaching our lives might conform to his Father’s will for us.” Since we must receive the preached Word to grow holy, “everyone is to be present at the Sermon when the prayer is begun…everyone is to pay attention during Sermon.” We see here clearly reinforced our aforementioned Principle 2 on the necessity of submitting to Bible preaching.

The church provides the sacraments
The Sacraments as a means of grace are “instruments of the Spirit whereby God sanctifies us.” Sacraments, the visible Word, united with the spoken Word.
and faith in the believer, set Christ before us such that we receive his power for sanctification. By increasing our faith in Christ, the sacraments unite us more fully with Christ, who transforms us by union with him through the Holy Spirit.

The sacraments wrongly used, rather than helping us in holiness, are defiled by our pollution. Calvin, therefore, set out to correct Rome’s ex opere operato view. Denying that the Lord’s Supper was a literal sacrifice which contained inherent power, he argued it was effective only by God’s appointment and only for those who had faith to feed upon Christ. He said to receive the sacrament worthily, one is required only to come aware of their unworthiness, rather than attempting to make the full penance of Rome.

Baptism unites us to the death and resurrection of Christ by faith, such that our sins are mortified and our spirit is given life as our faith is increased, “just as the twig draws substance and nourishment from the root to which it is grafted.” This union with Christ increases our faith by confirming our place in Christ and by assuring us our sin no longer dominates us. It is vanquished by Christ and not sacramental water, awaiting the day of its complete destruction.

Through the Lord’s Supper, we partake of the real body and blood of Christ, spiritually. The Holy Spirit, through faith, unites us spiritually to Christ’s humanity, his flesh, but not such that our flesh is commingled with his. It is as

---

354 Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 221.
364 Institutes 4.17.42.
366 Institutes 4.15.5.
367 Institutes 4.15.6.
368 Commentary, 1 John 5:16.
369 Institutes 4.15.11.
370 Gerrish, *Eucharistic Theology*, 126-27; Commentary, 1 Cor. 11:24.
371 Commentary, Matt. 26:26; John 6:56.
372 Commentary, 1 Cor. 11:24.
we are united to Christ’s human nature that we benefit from him. Therefore, as we are united to Christ’s humanity more fully through the Lord’s Supper, Christ increasingly communicates his vivifying life to us. “While [Christ] alone has life in himself, he shows how we may enjoy it, that is, by eating his flesh.”

**How the sacraments work in the process of sanctification**

The sacraments, rightly offered by the church for those within the church, are effective for our sanctification by bringing Christ to us through the work of the Holy Spirit and the Word. United to Christ by faith, his life is powerful to transform us, giving us more faith and holiness. The sacraments also serve as an exhortation, which excites an internal desire for more holiness as the life of Christ is given to us in new portions. Here we find another principle from Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification:

**Principle 13: Sacraments. Because God offers grace sacramentally, therefore commune regularly with Christ through the sacraments.** The sacraments, properly administered and worthily received, communicate the grace of Christ, which actually puts to death sin and engenders faith, by which Christ is received more and more.

**The church provides discipline and pastoral care**

Calvin’s movement was a reformation of pastoral care

The church helps our holiness through her pastoral care and discipline. “Discipline is like...a spur to arouse those of little inclination; and also sometimes like a father’s rod to chastise mildly...those who have more seriously lapsed.” Calvin advocated a reformation of pastoral care, not for the sake of strictness but in the pursuit of holiness. Since sin blinds us first to our own sin, we need the church

---

373 Winecoff, “Mortification,” 86; *Commentary*, John 6:51.
375 Parker, *Calvin’s Thought*, 156.
376 *Commentary*, John 6:56.
377 *Commentary*, Rom. 2:25.
379 *Niesel, Theology of Calvin*, 223.
380 *Commentary*, John 20:22.
382 *Institutes* 4.17.38.
385 *Institutes* 4.12.1.
387 *Niesel, Theology of Calvin*, 73.
community,\textsuperscript{388} under holy leaders,\textsuperscript{389} to show us our failings,\textsuperscript{390} and pointing us to Christ, help us to grow in holiness.\textsuperscript{391}

The idea of close pastoral care had been suggested to Calvin by predecessors such as Seneca,\textsuperscript{392} Gregory the Great, who called it the “art of arts,”\textsuperscript{393} and by John Oecolampadius,\textsuperscript{394} whom Calvin had watched mobilize elders as shepherds in Basel. Likely it was in Strasbourg, where Bucer put into practice his \textit{Concerning the True Care of Souls}, that Calvin found his pattern for Geneva,\textsuperscript{395} including the distinct roles of church and state for moral oversight.\textsuperscript{396}

The church has been given a unique judicial authority\textsuperscript{397} to discipline the life and doctrine of her members\textsuperscript{398} as a kind of spiritual police,\textsuperscript{399} much as the police and courts govern the world.\textsuperscript{400} The power to purify her people, ultimately expressed in excommunication,\textsuperscript{401} is a responsibility that the church must fulfill or face correction herself.\textsuperscript{402} The church’s standard of discipline is the Word of God, such that she may discipline no further, nor less than, it directs.\textsuperscript{403} The purpose of church discipline was threefold: upholding the glory of God, maintaining the peace and purity of the church and wherever possible, to call the wayward back to repentance and holiness.\textsuperscript{404}

\textbf{How pastoral care and discipline were exercised}

Calvin’s program of pastoral care began with the Word preached, continued with the use of elders to check on conformity to the Word in life and doctrine and culminated with the Consistory, which enforced the Word in the life of those who refused the milder warnings.\textsuperscript{405} The teaching of the Word, in church and from house to house,\textsuperscript{406}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{388}Wallace, \textit{Christian Life}, 233-36.
\item \textsuperscript{389}Ganoczy, \textit{Young Calvin}, 228.
\item \textsuperscript{390}Wallace, \textit{Christian Life}, 196-97; Commentary, 1 Cor. 12:12.
\item \textsuperscript{391}Commentary, 1 Cor. 12:11.
\item \textsuperscript{392}“It is therefore indispensable that we be admonished.” L. A. Seneca, \textit{Moral Epistles} (tr. R. M. Gummere; Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1917-25) 3:48-49; Epistle 94, 59.
\item \textsuperscript{393}Gregory the Great, \textit{Pastoral Care}, 21.
\item \textsuperscript{394}Ganoczy, \textit{Young Calvin}, 91-92.
\item \textsuperscript{395}H. J. Selderhuis, \textit{John Calvin, A Pilgrim’s Life} (Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 2009) 89.
\item \textsuperscript{396}Wendel, \textit{Origins}, 65.
\item \textsuperscript{397}Lobstein, \textit{Die Ethik Calvins}, 123.
\item \textsuperscript{398}Parker, \textit{Calvin’s Thought}, 140-41.
\item \textsuperscript{399}Institutes 4.11.1.
\item \textsuperscript{400}Wendel, \textit{Origins}, 308.
\item \textsuperscript{401}Barth, \textit{Theology of Calvin}, 185; Reid, \textit{Treatises}, 51, “Articles Concerning the Organization of the Church,” 1537.
\item \textsuperscript{402}Commentary, 1 Cor. 5:2.
\item \textsuperscript{403}Parker, \textit{Calvin’s Thought}, 141; Institutes 4.12.9.
\item \textsuperscript{404}Institutes 4.12.5.
\item \textsuperscript{405}Institutes 4.1.22.
\end{itemize}
was the foundation of pastoral care, laying out the demands of the law, explaining how the congregation had failed to meet those demands and pointing them to Christ for help toward new obedience.  

Within Geneva 12 men, by 1541 called “elders,” chosen from the various councils, were assigned to watch over their flocks in each quarter and to “admonish amicably those whom they see to be erring.” They checked on the people regularly, particularly in preparation for the quarterly Lord’s Supper, gently recalling the sinner to Christ with “no rigor by which anyone may be injured.” It was as the elders sat together with the pastors of the city, each Thursday morning in the *Consistoire*, that they served as the collective moral governors of the city, in subordination to the city councils. Exercising the authority of the keys of the kingdom, they pronounced God’s judgment on sin within the church to purify her. Serious about discipline the Consistory was busy, for example, handling 556 cases in 1557, or nearly four percent of the entire population of Geneva.

The pastors were subject to discipline as well. Four times per year the Company of Pastors used their meeting to examine their own lives and doctrine. Held to a higher standard than the laity, the pastors would admonish one another to repentance. Failing repentance they would suspend the recalcitrant from the Lord’s Supper and report him to the magistrate.

Individual Christians, in many ways true ministers, were expected to provide pastoral care as well, first by their example and then by watching for sin or

---

407 *Institutes* 4.1.5; Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 197.
414 *Institutes* 4.11.1.
417 Assuming roughly 15,000 residents, Selderhuis, *Pilgrim Life*, 58.
421 Ganoczy, *Young Calvin*, 218-19.
422 *Sermons on Micah*, 12.
bad doctrine in one another’s lives. Finding failure they were to offer corrections in accord with Matthew 18. This correction was to be offered humbly, having first removed the log from one’s eye, and gently, so as to not discourage the offender but “retrieve them from the road of perdition.” Only if gentle rebuke failed should one attempt to wake the sinner from their slumber with “great hammer blows.”

**How pastoral care and discipline work in the process of sanctification**

Pastoral care is yet another call to faith and repentance. The discipline of the church, which we all need, forces us to turn from our sins, which we see only with help, to Christ, believing he alone can sanctify. Brought to repentance in the midst of the church, we turn to Christ, who in grace forgives and builds up the penitent, leading to new obedience. Another principle emerges from these observations:

**Principle 14: Church Discipline.** Because God shepherds us through his leaders, therefore seek pastoral care and church discipline. Church discipline and pastoral care, when received in submission, confront the believer with particular sins to which he is blind and leads him toward the cure of Christ.

Here we have seen that for Calvin one cannot hope to grow in holiness apart from full participation in the life of the church. For churches to be effective, however, they must have good pastors. In Chapter V we will see Calvin’s understanding of the true pastor.

---

423 *Commentary*, 1 John 4:1.
425 *Sermons on the Ten Commandments*, 208-11.
426 *Sermons on the Ten Commandments*, 213.
428 *Institutes* 4.12.1.
429 *Institutes* 4.12.5.
431 *Institutes* 3.3.20.
432 *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 562; *Institutes* 4.12.1.
433 Lobstein, *Die Ethik Calvins*, 129.
Section Two - Calvin’s Theology of Sanctification as Taught and Practiced at the Genevan Academy
Chapter V -- The Model of the Pious Pastor
“Donnez-moi du bois, et je vous envoie des flèches.”

Introduction
While more attention has been given through the years to Calvin’s effort to reform medieval Roman Catholic theology, increasingly Calvin’s passion to reform the Roman priesthood by institutionalizing the development of Reformed pastors in the Genevan Academy has gained study. Ganoczy understood Calvin’s passion: “It seems that Calvin is thinking more or less explicitly of a solution through new leadership.” As Calvin gazed upon the landscape of sixteenth-century Europe, he saw the crying need for pastors, pious and well-trained. “You can hardly be persuaded how great is the scarcity of ministers, considering the multitude of churches who need pastors.” From nearly his first to his last editions of the Institutes, Calvin named as his chief goal the instruction of future pastors. “It has been my purpose in this labor to prepare and instruct candidates in sacred theology for the reading of the divine Word.”

Yet as Calvin surveyed the scene, he realized that the great Roman training centers, with their deeply flawed theology, such as the Sorbonne, would never produce the kind of pastors which he saw described in Scripture and embodied by many of the Church Fathers. Calvin had the vision of reforming pastoral training with the creation of an academy at least from 1541, when he returned to Geneva, fresh from teaching at the Academy of Strasbourg. It would not be until 1559, however, that his vision came into being with the establishment of the Genevan Academy. At the Academy Calvin hoped to raise up a new breed of pastors, who, unlike their Roman counterparts, were marked with pietas. Calvin would regularly pray as he began his lectures to the students of the Academy, “May the Lord give us so to

1 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, Preface, “Calvin to the churches of France.”
2 Ganoczy, Young Calvin, 228.
3 CO 10b:64, Calvin to François Daniel, Oct. 13, 1536.
4 CO 1:256, Introduction to 1539 Institutes, where Calvin calls the students the “sacrae theologiae candidatos.” Cf. Muller, Unaccommodated, 141.
5 Preface to the 1559 Institutes, 4.
6 Muller, Unaccommodated, 50-52.
7 Institutes 2.3.13.
8 Reid, Treatises, 63, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
wrestle with the secrets of his heavenly wisdom that our piety truly progresses to his glory and our edification.\textsuperscript{9} His prayers, as we shall see, were largely answered.

To understand what Calvin was trying to accomplish at the Academy, we must understand the kind of pastor he meant to produce. For Calvin the Reformed pastorate did not simply spring from the pages of the Bible but rather formed in his mind over against the failings of the Roman clergy\textsuperscript{10} and was informed by the Church Fathers as well.\textsuperscript{11} Calvin’s standard was as clear as it was simple: a real pastor, a pious one, must have a true call from God and faithfully follow that call. “There are two things necessary to prove a person to be [a true minister]—a divine call, and faithfulness.”\textsuperscript{12}

We will show in this entire second section of the thesis that Calvin’s theology of sanctification, highlighted in the fourteen principles from Section One, was not checked at the door of the Academy but rather was built into its warp and woof, in its teaching and structures.\textsuperscript{13}

In this chapter we will argue that Calvin’s very model of a pious pastor, understood in the context of his theology of sanctification, served both to call and to lead the students to higher levels of holiness as pastors. The basic dynamics of Calvin’s understanding of sanctification are necessarily magnified in the life of pastors, who were compelled to a clearer double-knowledge of their own sin and God’s greatness. They were compelled to see their own sin, for they were held to a higher standard of holiness, had their motives dissected more regularly, were supervised more closely and disciplined more severely. They were compelled to see God’s greatness as they relied on him to achieve any effectiveness in preaching, shepherding and administering the sacraments. Calvin’s model of a pious pastor ultimately produced a pastor that was both bolder and more humble than his Roman counterpart. He was more humble regarding himself, because he would see the incredibly high standard for a Reformed pastor. He was bolder regarding God’s

\textsuperscript{9} CO 37:463.

\textsuperscript{10} Reid, Treatises, 240, “Reply to Sadolet.”

\textsuperscript{11} Reid, Treatises, 206, “Necessity of Reforming the Church.”

\textsuperscript{12} Commentary, Jer. 23:21. Cf. Commentary, Jer. 18:18; John 5:43; 1 Cor. 1:1; Institutes 4.3.10; Sermons on Micah, 157.

\textsuperscript{13} Sources for Calvin’s instruction to the students of the Academy include his lectures on Daniel, Jeremiah, Lamentations and Ezekiel, as well as sermons (regularly attended by students) delivered on the Gospels, Genesis, 1 and 2 Samuel, and 1 and 2 Kings. T. H. L. Parker, The Oracles of God (Cambridge: James Clarke, 2002) 162; T. H. L. Parker, Calvin’s Old Testament Commentaries (Louisville, Ky.: Westminster/John Knox Press, 1986) 29.
Word, for he would see God’s wisdom in preaching. This ideal was seen in Calvin himself. “The apprehensive Calvin, who still regarded himself as a shy schoolboy, was the fearless preacher of grace at the same time!”

I. The High Standard of a True Call Led Pastors to Holiness

The high view of the role of pastor enhanced holiness

Setting aside the extraordinary offices of apostle, evangelist and prophet, Calvin taught that there were four offices in the church: pastor, teacher, elder and deacon, or three if one conflates pastor and teacher as two types of presbyter, as Calvin sometimes did. Calvin will focus his efforts primarily on the office of the pastor because of its central role in building the church from the Word of God. The pastor represents God on earth by speaking God’s Word authoritatively to his people, something personal Bible reading cannot do. The pulpit is therefore “the seat of God from which he wants to govern our souls.” Hence, the church must meekly receive the Word preached by pastors, for to reject it is to reject God. Because the pastor speaks for the Father, we are to regard him as a father to be respected in and outside of the pulpit. God chooses to speak to us through other men, not because he is incapable of speaking directly to us, but because we would be annihilated by the majesty of God. “God accommodates himself to our lowliness and weakness.” The pastoral ministry itself is the end of a lengthy process of God’s accommodation,

---

15 Institutes 4.2.4.
16 Institutes 4.3.4.
17 Institutes 4.4.1; Reid, Treatises, 58, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541; cf. Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 202; Parker, Calvin’s Thought, 136.
18 I. Backus, “Calvin’s Patristic Models,” 28-31; cf. Institutes 4.3.8, Calvin will call pastors interchangeably bishops, presbyters or ministers.
19 Parker, Calvin’s Thought, 136.
20 Institutes 4.1.5; Commentary, Jer. 43:10; 50:2. Cf. Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 110.
21 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 252.
22 “Sermon on 1 Tim. 5:17-20,” CO 53:520.
23 Sermons on Micah, 158.
26 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 259.
which moves from creation, to Scripture, to Christ, to pastor and culminates in the sermon and sacrament, which finally we may receive.  

The pastor’s role was more than preaching, however. While Calvin will maintain two marks of the church, Word and sacrament, when it comes to defining the duties of a pastors, Calvin, following Bucer, would add to the duties of preaching and administering the sacraments a third duty: discipline. Calvin defines discipline as one duty which separates “teachers” from “pastors.” The true pastor is “to instruct the people to true godliness, to administer the sacred mysteries and to keep and exercise upright discipline.” Though Calvin may at times have subsumed discipline under the role of teaching to individuals, as in the annual pastoral home visit, pastors were required to “enjoin brotherly corrections,” to know their flock and grieve over the sins of individuals, all functions of pastoral care and discipline.

All three duties of the pastor had one core purpose: to build up the church. Preaching “is the edification of the Church.” The right administration of the sacraments was to nourish and protect the church, lest the Supper be “profaned by being administered indiscriminately.” Disciplining the morals of the church was necessary in order to build up the church as the holy bride of Christ. The pastor was therefore central to the life and health of the church. “Thus the renewal of the saints is accomplished; thus the body of Christ is built up.”

This lofty understanding of the role of pastor as mouthpiece of God and builder of the Church of God would have a sanctifying effect. Men, realizing they were unworthy, would be humbled by a true call to such a lofty role (Principle 1, Two-fold Knowledge and Response). “We know that the whole authority belongs entirely to God, with regard to the doctrine of religion, and that it is not in the power

---

30 Institutes 4.3.4.
31 Institutes 4.3.6.
32 Institutes 4.3.6.
33 CO 18:236, Calvin’s letter to Olevianus, Nov. 1560; cf. Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 249.
34 Reid, Treatises, 58, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
35 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 177.
36 Commentary, 2 Cor. 12:21; 1 Thess. 4:11.
37 Commentary, 1 Thess. 5:12.
38 Institutes 4.12.5.
40 Institutes 4.3.2.
of men to blend this or that, and to make the faithful subject to themselves. As God, then, is the only true teacher of the Church, whosoever demands to be heard, must prove that he is God’s minister.”\textsuperscript{41} At the same time, pastors must look upward to God for the ability to fulfill such a high calling (Principle 4, Rely on God). “There are peculiar endowments required for the prophetic, the apostolic, and the pastoral office, which are not in the power or at the will of men. We hence see that the hidden call of God is ever necessary, in order that any one may become a prophet, or an apostle, or a pastor.”\textsuperscript{42}

The true call from God enhanced holiness

Calvin requires that a man be truly called by God\textsuperscript{43} for one simple reason: no man is qualified by any human ability to serve as a pastor, a spokesman for God.\textsuperscript{44} He must be called of God and come not only by his own choosing,\textsuperscript{45} as do the Roman priests, who “boast themselves to be the successors of the Apostles.”\textsuperscript{46} Self-appointed leaders are unworthy. “We ought boldly to reject all who exalt themselves.”\textsuperscript{47}

A true call has two aspects, external and internal.\textsuperscript{48} Externally the church must recognize God’s calling and gifting of the minister. This external calling produces holy pastors by screening out those sinfully pursuing the office (Principle 14, Church Discipline). However, a true call usually starts internally, in the heart of the one called, and is testified to by a clear conscience, which knows itself moved not by “ambition and avarice” but by God.\textsuperscript{49} The discernment of this internal call was an important aid to pastoral holiness, requiring the descensus in se to discern one’s motives, which naturally led to repentance and holiness (Principle 7, Repentance).

The true call from the church enhanced holiness

The true call of God, while it originates with God and not man, must be confirmed externally by the church, both in the “approval of the people”\textsuperscript{50} and in the approval of

\textsuperscript{41} Commentary, Jer. 1:2.
\textsuperscript{42} Commentary, Jer. 23:21.
\textsuperscript{43} Commentary, Jer. 26:2.
\textsuperscript{44} Commentary, Jer. 25:4; John 20:22.
\textsuperscript{45} Commentary, Ezek. 2:3.
\textsuperscript{46} Commentary, Rom. 1:1.
\textsuperscript{47} Commentary, John 5:43.
\textsuperscript{48} Commentary, Jer. 14:14.
\textsuperscript{49} Parker, Calvin’s Thought, 138; Commentary, Jer. 43:3.
\textsuperscript{50} Institutes 4.3.15.
the other pastors in cooperation. Usually the Company of Pastors had the principal role in calling, nominating a candidate who would be approved by the Council and finally gain congregational assent. If the Company did not concur with the Council, the question of call remained open, and in one notable case, that of François Bourgoin in 1552, went in favor of the Company. It is necessary to have the church legitimize the call so that “noisy and troublesome men” do not grab for office. For the church to discern if a man is truly called requires that the man must be examined by proper biblical criteria, sound doctrine and a holy life, to see if God has supplied the necessary gifts for the office of pastor. Since God will always supply pastoral gifts to those whom he calls, the presence of those gifts serves as an indication of a possible call; while if a man lacks those gifts, he cannot be called.

Woven into a true call was proper preparation, again under the direction of the Company of Pastors. Calvin believed that a good pastor required thorough training, both to shape his character and to instruct his mind, in order to teach the Bible well. “Learning joined with piety and the other gifts of the good pastor are a sort of preparation for it.” The training was intensive, requiring the mastery not only of biblical content, theology and languages, but erudition in reading, writing and speaking classical Latin as well. Since this training was to be thorough it would take some time. Ideally young men were apprenticed by godly, well-trained pastors, who were in good supply in Geneva and who gave “sacred instruction and strict

54 Carrington, “Calvin and Erasmus,” 159-60; cf. *RCP*, 189: “Bourgoin now informed the brethren that, as he had no testimony to this call other than the wish of the Messieurs, he could not vacate his present post to go to the country.”
55 *Institutes* 4.3.10.
59 *Commentary*, Ezek. 3:19; *Institutes* 4.3.11; Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 204.
60 *Commentary*, John 20:22; Eph. 4:11.
63 *Institutes* 4.3.11.
training." Properly examined and trained, the truly called pastor was to be duly ordained by the other pastors, as Calvin had learned from the Council of Nicea and Cyprian.

The external call, with its examination, training and ordination, is an implementation of Calvin’s understanding of communal sanctification (Principle 10). The close examination of a candidate’s life and doctrine, with the inevitable exposure of some areas of weakness, led a candidate to new areas of humility, repentance and turning to Christ (Principle 7). The careful training in life and doctrine would be a fleshing out of Principle 2 (Bible Preaching). The true calling served as a form of the double-knowledge of God and self, bringing forth the two-fold response of prostration and reverence (Principle 1). It helped to humble a man to know that he was called, not based on any great quality in himself but by God’s mercy. At the same time, the true call rendered a man bold, not in himself, but in God’s call and God’s Word. “Strength shall never be wanting to God’s servants, while they derive courage from the conviction that God himself is the author of their calling and become thus magnanimous; for God will then supply them with strength and courage invincible, so as to render them formidable to the whole world.”

II. The High Standard of Pastoral Faithfulness Led to Holiness

The high standard of faithfulness

In addition to being truly called, Calvin believed that a pastor must also live out that call in faithfulness. To be faithful a pastor must be prompt in teaching the Word, careful in administering the sacrament, loving in shepherding the flock and personally holy. We may observe this emphasis on faithfulness by studying Calvin’s direct practical applications to pastors as he lectured at the Academy. In one lecture series, the series on Jeremiah delivered between April 1560 and September 1562, out of 84 specific applications to pastoral ministry we found 29 related to the personal holiness

---

67 Institutes 4.4.9.
70 Sermons on Micah, 165.
71 Commentary, Jonah 1:2.
72 Wallace, Christian Life, 303.
73 Commentary, Jer. 1:17.
74 Parker, Old Testament Commentaries, 29.
and faithfulness of the pastor.\textsuperscript{75} Another 29 addressed the issue of preaching the Word faithfully.\textsuperscript{76} This means that nearly 70\% of his practical applications to his pastoral students in this two-year period had to do with faithfulness, demonstrating Calvin’s concern for the development of faithful pastors.

Calvin set before his pastoral candidates an incredibly high standard of pastoral faithfulness as seen in the pastoral ordination vow:

\begin{quote}
I promise and swear that in the Ministry to which I am called I will serve faithfully before God, setting forth purely his Word for the edification of this church to which he has bound me; that I will in no way abuse his doctrine to serve my carnal affections or to please any living man; but that I will employ it with pure conscience in the service of his glory and for the profit of his people to which I am a debtor.\textsuperscript{77}
\end{quote}

The pastor must give himself wholeheartedly to the ministry no matter his level of success,\textsuperscript{78} not for personal gain but for God’s glory, undistracted by other interests,\textsuperscript{79} while leading a life of exemplary personal holiness.\textsuperscript{80} Should he fail on any point, the pastor is held to a higher standard, accountable for the souls that perish due to his neglect,\textsuperscript{81} for an unfaithful pastor destroys the church.\textsuperscript{82} What man would ever think he could meet such an absurdly high standard by human effort? Like the law of God,\textsuperscript{83} the high standard for the pastor was never to be accommodated downward so men could fulfill its demands on their own power, rather the high pastoral standard was meant to drive men to seek God’s grace. Calvin taught the students at the Academy that the work of the pastor was beyond human ability \textit{precisely} so they would turn to Christ, depending on him for the power and authority to pastor aright.\textsuperscript{84} “Scripture joins the power of Christ with the ministry of man; as, indeed, man is nothing else than the hand of Christ. Such modes of expression show, not what man can of himself accomplish, but what Christ performs by man, and by the sign, as his
instruments.”

Presented with such a high calling to faithfulness, Calvin’s students would be encouraged to turn to God’s grace (Principle 4). It is only inasmuch as the pastor in humility turns to and relies upon God’s grace to make him able that he is faithful. “By these words God exhorts his Prophet to prayer; for we know how dangerous is self-security to all the children of God, and especially to teachers.”

The high standard of faithful preaching enhanced holiness

The high standard of faithful preaching would create dependence on God

Calvin called pastors to such a high standard of preaching that it would have had the effect of sending them humbly to God for help. Pastors must be very knowledgeable of God’s Word, and they must also faithfully teach that Word to the church or risk being useless. Calvin would often hold up the Roman clergy as failed preachers to warn his students. The priests, concerned about their benefices and tied up in “the administration of cities,” neglected the essential work of preaching. When they did preach, they often preached wrongly, as false teachers. Calvin’s practice of using the Roman clergy as negative examples for his students would have had a sanctifying impact. Fearing such failure themselves, they would be driven to God for help to become faithful preachers.

There was only one proper source for faithful preaching—the Bible. “No one then ought to be deemed a sound teacher, but he who speaks from God’s mouth.”

The pastor must not share from his wisdom but only from God’s Word. Neither should the pastor substitute emotionalism for biblical content in the vain effort to produce emotional responses in the hearers. Any addition to the Word or subtraction from it would dilute or destroy its pure doctrine. The Word must be delivered whole and unpolluted, for amendment or abridgement places the pastor over

---

85 Commentary, John 1:26; cf. Commentary, Jer. 2:33.
86 Commentary, Jer. 3:15.
87 Commentary, Jer. 15:21.
89 Commentary, 1 Thess. 5:12.
90 Institutes 4.5.13.
91 Institutes 4.11.9.
92 Commentary, Jer. 5:31.
93 Commentary, Jer. 23:16.
94 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 268-69; Commentary, Jer. 1:2.
95 Commentary, Jer. 9:17.
96 Commentary, Jer. 1:9; 1 Thess, 2:13; Sermons on Micah, 161.
97 Sermons on the Ten Commandments, 267-68.
it as judge. "Those who are charged with proclaiming the Word of God should offer nothing except what they have received from God."[99]

Old or New Testament, Calvin was clear as to the central biblical theme which must be preached: "To extol as much as possible the grace of Christ."[101] Calvin will so frequently repeat to his students the instruction to preach only from the Word of God that it could not have failed to find the mark.[102] "Ministers are to bring forward nothing but what they have learnt from God himself."[103]

Given such severe warnings and frequent exhortations to faithful preaching, pastors under Calvin’s tutelage would have been humbled and led to Christ for help (Principle 4). They would not dare to speak relying on wit and wisdom, but with proper reverence, they would have trembled to do other than hold forth the pure Word of God,[104] which would also directly benefit them (Principle 2).

**The goal of faithful preaching, making men holy, humbles pastors**
The very goal of preaching, in Calvin’s schema, was never just to impart information[105] but rather to increase the holiness of an individual.[106] Calvin was “convinced that the way to build up piety and restore the church was to open access to the fountains of pious doctrine.”[107] Preaching is designed to mature the church, as the people partake of the heavenly doctrine,[108] sermon by sermon.[109] The sermon would impart “wisdom tempered with sobriety and discretion,” which will “fortify us against all the snares of the devil.”[110]

To aim at the holiness of the hearers, the pastor must understand sin in his congregation, not just superficially, for “the innermost recesses of the heart must be probed and searched.”[111] The pastor must not only know sin but must zealously

---

98 *Sermons on the Ten Commandments*, 279.
99 *Sermons on Micah*, 15.
100 *Commentary*, Rom. 10:5.
103 *Commentary*, Jer. 19:2.
104 *Sermons on Micah*, 165.
105 *Commentary*, Ezek. 1:26.
106 *Institutes* 1.14.4; *Commentary*, Jer. 51:56; Ezek. 3:20.
108 *Institutes* 4.1.5.
109 *Commentary*, 1 Thess. 3:9.
111 *Commentary*, Jer. 9:6.
oppose it in the life of his congregation, connecting with his hearers in such a way that they are brought to see the sin they do not want to see. “For until a sinner knows his sinfulness, he will never really and from the heart return to God.” Made aware of their sin, the people were then to be urged toward repentance, however distasteful that might be to the human heart. The call to repentance was never a mild one but must be “urgent on every occasion.” It was to be intense. “It is necessary to prick them sharply and even deeply to wound them,” since “excitements are daily necessary to rouse us up.” Ultimately, the sermon is to lead the believer to Christ who sanctifies.

Since the preacher’s goal was to serve as an instrument of God to bring about holiness in his hearers, it would quickly be made apparent that the preacher must always rely on God, not his ability, to achieve such an end. “Those are ministers whose services God makes use of, not as though they could do anything by their own efforts, but in so far as they are guided by his hand, as instruments.” The pastor’s preaching depends on God, for “he will have its success depend exclusively upon his blessing, that he may have the entire praise.” This dependence on God is not merely external, that is an additive to the words that come from the mouth of the pastor, but must come from within, as God feeds the heart of the pastor on His Word first. “God’s servants ought to speak from the inmost affection of their heart.” Without this feeding from God, the preacher is useless; with it the preacher may perform “in real earnest the office committed to him…as a faithful and true minister of God.” Finally, the pastor must acknowledge his dependency on God formally, by requesting God’s help in prayer after each sermon. This dependence on God to make the preacher effective places the pastor in the proper relationship to God, one of

112 Commentary, Jer. 23.10; 1 Thess. 2:12.
113 Holder, “Pastoral Model,” 287.
114 Commentary, Jer. 3:13.
115 Commentary, Jer. 3:13.
116 Commentary, Ezek. 3:18.
117 Commentary, Jer. 3:13.
120 Commentary, Ezek. 11:5.
121 Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:17.
122 Commentary, 1 Cor. 3:5.
123 Commentary, 1 Cor. 3:7.
124 Commentary, Ezek. 3:3.
125 Commentary, Jer. 15:16.
126 Commentary, Acts 20:36.
dependent humility which recognizes one’s inability (Principle 1).\textsuperscript{127} The pastor must repose entirely and humbly in the hands of God so their confidence is not in “their own industry or virtue, but on the assistance of God.”\textsuperscript{128} Such repose places a pastor squarely into the hands of the only one who may transform him, bit by bit, into a truly faithful and holy pastor (Principle 4).

**The weighty responsibility of faithful preaching would humble pastors**

Faithful preaching was so powerful in Calvin’s view that it carried with it an inhuman weight of responsibility. Preaching was seen to be the very word of life and death, by which men were either saved or condemned.\textsuperscript{129} “The minister of the word is said in some way to save those whom he leads to the obedience of faith.”\textsuperscript{130} Since God uses faithful preaching to lead men to salvation,\textsuperscript{131} faithful preaching is essential to the health of the church, the individual and the entire world.\textsuperscript{132}

If the majesty of the preaching challenge did not humble a pastor then the penalty for failing to preach faithfully certainly must have. Calvin would repeatedly warn that pastors who fail to preach faithfully will be held accountable for the blood of their hearers\textsuperscript{133} and serve as examples of God’s harshness toward faithless shepherds.\textsuperscript{134} With so much on the line, the salvation of souls, the health of the church, the Kingdom of God, with blood guilt in the balance, the pastor would likely be humbled, falling prostrate before God, even to consider mounting the steps into the pulpit (Principles 4 and 1).

**The fact that people should listen to imperfect pastors humbles pastors**

Calvin would emphasize the duty of parishioners to attend to the preaching of a pastor even though he might have visible flaws. “Those who think the authority of the Word is dragged down by the baseness of the men called to teach it disclose their own ungratefulness.”\textsuperscript{135} People must listen to the faithful pastor preach, despite a list of

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{127} *Commentary*, 1 Cor. 9:1.
\item \textsuperscript{128} *Commentary*, 1 Tim. 3:1.
\item \textsuperscript{129} *Commentary*, Jer. 5:14.
\item \textsuperscript{130} *Commentary*, Rom. 11:14; cf. *Commentary*, Jas. 5:20; Jude 1:22.
\item \textsuperscript{131} *Commentary*, Jer. 3:15; Rom. 10:17.
\item \textsuperscript{132} *Commentary*, 1 Thess. 5:12.
\item \textsuperscript{133} *Commentary*, Jer. 1:17; Ezek. 3:21.
\item \textsuperscript{134} Sermons on Micah, 156-57.
\item \textsuperscript{135} *Institutes* 4.1.5; *Commentary*, Ezek. 3:20.
\end{itemize}
flaws that a pastor may have, such as imperfections in speaking,\textsuperscript{136} some persistent ignorance\textsuperscript{137} or even character flaws.\textsuperscript{138}

However, while there is no perfect pastor, God’s people must distinguish between the pastors who are “altogether blind” and those who are only “blind in part.” The former are hirelings “and know nothing,” while the “good and faithful Ministers,” aware of their partial blindness, are yet useful to God.\textsuperscript{139} The method of discernment is simple: the faithful pastor is the one who teaches only the Word of God.\textsuperscript{140} Once a sound, though imperfect, preacher is found, we must submit to their teaching,\textsuperscript{141} for rejecting it is tantamount to rejecting God himself,\textsuperscript{142} a danger to our souls.\textsuperscript{143}

Being required to listen to imperfect preachers is humbling, and therefore sanctifying, to both the hearer and the preacher. For the hearer it is humbling to sit under the teaching of men “like us and sometimes even by those of lower worth than we,”\textsuperscript{144} and yet we find that God blesses through them.\textsuperscript{145} For the preacher this doctrine is humbling, first, in the very fact that Calvin is careful to repeatedly point out the universality of pastoral failings. Calvin will describe his fellow pastors as “‘vessels of clay’ indeed, fragile and of nothing,”\textsuperscript{146} “a contradiction between their life and their doctrine,”\textsuperscript{147} “examples unto us, of the fragility and weakness of men,”\textsuperscript{148} “altogether mean and despicable to instruct us”\textsuperscript{149} and “the greatest dangers to the church.”\textsuperscript{150} This message would be difficult for any pastoral candidate to miss: there is no cause for you to think highly of yourself. Second, the pastor is led toward humility in the very fact that his congregation must humble themselves in order to listen to him, “a puny man risen from the dust!”\textsuperscript{151} Where one might consider followers a cause for boasting, the pastor, reminded that his parishioners must stoop low in order to receive his teaching, must himself be humbled. Third, Calvin will

\textsuperscript{136} Commentary, Jer. 20:7.
\textsuperscript{137} Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 252-53.
\textsuperscript{138} Sermons on 2 Samuel, 122.
\textsuperscript{139} Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 271.
\textsuperscript{140} Commentary, Ezek. 2:8; Jer. 23:21.
\textsuperscript{141} Commentary, Jer. 11:20.
\textsuperscript{142} Commentary, Jer. 5:13; 29:19.
\textsuperscript{143} Commentary, Ezek. 2:5.
\textsuperscript{144} Institutes 4.3.1.
\textsuperscript{145} Sermons on 2 Samuel, 302-03.
\textsuperscript{146} Sermons on 2 Samuel, 302-03.
\textsuperscript{147} Sermons on 2 Samuel, 122.
\textsuperscript{148} Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 252.
\textsuperscript{149} Commentary, John 9:34.
\textsuperscript{150} Institutes 4.9.4.
\textsuperscript{151} Institutes 4.3.1.
proclaim that God’s ability to use such broken men as his servants is a testimony to God’s power, not theirs.152  “As the voice of man is in itself inefficacious and lifeless, the work of cleansing really and properly belongs to the Spirit.”153  This teaching leaves no room for inflated egos but deflates and humbles the pastor. Fourth, the pastor is humbled as he realizes that he is used by God, only inasmuch as he is faithful to preaching the Word of God “rightly and sincerely.”154  The power of his ministry is totally dependent on the Word of God, before which the pastor himself must sit and submit or be found useless.155  Calvin’s teaching here leaves no room for the pastor to develop pride but rather gives him every reason to enter the pulpit with genuine humility, prostrated before God, even as he stands before God’s people (Principle 1).

**The requirement to preach boldly in the face of opposition sanctified pastors**

Calvin required, as one of the highest standards for preaching, that the faithful preacher must boldly preach the Bible no matter what opposition he might face.156  Preaching boldly in the face of opposition is a logical imperative for one simple reason, God’s Word will always meet some level of opposition, since both believers157  and non-believers chafe at hearing God’s requirements of them.158  God’s Word preached in the face of opposition serves both to redeem the elect and to condemn the obstinate who will not repent.159  Were the pastor silent in the face of opposition, he would work against God’s intention of proclaiming to the resistant, from whom God would remove all excuses for sinning160  and so “doubly prove them to be unhealable.”161  Preaching the Word to opposition serves to crush the lies and objections of God’s enemies,162  while it pleases God who finds it “a sweet and good savor.”163

While it might appear at first that a call to boldness in preaching would produce pride, as understood by Calvin, it would actually produce humility. First, the pastor must humbly accept that bold preaching is dependent on the inerrant and

---

152 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 302-03.
153 Commentary, Rom. 15:16.
154 Commentary, Jer. 11:20.
155 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 299.
156 Commentary, Jer. 1:17; 17:16; 28:11; 29:8-10; 32:3; 36:29.
157 Sermons on Micah, 122.
158 Commentary, Jer. 15:19.
159 Commentary, Ezek. 13:19.
160 Commentary, Ezek. 2:5.
161 Commentary, Jer. 7:27.
162 Commentary, Jer. 1:11; Rom. 3:8.
163 Commentary, Jer. 7:27.
powerful Word, while he is prone to error and weakness (Principle 1).\textsuperscript{164} Second, the pastor could only preach with true boldness, while humbly relying on the strength of the Lord (Principle 4).\textsuperscript{165} Third, the pastor is humbled by the opposition, which inevitably includes personal attacks and slanders (Principle 9, Cross-bearing).\textsuperscript{166} Finally, the preacher is humbled to realize that the results of his work may not be apparent in this world but only the next, so he must find his satisfaction not in the applause of men, but of God (Principle 10, Meditate on Future Life).\textsuperscript{167}

In the end the requirement to preach boldly in the face of opposition would produce a pastor who was humble as regards himself and bold as regards the power of the Word of God. He would be humble as he is forced to rely on God, “convinced that they are supported by the hand of God.”\textsuperscript{168} Yet he would be bold, inasmuch as relying on God, he believes that God’s mighty Word will prevail.\textsuperscript{169} This boldness was bolstered by two key assurances: God would care for and protect the faithful preacher against all foes,\textsuperscript{170} and the Word preached boldly would be effective either “to slay all the ungodly”\textsuperscript{171} or for salvation.\textsuperscript{172} This bold preaching in the face of opposition required more than human courage to steady the knees of a pastor facing harsh opposition from Rome; it required deep faith in God,\textsuperscript{173} a faith that would itself produce holiness in the humbly bold pastor (Principle 6, Struggle for Faith).

The high standard of faithful shepherding enhanced holiness

The requirement to pastor one church was sanctifying

Calvin would call his pastors to a high standard of faithfulness as shepherds, which would enhance their holiness. Calvin’s understanding of the pastor as a shepherd, who diligently and humbly cared for his own flock, led him to despise the Roman system, which found priests serving several parishes, absent from parishes or moving freely and often between parishes in an effort to climb up the ecclesiastical ladder and reap financial reward.\textsuperscript{174} These were “monstrous abuses, which are utterly contrary to

\begin{footnotes}
\item[164] Commentary, Jer. 1:9; 20:7.
\item[165] Commentary, Ezek. 3:9.
\item[166] Commentary, Ezek. 2:6.
\item[167] Commentary, Jer. 11:20; 15:19; 20:9; 27:15.
\item[168] Commentary, John 8:29.
\item[169] Commentary, John 8:29.
\item[170] Commentary, Jer. 1:8,18-19.
\item[171] Commentary, Jer. 5:14.
\item[172] Commentary, John 8:29.
\item[173] Commentary, Jer. 16:10; Ezek. 2:6.
\end{footnotes}
God, nature, and church government.” The absentee pastorates were abominable because they encouraged an independent and arrogant spirit, while a settled pastor, “content with his limits,” would be led to humility.

The pastor is a shepherd bound to lengthy service for one flock, which he may leave only when duly dismissed by the Lord (Principle 12, Church). “When our Lord appoints a man as pastor in a church…he may not lightly withdraw.” A pastor was to have a settled ministry since the days of the itinerant apostles, whose authority extended over many churches, had long since passed. The pastors were to conceive of themselves as humbly obliged to one congregation and not as “drifters,” who might fancy themselves superstars as they pass from church to church. Calvin demonstrated such humility, even while exiled from Geneva, he felt bound to the Genevan Church, “for God, when he charged me with it, bound me to be faithful to it forever.”

While Calvin wanted each pastor to be bound to his own church, he recognized that this did not preclude the pastor’s obligation to be concerned for the church at large. Calvin would also grant that a call to one church was not necessarily for a lifetime, for a pastor is not “an ecclesiastical serf” but may take a new call when he is rightly released by the former. Neither did Calvin insist that a pastor must stay at a church when his life was in danger, provided the church thought it best that he leave to preserve his life. Caveats included, this call to pastor one church for a long period was a call to humble self-denial peculiar to pastors, who must turn aside ambition for the sake of being faithful (Principle 8, Self-denial). Yet this teaching would also produce boldness, for seeing that it is God himself who assigned him his charge, the pastor could boldly execute that charge in Christ’s name.

---

175 *Institutes* 4.5.7.
176 *Institutes* 4.3.7.
179 *Institutes* 4.5.4; *Commentary*, 1 Cor. 9:16.
181 *Reid, Treatises*, 222, “Reply to Sadolet.”
182 *Institutes* 4.3.7; McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 40.
183 Parker, *Calvin’s Thought*, 137.
184 Carrington, “Calvin and Erasmus,” 159; *Commentary*, Acts 13:1; *CSW*, Vol.7, 97, Calvin to the Montelimart Church, Apr. 1560.
The requirement to work hard was sanctifying
The pastor must work hard and persevere long,\(^ {186}\) giving himself fully,\(^ {187}\) because he is a servant to Christ, who is worthy of diligence.\(^ {188}\) The pastor will face endless troubles within the life of the church, which require “fidelity, diligence, watchfulness, prudence, and unwearied constancy.”\(^ {189}\) Similarly, the forces which attack the church from without will require that “all who undertake the office of feeding must be prepared for death.”\(^ {190}\) Calvin would remind his students at the Genevan Academy to persevere in the office no matter what hardships arose.\(^ {191}\) So he prayed, “May we learn so entirely to devote ourselves to thy service, and each of us be so attentive to the work of his calling, that we may strive with united hearts to promote the honor of thy name.”\(^ {192}\)

By word and by example Calvin set the tone for hard pastoral labors, rising at four in the morning and working hard until late in the evening.\(^ {193}\) His schedule often required five or more sermons per week, many weddings (24 during 1553\(^ {194}\)), baptisms, letter writings, lectures to students, weekly Compagnie and Consistoire meetings and visitation of the sick.\(^ {195}\) This model of hard work was lived out by the other pastors of Geneva. In one case a pastor baptized four babies at three different services of two churches and preached a sermon, all before 8:00 AM on a weekday.\(^ {196}\)

The requirements of perseverance in this hard labor would have had distinctly sanctifying movements in the pastors’ lives. Here we see pastoral work as a kind of cross-bearing (Principle 9) to which the pastor must submit and therein find grace. We see as well the two-fold knowledge of God and self (Principle 1) offered to the pastor who daily realizes he is the servant while God is the master. Thus the high standard of hard work would itself lead the pastor to holiness.

\(^ {186}\) Commentary, 1 Tim. 4:15.
\(^ {187}\) Commentary, 2 Tim. 4:2.
\(^ {188}\) Commentary, 1 Thess. 5:12; 1 Tim. 3:1.
\(^ {189}\) Commentary, 2 Tim. 3:1.
\(^ {190}\) Commentary, Jer. 26:17; John 21:18.
\(^ {191}\) Commentary, Jer. 11:20.
\(^ {192}\) Commentary, Jer. 1:7.
\(^ {193}\) Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 220.
\(^ {194}\) Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 220.
\(^ {195}\) McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 29, note 62.
\(^ {196}\) CSW, Vol. 4, 132, Calvin to Farel, Apr. 20, 1539.
\(^ {196}\) McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 37, Pastor Macur, the morning of Wed., May 17, 1557.
The requirement to lovingly shepherd individuals was sanctifying

No amount of hard work, however, can make a faithful shepherd if his work does not spring from the right motive: a fatherly love for the flock. “No one will ever be a good pastor, unless he shews himself to be a father to the Church that is committed to him.” Filled with the love of Christ, the pastor has no room for avarice or ambition but must prioritize the good of the church, in constant self-sacrifice. This pastoral love is not a vague feeling but a compelling desire for the holiness of his people that they may be offered to Christ as a pure bride. The loving pastor then will “pine away with grief and sorrow” if the church is in spiritual decay.

Faithful pastors must also show this love in their personal conduct with the people by “their courtesy and their pleasing manner,” such that they “allure people to kindness, rather than violently compel them.” Likewise in their preaching, pastors are to hold forth the love of Christ in their disposition. “A pastor’s warmth must be sensed in his preaching.” He is not to alarm “with terrors” but to encourage the people by “means of a cheerful affability.”

Pastoral love was to work itself out, as a shepherd’s love for his flock, both in providing good pasture—preaching the Word—and in protecting the sheep from wolves—false teachers. This shepherd’s love must be demonstrated for every individual sheep, not just generally, and come through even while preaching to the entire flock. This individual care meant that any member could seek out the pastor and was demonstrated by the pastor’s annual visit to every home in the parish.

---

197 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:11.
198 Commentary, John 21:15.
199 Commentary, Jer. 23:1.
201 Commentary, 2 Cor. 11:2.
203 Commentary, 1 Thess. 3:8.
204 Commentary, 2 Cor. 12:21.
205 Commentary, Rom. 16:18.
206 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:1.
207 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 114; cf. Commentary, 2 Cor. 11:2.
208 Commentary, 2 Cor. 2:2.
209 Commentary, Jer. 23:4.
210 Reid, Treatises, 224, “Reply to Sadolet.”
211 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 177; cf. Commentary, Ezek. 3:17.
212 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:11.
214 Reid, Treatises, 216, “Necessity of Reforming the Church.”
215 CO 18:236, Calvin’s letter to Olevianus, Nov. 1560; cf. Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 249.
Required to love to such a high standard, a pastor must either fail or in humility seek Christ to supply him with the love necessary to shepherd with such selfless diligence (Principle 3, God’s Love). Loving so as to place the church before himself was another exercise in self-denial (Principle 8), which would lead the pastor toward holiness.

The requirement to discipline the flock was sanctifying
Pastoral care was practiced as church discipline, perhaps more successfully in Geneva than anywhere before. Discipline called for rebuking sin and calling the sinner to repent, or face excommunication, and was done in tandem with the ruling elders. The holy shepherd, who is in intimate contact with his sheep, knows who needs shepherding and how best to approach each member. Once the pastor is aware of sin in the life of a member, he must be diligent to confront the sin in their lives. To confront resistant sinners effectively, the pastor must put aside his own emotions, whether fear or hatred, and gently confront the sinner for his own good and for the sake of the church. If individual confrontation failed, the recalcitrant was brought before the weekly meeting of the Consistory. Blind to their sin, even before the Consistory, church members would usually begin their interaction with the claim, “I am innocent.” Because the Consistory had real power to confront and excommunicate (since a decisive battle in 1555), the sinner was forced to carefully count the cost for contumacy. Thus discipline was truly an instrument of the Holy Spirit to bring about repentance.

216 Commentary, Jer. 1:17.
218 Commentary, Hos. 9:5.
219 Institutes 4.11.6, 4.11.2.
220 McKee, Elders and the Plural Ministry, 30.
221 Holder, “Pastoral Model,” 289.
222 Commentary, Tit. 3:11.
223 Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 130; Commentary, Gal. 6:1.
224 Holder, “Pastoral Model,” 291.
225 Commentary, Gal. 4:12.
226 Commentary, Gal. 6:1.
228 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 580.
230 McKee, Elders and the Plural Ministry, 119.
This high standard of church discipline helped engender holiness in pastors. First, to have the moral authority to confront sin among his people, Calvin taught that the pastor must himself live a life of exemplary holiness (Principles 4 and 5). Second, the necessity of confronting sin in his church would force the opportunity for the pastor’s own self-examination and repentance, the downward move of prostration (Principle 7). Third, confronting a person with sin means the pastor might “lose their friendship,” which was particularly dangerous when confronting the powerful. Therefore the pastor must both deny his own self-interest and rely on God’s love to make him secure (Principle 8 and 3), producing a holy boldness. Fourth, confronting sin requires faith, faith that God can change a person merely through the Word of God (Principle 2). Fifth, the gentleness needed for a proper disciplinary confrontation is not a natural human attribute but must be sought from God, so as not “to appear to triumph over those whom they reprove, or to take delight in their disgrace” (Principle 4). Finally, the call to discipline his flock is ultimately humbling for the pastor inasmuch as his work is always imperfect, and he must await the return of the perfect Shepherd to finish the job he has only begun (Principles 1 and 4). The call to discipline the flock leads the pastor himself toward holiness.

The high standard of administering sacraments enhanced holiness

The faithful administration of the sacraments would lead a pastor to further sanctification. First, Calvin was clear that a pastor must only use the sacraments precisely as they are given by Christ. This restriction would lead a pastor toward humility in preventing him from embellishing on the sacraments in any way. Second, a pastor must come to recognize his humble role, since he is no priest offering Christ in sacrifice, nor does he hold great power in his hands, for the

---

231 Commentary, Phil. 4:9. Calvin reflects Gregory’s sentiment. “It is necessary that the hand that aims at cleansing filth should itself be clean.” (Pastoral Care, 46) Cf. Institutes 2.8.46; Commentary, Jer. 15:19.
232 Commentary, Jer. 8:11.
233 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 441.
234 Bouwsma, Sixteenth-Century Portrait, 221.
235 McKee, Elders and the Plural Ministry, 30; cf. Institutes 4.8.1.
236 Commentary, 1 Cor. 4:14.
237 Commentary, 1 Thess. 2:20.
238 Commentary, Jer. 36:23; 1 Cor. 15:24.
239 Commentary, John 1:31.
240 Commentary, 1 Cor. 11:23.
241 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 223.
242 Reid, Treatises, 240, “Reply to Sadolet.”
sacrament is powerful only by the blessing of Christ (Principle 13, Sacraments). 243

Third, the pastor must work diligently to regularly offer the sacraments and to prepare his flock to receive them. The diligence in preparing the people to receive the sacrament, examining their faith, would encourage a pastor toward the descensus in se, to examine his own heart (Principles 7 and 6). 246 Fourth, in presenting the sacraments, he must teach on the meaning of the sacrament and the requirement of worthy receiving: knowing one’s unworthiness. 247 The pastor would be humbled with his congregation and come to the table himself, a penitent sinner seeking grace (Principles 1, 7 and 13). 248 Fifth, in the right distribution of the elements, which requires that any member in good standing with the church be allowed to partake, the pastor would have his private judgment severely curtailed, since he could not imperiously withhold the cup from those he dislikes. 250 Yet at the same time, the pastor must guard the table, boldly fencing it from the unworthy receiver, lest he admit one whom the Lord does not admit, a task which surely would leave a man trembling before God. 251 To faithfully administer the sacraments, a pastor would grow in holiness. 252

The high standard of personal holiness enhanced holiness

Calvin called his pastors to another high standard: personal holiness. Though not formally listed by Calvin as a duty of the office, it was a clear expectation. Were a pastor to faithfully teach, administer the sacraments and shepherd the flock, yet fail in his personal holiness, he would have failed in his duty as a pastor. 253 In fact the typical pastor disciplined in Geneva was disciplined precisely because of a failure in holiness. 254 For example, Mathieu Issotier, who had misappropriated money in Provence, appeared before the Consistory in 1563, where it was decided that “qu’il est excommunié de ceste eglise et declaré scismatique au synode de Provence où il a faict

243 Steinmetz, Context, 72.
244 Reid, Treatises, 49-50, “Articles Concerning the Organization of the Church,” 1537.
245 Reid, Treatises, 66, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
246 Commentary, 1 Cor. 11:28.
247 Reid, Treatises, 152, “Treatise on the Lord’s Supper,” 1541.
248 Institutes 4.17.42.
250 Commentary, 1 Cor. 11:24.
251 Institutes 4.17.43.
252 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 194.
253 Witte, Sex, Marriage and Family, 88; cf. Commentary, 1 Tim. 6:12.
de grandz troubles.”\footnote{Registres du Consistoire, XX, 127v, Sept. 2, 1563, Meeter Center transcripts.} We find the Genevan pastor, Merlin, was dismissed for preaching against the Council.\footnote{RCP, 371.} Even the respected Chevalier was admonished by the Company of Pastors for being too concerned with his personal finances and was told that “he should not give priority to other considerations over the vocation which he had.”\footnote{RCP, 365.}

Calvin would present to his students the highest standard of pastoral holiness in personal morality, purity of motive and dealing with money,\footnote{Commentary, 2 Cor. 12:14.} making “moral behavior the center of religious life”\footnote{Ozment, The Age of Reform, 379.} to complement the high standard for education.\footnote{Pettegree, “The Clergy and the Reformation,” 9.} This high standard was unapologetically a double standard, higher for the pastor than the people (Principle 5, Desire Holiness).\footnote{Institutes 4.12.22.} The higher standard for the pastors served both positively and negatively. Positively, pastoral holiness gives credibility to the message and serves as a visible sermon.\footnote{Commentary, Jer. 42:5} “Let them instruct the people not only through teaching, but also through example of life.”\footnote{Institutes 2.8.46; cf. Sermons on 2 Samuel, 222; Commentary, Phil. 4:9; 1 Thess. 3:2; Tit. 2:7.} Negatively, when a pastor fails, he is judged more harshly in order to serve as a warning to the congregation that if even a pastor is disciplined for sin, then they should expect discipline.\footnote{Commentary, 1 Tim. 3:2} Calvin reminds pastors that they are being watched by all with a hyper-critical, ever-vigilant eye to detect in them even the smallest failing.\footnote{Commentary, Jer. 34:9; 1 Tim. 5:19.} With every eye upon them and such a daunting standard before them, the pastoral candidate would be motivated to flee to Christ for help (Principle 4).\footnote{Sermons on 2 Samuel, 96.} Calvin prayed with his students: “May we learn to fight with ourselves and with our sins, and rely on thy word, until we gain the victory.”\footnote{Commentary, Jer. 5:9.}

The standard of moral purity enhanced holiness

Calvin set before his pastoral candidate a high standard for personal morality.\footnote{Commentary, 1 Tim. 3:3.} The pastor must not drink excessively nor have a temper,\footnote{Commentary, 1 Tim. 5:20.} a continual problem for
Calvin. There must not be even a hint of sexual immorality. “Nothing is more opposed to holiness than the defilement of fornication.” Calvin set forth this standard for moral purity both positively and negatively. Negatively, he would often, and lavishly, critique the morality of the Roman clergy. “Today there is no order of men more notorious in excess, effeminacy, voluptuousness, in short, in all sorts of lusts; in no order are there masters more adept or skillful in every deceit, fraud, treason, and treachery; nowhere is there as great cunning or boldness to do harm. I say nothing about their arrogance, pride, greed, and cruelty.” Calvin would also critique the morality of his fellow Reformers, even those close to him. When Farel was 69 years of age, he declared to Calvin his intent to marry Marie Torel, likely in her late teens. Calvin scolded Farel for even inviting him to participate in such an unseemly wedding, which would invite much “evil speaking.”

Positively, Calvin set forth a high standard for his fellow pastor’s morality. “He shall be a man of unblemished reputation.” This high standard of moral conduct was enforced through the Company of Pastors. Calvin found this policing especially important in the early years after his return to Geneva, for there was so much ungodliness rampant among the pastors he had inherited. Among the thirty-one pastors who served in Geneva from 1538-46, nine were deposed, one of whom was arrested for fornication with two women in the plague hospital and another for embezzlement. Calvin would remind his students that such an unholy life disqualifies one for ministry. “Those are not God’s instruments or ministers, nor are worthy of any honor, who so pervert vices and virtues as to say that light is darkness and that darkness is light.”

Such a high standard for moral purity would drive a pastor down in humility before God as they saw not only their own weakness but the high standard of office

---

270 In his farewell address to the Council of Geneva, Calvin expressed regret for his “natural disposition by far too vehement.” CSW, Vol. 7, 370; CO 9:888.
271 Commentary, Tit. 1:7.
272 Commentary, 1 Thess. 4:3.
273 Institutes 4.12.23.
274 Institutes 4.5.14.
276 CSW, Vol. 6, 476, Calvin to Farel, Sept. 1558.
277 Commentary, Tit. 1:6.
280 Commentary, Jer. 15:19.
(Principles 1 and 5). \(^{281}\) “Those who attain a place of honor should put all pride aside.” \(^{282}\) The high standard would also turn a pastor’s gaze up toward God, seeking him for help to keep from falling (Principle 4). “When we see men fall like this, we…are therefore warned to remain modest and humble….Our attitude should be: ‘Alas! The same could have happened to us, except that God wonderfully preserved us by his grace!’” \(^{283}\) This dependence on Christ to strive toward the high standard of personal holiness would make a pastor humble in himself yet confident in what Christ could do through him. This is progress in holiness.

The standard of pure motives enhanced holiness

Nowhere was Calvin more strict and insistent when it came to the holiness of the pastor than in dealing with the pastor’s motivation in ministering. There was absolutely no room allowed for personal ambition. “For it is certain that ambition is the most mortal evil that can possibly happen to the Church of God, when everyone wants to advance himself and wants to be seen by others.” \(^{284}\) The pastor must labor without desire for his own glory; for to desire advancement in the world means that the pastor must neglect the interests of Christ. \(^{285}\) When a pastor sets as his ambition getting ahead in the world, he will of necessity desire to please men, rather than God, and so pay better attention to the rich and powerful \(^{286}\) and go easy on their vices. \(^{287}\) To be a faithful pastor one cannot desire to please men but must please God. \(^{288}\) “Ambitious persons, that is, those who hunt after the applause of men, cannot serve Christ.” \(^{289}\) Instead of pleasing men, the pastor is called to confront them all, even “kings and queens,” with the claims of Christ. \(^{290}\)

Calvin’s pastors were to leave no room in their hearts for ambition but were rather to root it out constantly. Calvin held forth the pope as a bad example of ambition in ministry, who “arrogates…to himself alone” the seat of power. \(^{291}\) When a

---

\(^{283}\) Sermons on Beatitudes, 14-15.
\(^{284}\) Sermons on 2 Samuel, 125.
\(^{285}\) Commentary, Phil. 2:21.
\(^{286}\) Commentary, Jer. 1:10.
\(^{287}\) Commentary, Jer. 15:19.
\(^{288}\) Commentary, Dan. 6:17; 1 Thess. 2:4.
\(^{289}\) Commentary, Gal. 1:10. Calvin echoes the sentiment of Gregory again, “For from love of himself, the ruler’s mind is diverted into laxity, when he sees his subjects sinning and does not dare to correct them, lest their love of him grow weak.” (*Pastoral Care*, 75).
\(^{290}\) Commentary, Jer. 13:18.
Reformed pastor found any of the characteristics of the ambitious Roman clergy in his own ministry, he was called to immediate repentance and was to be humbled by his high calling.292 “They are not to aspire to this office as many do, who...are guided by ambition.”293 Indeed, the pastor must never use ministry to fulfill his own desires294 but make it his “sole object to promote, to the utmost of his power, the glory of God.”295 The pastor must be willing to cooperate with other ministers, rather than jealously compete, since their mutual cooperation is a demonstration of their unity and submission to Christ.296 Calvin designed this cooperative stance into his practice at Geneva, rotating the pastors on a weekly basis, for the midweek services, through the principal Genevan parishes.297

In laying aside all desire for position and power, the faithful pastor must forego any desire to see his own name lifted up by others.298 “If anyone is influenced by ambition, that man gathers disciples, not to Christ, but to himself.”299 The pastor must win followers for Christ, never taking the Bride for himself, which would be base immorality.300 Calvin would strive to remind not only pastors, but the church, that they must not follow a man as their hero but only Christ.301 One case in The Register of the Company of Pastors serves to illustrate the seriousness of Calvin’s hatred of pastoral ambition. On Friday, June 19, 1562, some of the country pastors around Geneva requested that they be considered for a city parish. When this was denied, some of the country pastors declared, “They would have never entered the ministry if they had thought that they would be left in the country.”302 Calvin later chagrined, “What is this which I see before I die?”303 He could neither believe nor tolerate, that so near the end of his life, his model and teaching had had so little effect.

This rooting out of all personal ambition and substituting for it the desire for Christ’s glory is an opportunity to live out self-denial (Principle 8).304 There is here an enforced necessity for pastors to deny themselves, for should they indulge in self-
glorification, God will eventually humble them by destroying their ministry and removing them from office, “so that they shall cease to boast of their dignity.” The pastor who strives for faithfulness in his motives is left with one route forward, self-denial, which would sanctify him.

**The standard of financial integrity enhanced holiness**

Calvin saw avarice as a close and deadly twin to ambition in pastors, “since it results in the loss of justice and equity.” The love of money could only corrupt the pastor and his ministry. “We know how very pestilent the disease is when prophets and teachers are addicted to gain, or easily receive the gifts offered them.” Not that Calvin would insist that his pastors take a vow of poverty, he meant for them to have no concern for money, though the Council was not as responsive to their needs. Calvin, however, did insist that pastors must not set their hearts on acquiring more wealth. “It is the part of a genuine and upright pastor, not to seek to derive gain from his sheep, but to endeavor to promote their welfare.” Calvin would hold up the Roman clergy, yet again, as the negative example to avoid. For they “first interpret title as meaning an income sufficient for their support.” The pastor who loves money will seek his gain rather than the flock’s, thus neglecting the duty of preaching the hard truths of the Word, which might close the purses of those offended. For Calvin this was simply axiomatic: to love money means to ignore God’s Word in order to curry the favor of the rich through “flattery, servile obsequiousness, and cunning of all kinds.” Love of money was a pestilence to faithful pastors. “Ministers who are given to self-gain...will inevitably compromise and falsify the Word of God.”

---

305 Commentary, Jer. 23:21; cf. Sermons on 2 Samuel, 106.
306 Commentary, 1 Thess. 2:5.
307 Commentary, Hos. 4:10; cf. Sermons on 2 Samuel, 128.
308 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 137.
309 Commentary, Rom. 15:14.
310 Commentary, Micah, 176.
311 Commentary, Jer. 15:16.
312 Commentary, Dan. 2:48.
313 Naphy, Calvin and the Consolidation, 62.
314 Commentary, 1 Tim. 6:9.
315 Commentary, 2 Cor. 12:14.
316 Institutes 4.5.4.
317 Institutes 4.5.6.
318 Sermons on Micah, 178.
319 Commentary, Tit. 1:11.
320 Commentary, Dan 2:6; cf. Commentary, Jer. 15:10.
321 Sermons on Micah, 178.
The pastor, therefore, must examine his heart for any desire to profit from his ministry, and he must destroy that desire through self-denial, faith and repentance (Principles 8, 6 and 7). Denying oneself financially was an expectation, which Calvin modeled himself by owning no property. “Neither the table at which we eat, nor the bed on which we sleep, is my own.” Here we find a practical exercise in self-denial, aimed uniquely at pastors, who must constantly subjugate their desire to advance materially in this world. At the same time, with each effort to turn from the love of money, the pastor must look reverently upward to the Lord to meet his very real needs “as if from the hand of God,” helping to build confidence in God’s supply (Principle 11, Present Life). Together these two motions, prostration and reverence, applied to finances, led the pastor to Christ and to greater holiness.

The standard of discipline for pastors enhanced holiness

Calvin understood that this pursuit of personal holiness in the pastor required the help of others. Sinful human nature rendered the pastor, like every other sinner, blind to his own sin. Therefore, the pastor needed accountability—shepherding and discipline—to confront his sin. “To obviate all scandals of living, it will be proper that there be a form of correction to which all submit themselves.” This accountability was to flow from the entire church. Parishioners should monitor the pastor’s faithfulness to teaching but also his overall moral conduct. This responsibility the citizens of Geneva seemed happy to fulfill, for example, pointing out that Pastor Cop had been “shopping in St. Gervais at the hour of prayers.” To be a pastor in Geneva meant that you were subject to lay correction.

In addition to the church’s role in providing moral accountability for the pastor, the Company of Pastors served to promote the piety of pastors. This was

323 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 220.
325 Sermons on Micah, 180.
326 Commentary, 1 Thess. 2:9.
327 Sermons on Micah, 180.
328 Wallace, Christian Life, 52.
329 Reid, Treatises, 60, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
330 Commentary, 1 Cor. 4:3.
331 Reid, Treatises, 60, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
332 Commentary, 1 Cor. 4:3.
333 McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 39, note 93.
achieved with the weekly Friday morning meeting, which performed once quarterly the *censura morum*. “This was an open conversation where each pastor was free to say whether he had any problems with the life or doctrine of a colleague…so that they could be resolved.”

One example of the Company at work involved the pastor, Philippe de Ecclesia. In 1552 he was charged with usury, disloyalty and bad doctrine. Unrepentant, he was eventually deposed by the Council, with undoubtedly a salutary effect on the rest. Calvin, while subject to the Company, also maintained an informal accountability with a web of life-long friendships. Writing of his friendship with Viret and Farel, Calvin emoted, “I think there has never been in ordinary life a circle of friends so heartily bound to each other as we have been in our ministry.”

Being confronted with one’s sin meant that the pastor must be willing to accept rebukes “and profit from them.” This readiness to receive correction required the pastor to always occupy the posture of a learner. “While we are teachers, we ought at the same time to continue learners.” Part of what the pastor must learn is the true knowledge of himself, of his own sins, so that he might daily turn to grace, in order to lead others as well. “Here we see that no one can discharge the teacher’s office, unless he be proficient in God’s school.”

This direct dealing with a pastor’s sin (Principle 14, Discipline) was designed not only to protect the churches from bad pastors but remedially to enhance the holiness of the pastor through faith and repentance (Principles 6 and 7). Confronted by his own failings, the pastor must humbly turn to Christ for help, reverentially worshipping his Savior. The life of holiness grows as the pastor is shepherded

---

340 Commentary, Tit., Introduction.
342 Commentary, Ezek. 2:8.
343 Commentary, Dan. 12:3.
away from his own sin and led to Christ by his fellow pastors and indeed the entire church.  

**Conclusion: Calvin’s model of the faithful pastor led his students toward holiness**

Calvin’s model of the pastor, truly called and faithful to that call, led his students toward increased piety as it required the engagement of his basic paradigm of sanctification: the two-fold knowledge of God and self, leading to a two-fold response of prostration and reverence before God. This holiness produced a pastor who was personally humble yet bold in proclaiming the Word of God and confronting. The necessity of a true call from God and church would promote both a careful self-examination and an even more careful examination by the church (Principles 7 and 14). This examination would lead to the exposure of failings and a turning to Christ for help (Principles 7 and 4). Recognizing that the true call was from God would promote the two-fold response of prostration and reverence (Principle 1), leaving a man humble as a servant but bold as a servant of God. 

The high standard of faithfulness would drive a pastor to God dependence, recognizing his own inability (Principles 4 and 5). The call to faithfully preach the Word of God would both humble a pastor in submitting himself to teach only what is in the Word and lift him toward God (Principle 2). The high call to faithfulness in shepherding the flock leads a pastor to examine his own heart for sin, while at the same time leading him to turn to God for love, in order to have the love necessary to herd a flock of sinful sheep (Principle 3). The high call to faithfulness in administering the sacraments would call the pastor downward, as he was but a mere deliveryman for God’s grace, who did not possess the authority to deny even one person, on his own power, admission to the Supper. The call to faithfulness in personal holiness would force pastoral candidates to examine their hearts and consciences on the deepest levels, as they sought to deny their own desires for respect and advancement in the world (Principles 1, 4 and 7). 

---

345 *Commentary*, 1 Cor. 4:3.  
346 *Commentary*, Jer. 1:17.  
347 *Commentary*, 2 Tim. 1:7.  
348 *Commentary*, Dan. 9:22.  
349 *Commentary*, Jer. 2:1.  
In all things Calvin’s model of a good pastor, one truly called and faithful to that call, would force the pastor to either abandon the vocation or turn to God in humble dependence to make him stand. In following Calvin’s prescription to rely on God to become a faithful pastor, a new kind of pastor would emerge, one humble yet bold. This was Calvin’s persistent instruction to his pastoral students, cry out to God to make you a holy pastor. “By these words God exhorts his Prophet to prayer; for we know how dangerous is self-security to all the children of God, and especially to teachers. As then they have at all times need of God’s aid, they are to be exhorted to have recourse to solitude and prayer.”351

---

351 Commentary, Jer. 15:20.
Chapter VI -- Calvin’s Teaching to the Students of the Genevan Academy

“Nunc ergo videmus qualis sit vera ratio docendi, nempe dum humiliantur homines... deinde animantur ad bene sperandum.”

I. Calvin Aimed His Teaching toward the Sanctification of His Students

Introduction

We will advance in this chapter a simple proposition: Calvin regularly taught the principles of sanctification to the students of the Genevan Academy, in order to enhance their holiness. First, we will review Calvin’s methods of teaching the students, along with dominant themes of that teaching. Second, we will demonstrate that the fourteen principles of sanctification, which we observed in Section One, were distinctly and consistently taught to the students. Finally, we will show how the fourteen principles interact in a “certain order.”

We prioritize for our study the types of teaching Calvin offered to the students of the Academy, ranking his lectures, preserved in Old Testament commentaries, over his sermons, since the lectures were focused upon the students. The sermons are valuable too, for since attendance at a Sunday worship was legally mandatory and Calvin’s teaching was generally enthusiastically attended, we surmise that the students would have regularly heard the Sunday sermons and likely heard many of his midweek sermons. Though the Institutes were a staple of teaching at the Academy, having relied on them heavily for the preceding chapters, we will not focus on them here.

1 CO 39:520-21. Commentary, Lam. 1:9. “Now, therefore, we see what is the right way of teaching, even that men are to be humbled...and then they are to be encouraged to entertain hope.”

2 Not, however, his Commentaries on The Four Books of Moses, 1559-62, or Joshua, 1563-64, which were apparently delivered in the Congregation, where there is less evidence of mass student attendance. Parker, Old Testament Commentaries, 15; Boer, “The Congrégation;” 59.

3 Naphy, Calvin and the Consolidation, 123; cf. Reid, Treatises, 69; Burnett, “A Tale of Three Churches,” 115.

4 Kingdom, Wars of Religion, 15.

5 Witte, Sex, Marriage and Family, 11.
Calvin’s forms of teaching to the students of the Academy

Lectures
Calvin, originally called to Geneva as a Bible lecturer and not a pastor, began lecturing “to the scholars, ministers, and other auditors,” including the younger students trained under the guidelines of the *Ecclesiastical Ordinances*. Following 1559 the lectures, at either the *Auditoire* or the newly constructed Academy, were given to an audience estimated at about 1000 during 1561, which included those who had particularly come to the Genevan Academy, mostly as pastoral candidates. While the lower school of the Academy, the *schola privita*, focused on younger students, the *schola publica* trained those older than 17 years of age, perhaps mostly in their early 20s but some in their 30s as well, who were prepared to accept pastorates upon graduation. During our period of study, Calvin lectured three afternoons per week, on alternate weeks, expositing Daniel (1559), Jeremiah (1560-62), Lamentations (1562) and Ezekiel (1563-64). Calvin’s well-preserved lectures were delivered in Latin without notes, after perhaps one half-hour of preparation and lasted one hour. The lectures followed a basic pattern. They began with a brief prayer, then presentation of the text (in Hebrew and Latin) along with explanatory glosses, an explanation of the important philological insights, the explication of the meaning of the text, an application to his hearers and a closing prayer, which acted as a summary of the application. While scholarly, Calvin’s lectures, simple and unembellished, were aimed at the final

---

7 *CO* 21:71, Colladon, *The Life of Calvin*.
9 There is some lack of clarity as to the precise location of Calvin’s lectures for the Academy during 1559-62. After this time it seems clear his lectures were given at the *Auditoire*. While Borgeaud states that the lectures were moved to the *Auditoire* in 1562 (Borgeaud, *Histoire de l’Université*, 54), Wilcox concludes that Calvin simply continued to lecture from the pulpit of the *Auditoire*, so the lectures on Jeremiah (1560-62) were given there as well. (P. Wilcox, “The Lectures of John Calvin and the Nature of His Audience, 1555-1564,” *Archiv für Reformationsgeschichte* 87, 1996, 139-140.) Calvin’s introduction to the Jeremiah Commentary may confirm this, for he describes his lecture as given from the pulpit to a “medium auditory,” *(mediocris auditorio)* *CO* 20:77.
12 Wilcox, “Lectures of Calvin,” 146.
14 Puckett, “John Calvin as Teacher,” 48. See the Preface to *Commentary* on Hosea, by Jean Budé, for a description of the process.
product of increased piety. Blacketer makes a similar point about Calvin’s Joshua Commentary: “Calvin will bring out the spiritual implications of the text, explaining the things the text teaches about what Christians should believe, what they should hope for, and how they should live.” His customary opening prayer for his lectures shows this desire to increase holiness by bringing to bear God’s Word, “that our piety truly progresses.” Calvin’s closing prayers, unique to each lecture, show this same concern. They typically pick up the chief theme of his teaching, and starting with the need of his hearers to repent of their sins, offer them hope in God’s grace for renewal and new obedience. Calvin’s lectures, as with his commentaries in general, were often directed toward pastors, and served as a kind of “first seminary,” hence our assigning them first priority here. Lecture by lecture Calvin meant his commentaries to help sanctify the pastors he hoped to send to his beloved French homeland.

Sermons

During this period Calvin typically preached 10 times a fortnight, covering a series on the Harmony of the Gospels from 1559-64 on Sunday and covering an Old Testament series during midweek service, namely Genesis (1559-61), Judges (1561), 1 and 2 Samuel (1561-63) and 1 and 2 Kings (1563-4). Calvin preached without notes, after carefully exegeting the passage in the original language and consulting historical and contemporary interpretations. His sermons were typically an hour in length, in French, from either the Hebrew or Greek Bible. While it varied he would generally expound two to four verses in a chapter, following the pattern of lectio continua, as he worked his way through a book, “riveted to the biblical text.”

17 Jean Budé, “Preface to Commentary on Hosea.”
19 CO 37:463.
20 Jean Budé, “Preface to Commentary on Hosea.”
21 Commentary, Lam. 1:10.
22 Holder, “Exegetical Understanding,” 207-08. Pastors also perceived the value of these commentaries. Jean Chambeli, sent from Geneva in 1558, listed among his few books two commentaries by Calvin: Isaiah and Romans (Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 16).
25 Parker, Oracles of God, 30.
Calvin’s sermons, also well-preserved, followed a general pattern: an opening prayer, the reading of the text, a summary of the last sermon, exposition of a verse, followed by application, then exposition and application again, until the passage was complete, and finally a closing prayer which served as a summary of the sermon in application. His style was lucid, fluid and uninterrupted by lengthy quotations or anecdotes, which was in sharp contrast to the Medieval style. He aimed for an eloquence of substance and not style, which would bring the hearer to Christ, where Christ might move them toward holiness. Certainly his intent in preaching was clear: the increased holiness of his hearers. “For why has God appointed the ministers of his gospel, except to invite us to become partakers of his salvation, and thus sweetly to restore and refresh our souls?” Preaching must impact the hearer, penetrating “into the consciences of men,” awakening the hearer, and making forceful application, so they might be led to the solution of Christ, for growth in holiness. In his prayers before and after the sermon, we see Calvin’s intent to bring the congregation low in prostration and lifted up in reverence to God. He regularly used the same opening prayer, learned from his time in Strasbourg, which called on God to grant humility, the upward reverence to “trust only in him,” and the call to obediently love God and neighbor, all based on the prior fact that God has been pleased “graciously to receive us.” The aim was clearly for sanctification: “So that we may glorify his holy name in all our living and edify our neighbor by our good example, rendering to God the love and the obedience which faithful servants give their masters.” Consider in this typical closing prayer, unique to each sermon, the downward movement of prostration and the upward movement brought on by forgiveness and mercy. “Now let us prostrate ourselves before the Majesty of our

29 Parker, Oracles of God, 40.
30 Parker, Oracles of God, 71.
31 Parker, Oracles of God, 75.
32 Commentary, 1 Cor. 1:17.
34 Parker, Oracles of God, 43.
35 Commentary, Jer. 5:15.
36 Commentary, Gal. 3:1.
37 Commentary, 1 Thess. 2:12.
38 Lawson, “Biblical Preaching,” 22; Parker, Calvin’s Preaching, 81; Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 112.
39 Bouwsma, Sixteenth-Century Portrait, 228.
good God in recognition of the infinite faults of which we are guilty….Thus may it be, that…we are yet assured of being absolved before God by his infinite goodness.”

**Teaching emphases**

We find some themes in Calvin’s theology of sanctification occurring more frequently than others; we will highlight four of them. First, we should make note of a negative theme. Calvin repeatedly corrects errors in Roman theology and methods of sanctification, while showing the correctness of the Reformed views. The root problem was bad Roman theology, which attributed too much ability to human will, allowing for human merit and thus satisfactions. Calvin challenged Roman theology by showing that the human will was bound by sin, and therefore man was entirely, not partly, justified and sanctified by grace alone, with no human works added. The faulty theology of Rome naturally led to faulty practices. The Roman sacraments were thought to offer assisting grace, particularly baptism and penance, which were sought out to wash away original sin and deal with present sin, respectively. Calvin denounced the Roman methods as spiritually destructive to holiness, with their magical view of the sacraments and an external, false and penitential system to acquire merit. The bad theology and methods of sanctification naturally led to an unholy priesthood. “So much for the Pope’s men, who bravely preach about merit but whose lives are an affront to God!” For Calvin the Roman system of sanctification was entirely a failure, from theology, to practices, to results, and he wanted his students to understand the superiority of the Reformed approach.

Second, it is clear by the frequency of repetition that Calvin believed that the human journey toward holiness started with a move away from pride and toward a

---

41 *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 518.
42 We found 274 direct corrections in the four commentaries: 162 in Jeremiah, 71 in Ezekiel, 41 in Daniel but interestingly none in Lamentations.
43 *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 575; *Commentary*, Dan. 4:27.
44 *Commentary*, Ezek. 11:19.
45 *Commentary*, Ezek. 16:63.
46 *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 435.
47 *Commentary*, Ezek. 11:19.
48 Battles, *Interpreting Calvin*, 134; *Sermons on Nativity*, 36-37; *Commentary*, Ezek. 16:51.
49 *Commentary*, Lam. 3:41; cf. *Commentary*, Jer. 14:9; *Sermons on Beatitudes*, 76-77.
51 *Commentary*, Dan.11:35; *Sermons on Nativity*, 90; *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 269-70.
52 *Commentary*, Ezek. 20:20.
53 *Commentary*, Jer. 14:12; Ezek. 14:14; *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 583-84.
54 *Commentary*, Jer. 23:11.
55 *Sermons on Beatitudes*, 76-77.
true and realistic appraisal of the human condition as one of helpless sinner.  

“Now as to pride, the first step we must take to overcome it is to acknowledge that we possess nothing good which does not come from God.”

We must see God’s greatness and our littleness to be properly humbled that prostrated before God we might find his grace to transform us more into the image of Christ.

Third, nearly as often as he takes his hearers down in humility, he lifts them up again in reverence before God. In order to help his hearers toward a proper reverence, Calvin will offer knowledge of God, showing his immense power and goodness and our utter dependence on him. Seeing God’s goodness in the face of man’s wickedness, the heart is filled, reverences God as Father and renders to him thankful worship and the obedience of faith.

Fourth, Calvin will return to the theme of the love and mercy of God because he understood that it was God’s love, and not his justice, which finally moved the prostrated sinner toward God in reverence. God’s love is seen in the promises of his Word, in his gracious provision for his people and most clearly in the offer of mercy through faith in his Son. Perhaps the most stirring aspect of God’s love is his pure affection for us, which he communicates to us as if to say, “I will not fail you in any way since I have given you such good testimony of the love I bear for you.” Seeing God’s love in word, deed and in the very affection of his heart, the prostrated sinner is lifted up toward God, returning God’s affection as worshipful reverence.

58 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 391.
59 Commentary, Jer. 9:23.
60 Sermons on Nativity, 28.
61 Commentary, Jer. 2:17; 4:2; 9:3; 13:16; 26:19; 33:9; 44:24; Lam. 1:5; 2:14; Ezek. 3:11; 11:12; 13:22; Dan. 2:27; 6:11; 8:27; Sermons on Nativity, 23, 35; Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 687, 838.
63 Commentary, Jer. 13:16.
64 Sermons on Nativity, 26.
65 Sermons on Beatitudes, 1.
66 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 90, 112, 120; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 61, 162, 198, 395, 489, 535, 602; Sermons on Nativity, 11, 20, 81; Commentary, Jer. 2:1; 3:1; 6:8; 10:24; 12:10; Lam. 1:9; 2:9.
67 Wallace, Christian Life, 35.
68 Commentary, Jer. 11:4.
69 Sermons on Nativity, 62-63.
70 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 266, 273.
71 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 112.
These four themes are woven together consistently through Calvin’s teaching to his students.

II. Calvin Repeatedly Taught the Principles of Sanctification to His Students

Principle 1: Two-fold Knowledge. Because God created us to lovingly revere him, therefore gain knowledge of God and self thus to offer God prostration and reverence.

At the very heart of Calvin’s theology of sanctification, regularly preached and taught,\(^\text{72}\) we find the two-fold knowledge of God and self.\(^\text{73}\) This knowledge highlights man’s hopelessness and God’s great mercy, which leads to a two-fold response, a movement downward in prostration before God and upward toward God in reverence.\(^\text{74}\) “The reaction is twofold: man stands awestricken in fear, and yet is drawn in love.”\(^\text{75}\) This movement of prostration and reverence, the two must always come together, restores man to his rightful place before God, a humble, thankful, beloved child of God, who is eager to serve God.\(^\text{76}\)

Calvin taught his students that man was created good,\(^\text{77}\) yet had in his pride rebelled against a good God,\(^\text{78}\) rejecting and despising God,\(^\text{79}\) while indulging himself in everything vile,\(^\text{80}\) violating his own remaining sense of piety.\(^\text{81}\) Man, blind to his own sin\(^\text{82}\) and responsible for his own blindness,\(^\text{83}\) is helpless to do anything about his sin\(^\text{84}\) or to benefit himself\(^\text{85}\) in his own power.\(^\text{86}\) Calvin dwelt on the importance of

\(^{75}\) Dowey, *Knowledge of God*, 30.
\(^{76}\) Commentary, Ezek. 1:13.
\(^{77}\) Zachman, “Deny Yourself,” 467.
\(^{78}\) *Sermons on Nativity*, 46; *Commentary*, Ezek. 11:19.
\(^{79}\) *Sermons on Genesis 1-11*, 190, 846.
\(^{80}\) Commentary, Jer. 4:23.
\(^{83}\) Commentary, Ezek. 5:13.
\(^{84}\) Dowey, *Knowledge of God*, 22.
\(^{85}\) Commentary, Jer. 10:23.
knowing God, for “to know God is the chief part of perfect wisdom.” We are to see God’s greatness in his creation and providence, and his holiness in his judgment, all cause for human humility. In nearly every message, Calvin exalted God’s mercy in Christ, who stands ready to help all who turn to him, then invited all to respond with repentant prostration before God. Man must be prostrated before God. “God then wanted to subdue all human glory, God wanted to reduce men to subjection.” Once man was prostrate, always prostration first, Calvin would call them upward in reverence, linking together the two-fold knowledge of God with the two-fold response. “That we may especially be humbled under thy mighty hand, and that being really prostrate through a deep feeling of repentance, we may raise our hopes to heaven.” He explains this two-fold response regarding prayer: “Repentance throws men downwards, and faith raises them upwards again.”

The two-fold knowledge and response bid a man to rely on God to save and help him. “For those who cast their eyes down to the earth raise their eyes to heaven.” In order to come to this knowledge and response, one must listen to the Word preached, which aids our struggle for more faith and invites us to repentance with the allure of God’s love in Christ. Calvin prayed for those “destined pastors” in his lectures that they would, through teaching the true

88 Commentary, Jer. 9:24.
89 Commentary, Jer. 10:2.
90 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 257.
91 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 63; Commentary, Lam. 4:9; 5:16; Ezek. 15:6; 16:1; 18:25; Dan. 2:21; 4:31; 7:10; 9:4.
93 Commentary, Lam. 2:14; 3:42.
94 Commentary, Ezek. 18:20; Dan. 9:7; 10:12; 11:37.
96 Wallace, Christian Life, 284.
97 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 391.
98 Commentary, Ezek. 6:10; Dan. 4:16, 37; 8:18; 9:4; 21; 10:8.
99 Commentary, Lam. 2:14.
100 Commentary, Dan. 9:18.
101 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 827.
102 Commentary, Dan. 4:34.
103 Sermons on Nativity, 35.
104 Commentary, Jer. 10:25.
105 Commentary, Ezek. 6:10.
106 Commentary, Jer. 9:25.
knowledge of God and man, call sinners to repentance. The students of the Genevan Academy would understand the need for the two-fold knowledge of God and self, leading to the two-fold response of prostration and reverence, in order to grow in holiness.

Principle 2: Bible Preaching. Because God has given his Word to lead us to life, therefore submit to the preaching of the Word of Christ.

Calvin would remind his hearers that submitting to Bible preaching is necessary because sanctification relies on the continuous exposure to God’s Word, brought by faithful preaching within the church. One must hear and heed the Word, fleeing to the grace of God offered in Christ. The students were reminded that they must not only preach faithfully, but that they too, as pastors, must sit under the preaching of the Word to grow in holiness.

During sermons Calvin will remind all of the importance of heeding the sermon. God sends pastors to preach to the people, so they must listen even to imperfect pastors, for God uses weak men, who preach with God’s authority. It is God’s voice they must hear, for they can hear his voice nowhere else, in order to find Christ, who is all they need. In his lectures his students were reminded that they must heed sermons from men sent by God, as God’s Word for them to bring judgment on sin that they might repent and through faith find mercy and life in Jesus Christ.

---

108 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 375; Wallace, Christian Life, 206; Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 299.
110 Dowey, Knowledge of God, 38.
111 Sermons on Nativity, 79.
113 Commentary, Dan. 9:2.
114 Sermons on Genesis I-11, 394.
116 Sermons on Nativity, 70; Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 297-98.
117 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 233.
118 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 208-09.
120 Commentary, Ezek. 10:15; Dan. 2:9; 3:7; 7:16.
121 Commentary, Dan. 8:14.
122 Commentary, Jer. 9:20.
123 Commentary, Jer. 3:13.
124 Commentary, Jer. 5:15.
125 Commentary, Dan. 12:3.
Since no human could naturally deduce his lowliness and God’s glory in such a way as to continuously find grace, they must have the Word of God preached to give them this knowledge. With God meeting them in the Word preached, they repent, and God pours faith into the believers’ hearts though the Word, which unites them to the sanctifying power of Christ himself, presented in the Word.

Submitting to biblical sermons was critical in Calvin’s plan for enhancing the holiness of his pastoral candidates.

**Principle 3: God’s Love. Because God has elected us in love, therefore apprehend God’s love to move us to love God in holiness.**

Calvin believed that it was not knowledge of sin that finally moved the sinner to turn to God, but the apprehension of the love and mercy of God as found in Christ. Calvin taught that God loved us first, apart from any good in us or merit which might warrant his love, rendering moot the Roman claim to our meritorious love of God. God’s love stands alone in priority, and causality, that all might be of grace, not human effort. Calvin will highlight God’s love often, showing it by God’s provision in creation and protection in providence, where even our suffering becomes a sign of God’s “paternal love.”

One must perceive God’s love to advance in holiness, for once a sinner was brought low before a holy God, he must have the hope of God’s love, seen in Christ on the cross. It was God’s warm love, in his promise of forgiveness through

---

126 Commentary, Jer. 11:23.
127 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 50; Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 545.
128 Commentary, Jer. 7:23.
129 Dowey, Knowledge of God, 10.
130 Niesel, Theology of Calvin, 30; Sermons on Nativity, 8.
131 Commentary, Jer. 12:2.
132 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 162.
133 Sermons on Nativity, 81.
135 Commentary, Ezek. 16:8.
136 Commentary, Jer. 2:1.
137 Commentary, Jer. 32:33; cf. Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 90, 112, 120.
138 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 226.
139 Commentary, Lam. 4:21.
140 Commentary, Jer. 10:24.
141 Commentary, Lam. 3:32.
142 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 489.
143 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 400.
144 Commentary, Jer. 14:22.
faith in Christ,¹⁴⁵ that served as the magnetic attractive force¹⁴⁶ to bring the Christian to repent of sin,¹⁴⁷ and turn toward God¹⁴⁸ in new obedience.¹⁴⁹

Calvin constantly invites his hearers to marvel at the depth of God’s love for us, who, unlike a normal husband, takes us back after our failures¹⁵⁰ and bids us tenderly to come to him.¹⁵¹ In his sermons Calvin will remind his hearers that God’s love is unconditional kindness,¹⁵² like that of a Father,¹⁵³ which came to us before creation,¹⁵⁴ he takes us into his house and makes us his children,¹⁵⁵ so that we are drawn to him,¹⁵⁶ may rest in his love,¹⁵⁷ be assured in troubles¹⁵⁸ and bring him glory.¹⁵⁹ In his lectures he will emphasize to his students that God’s love stands constant despite our sin,¹⁶⁰ restrains God’s hand,¹⁶¹ gives us hope in adversity¹⁶² and invites us sweetly and daily to submission,¹⁶³ that we might “taste God’s paternal goodness”¹⁶⁴ and be reconciled with our father.¹⁶⁵ Calvin will also instruct his students to be certain to preach on his mercy whenever sin is denounced.¹⁶⁶ The love of God, as the motive force in Calvin’s theology of sanctification, received ample treatment in all of Calvin’s teaching to the students of the Academy.

Principle 4: God Reliance. Because God is the one who sanctifies, therefore rely on God’s powerful grace, and not yourself, to become holy.

Calvin wanted his hearers to abandon faulty Roman methods of self-improvement and instead rely on God for their progress in holiness.¹⁶⁷ “Let us be clear: our soul’s

¹⁴⁵ Sermons on Nativity, 20.
¹⁴⁶ Commentary, Ezek. 7:26; 18:5; 20:11; Dan. 11:5.
¹⁴⁷ Commentary, Jer. 2:1.
¹⁴⁸ Sermons on Genesis 1–11, 547.
¹⁴⁹ Commentary, Jer. 11:4.
¹⁵⁰ Commentary, Jer. 3:1.
¹⁵¹ Sermons on Nativity, 25.
¹⁵² Sermons on Beatitudes, 4.
¹⁵³ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 603, 198.
¹⁵⁴ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 605.
¹⁵⁵ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 535.
¹⁵⁶ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 386.
¹⁵⁷ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 161.
¹⁵⁸ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 396.
¹⁵⁹ Sermons on 2 Samuel, 382.
¹⁶⁰ Commentary, Jer. 17:7.
¹⁶¹ Commentary, Jer. 6:8.
¹⁶² Commentary, Lam. 2:9.
¹⁶³ Commentary, Jer. 11:12; 12:10.
¹⁶⁵ Commentary, Jer. 6:8.
¹⁶⁶ Commentary, Jer. 26:6; Ezek. 1:1.
¹⁶⁷ Commentary, Jer. 4:14; Ezek. 16:30, 63; 18:30; Dan. 10:11, 19; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 620.
eternal salvation depends on God’s exercise of his marvelous power.”

He would remind them that the Father sanctifies us through election, the Son sanctifies us through union with us and the Spirit quickens us to holiness. People must believe entirely that God desires their holiness and will sanctify them to the uttermost, so that, disabused of the notion of self-help, they will actively turn to God for holiness, resting from self-effort. “We must always remind ourselves of this word: God must do it.”

Underscoring all his teaching was the powerful theme of grace, looking to and relying on the grace of God to save and sanctify his hearers. “Not only has God’s free grace raised us to such a height, but [it] also sustains us.”

In his lectures he teaches that God shows us mercy, circumcises our hearts, refashions us, gives us new hearts, sanctifies even our prayers and makes us holy. In his sermons we hear that God pities us always, raises us to new life, offers us continual grace, adopts us, convicts us of sin, purifies us, reforms his image in us, molds and leads us. Relying on God’s grace to sanctify is essential to Calvin’s theology of sanctification because man must be moved from willful self-reliance to the humility of depending on God for holiness.

---

168 Sermons on Nativity, 42.
169 Commentary, Jer. 11:17.
171 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 528.
172 Sermons on Nativity, 88; Wallace, Christian Life, 14.
173 Commentary, Ezek. 20:12, 44.
174 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 194.
176 Commentary, Ezek. 15:6.
177 Commentary, Jer. 10:23.
178 Commentary, Jer. 4:4.
179 Commentary, Ezek. 18:32.
180 Commentary, Ezek. 11:19.
181 Commentary, Jer. 14:12.
182 Commentary, Jer. 2:3.
183 Sermons on Nativity, 39; Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 559.
184 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 134-35.
185 Sermons on Beatitudes, 1.
186 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 400.
187 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 455.
188 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 328.
189 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 366.
190 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 142.
191 Commentary, Jer. 10:23.
Principle 5: Desiring Holiness. Because God is holy and loves holiness therefore desire deeply to become holy.

To help his hearers desire to become more holy, Calvin held up both the high standard of the law and examples of holiness, such as God himself and the Old Testament saints, to contrast to his hearers’ low expectations for holiness. He persistently set these models before them, reminding them of the requirements of obedience within the covenant of grace, to stir them up to strive to “attain to that perfect holiness.” He would call hearers to whole-hearted obedience, never just external conformity, lived out in pietas and caritas, a deep love for God culminated in true worship and love for one’s neighbor, which translated into actual service.

In his sermons Calvin constantly cajoled or warned that the people must keep themselves under strict control, walk the narrow path, in all modesty, with whole hearts, forgiving others, doing deeds of mercy and worshiping God aright. Similarly, in his lectures Calvin called his students to obey the law, worship honestly, live with integrity and attend to doctrine. This desire for holiness was an essential part of Calvin’s overall sanctification theology. By showing God’s holiness, God’s desire for their holiness and their incredible need to

192 Wallace, Christian Life, 324.
193 Commentary, Jer. 9:14.
194 Commentary, Dan. 9:25.
196 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 578-79.
197 Commentary, Jer. 13:25.
198 Commentary, Jer. 23:24; cf. Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 851.
199 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 578; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 253; Commentary, Jer. 7:23; Wallace, Christian Life, 122.
200 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 261.
201 McKee, “Contacts, Contours, Contents,” 73.
202 Commentary, Jer. 11:4.
203 Sermons on Nativity, 46.
204 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 258.
205 Sermons on Beatitudes, 43; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 73.
206 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 91.
207 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 63.
208 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 577.
209 Sermons on Beatitudes, 54.
210 Sermons on Beatitudes, 44.
211 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 246.
212 Commentary, Jer. 11:4.
213 Commentary, Jer. 7:31.
become more holy, Calvin created in his hearers a hunger for holiness that would lead them to seek more the grace of God,\textsuperscript{217} and thus become more holy.\textsuperscript{218}

**Principle 6: Faith. Because God sanctifies by giving more faith, therefore struggle daily for more faith to become more holy.**

Although faith is a gift of God, coming through his Holy Spirit\textsuperscript{219} by hearing of the Word,\textsuperscript{220} the Christian must still struggle to increase his faith\textsuperscript{221} toward greater assurance,\textsuperscript{222} for faith is certainty,\textsuperscript{223} which leads to holiness\textsuperscript{224} by uniting us to Christ.\textsuperscript{225} «That we may not be like the rose wobbling in every wind, but that we may have an assured faith."\textsuperscript{226} The struggle for faith is always a struggle to believe the promises of God, which we hear over against life’s visible trials,\textsuperscript{227} by which the devil tempts us to unbelief.\textsuperscript{228} Taking the struggles of the prophets in the texts,\textsuperscript{229} Calvin will point out that such struggles are necessary because they force believers into periods where they see the weakness of their faith, leading them to desire more faith from God.\textsuperscript{230} Believers must struggle for faith in trials\textsuperscript{231} by accepting God’s promises in his Word,\textsuperscript{232} in order to repose in him\textsuperscript{233} without fear or shame of the struggle, knowing God will give increased faith.\textsuperscript{234}

To gain more faith in the struggle, the believer must come to a true knowledge of himself as weak in faith,\textsuperscript{235} and to a true knowledge of God as the one who supplies faith.\textsuperscript{236} It is the love of God, known through the promises of his Word,\textsuperscript{237} which

\textsuperscript{217} Commentary, Ezek. 11:3; Wallace, *Christian Life*, 323.
\textsuperscript{218} Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 571.
\textsuperscript{219} Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 155.
\textsuperscript{221} Commentary, Jer. 20:8; Lam. 3:15, 18, 54, 60; Dan. 7:2.
\textsuperscript{222} Muller, *Unaccommodated*, 168.
\textsuperscript{224} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 327.
\textsuperscript{225} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 21.
\textsuperscript{227} Wallace, *Christian Life*, 251.
\textsuperscript{228} Commentary, Lam. 3:54.
\textsuperscript{229} Commentary, Lam. 3:55.
\textsuperscript{230} Commentary, Lam. 3:18, 26.
\textsuperscript{231} Commentary, Lam. 3:15, 60; Dan 7:5.
\textsuperscript{232} Commentary, Jer. 22:5.
\textsuperscript{233} Commentary, Jer. 6:16.
\textsuperscript{234} Niesel, *Theology of Calvin*, 155; Commentary, Jer. 14:10; Lam. 3:20; 5:22.
\textsuperscript{235} Institutes 3.2.18.
\textsuperscript{237} Commentary, Jer. 29:14; Beeke, “Assurance,” 49-50.
infuses the heart of the struggling believer with faith\textsuperscript{238} and therefore assurance.\textsuperscript{239} Calvin offered his students a particularly applicable example of how to struggle for faith: Jeremiah’s struggle for faith to preach boldly to a world which rejects God’s Word.\textsuperscript{240} To be a student at the Genevan Academy was to understand the need to struggle for faith, even as a pastor.

**Principle 7: Repentance.** Because God gives grace to the lowly, therefore repent humbly to find more grace.

Calvin affirmed that the whole of the believer’s life must be one of repentance,\textsuperscript{241} since even the best of us sins continually.\textsuperscript{242} Repentance, a gift of God’s grace,\textsuperscript{243} is necessary that we may continually obtain pardon as we turn from sin to God,\textsuperscript{244} receiving new grace to walk in obedience.\textsuperscript{245} Calvin typically ended his messages with prayers of repentance.\textsuperscript{246} “Now let us let us cast ourselves down...conscious of our faults.”\textsuperscript{247}

Calvin would often teach on repentance, as though his hearers did not understand it, calling them to see their need for it.\textsuperscript{248} He taught that repentance was not a ceremony but a turning of the heart from sin to God,\textsuperscript{249} a divine opening of Satan-blinded eyes to the reality of sin,\textsuperscript{250} along with the gift of admitting that one is wrong.\textsuperscript{251} To see our sin properly, we must have God’s Word to define our sin,\textsuperscript{252} the church to confront us with conviction of the sin we would rather not see\textsuperscript{253} and self-examination for sin;\textsuperscript{254} for the moment must come when we look inward and see that we have sinned.\textsuperscript{255} This recognition of sin must contain a real heart-felt grief over

\begin{thebibliography}{99}
\bibitem{238} Commentary, Jer. 3:12.
\bibitem{239} McWilliams, “Certainty,” 514.
\bibitem{240} Commentary, Jer. 20:9.
\bibitem{241} Commentary, Jer. 14:20; Steinmetz, “Reformation and Conversion,” 32.
\bibitem{242} Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 94.
\bibitem{243} Kraan, “Le Pêché et le Repentance,” 47; Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 488.
\bibitem{244} Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 491; Commentary, Dan. 9:9.
\bibitem{245} Commentary, Ezek. 5:15; 18:22; Steinmetz, “Reformation and Conversion,” 32.
\bibitem{246} Commentary, Jer. 2:35.
\bibitem{247} Commentaries on Nativity, 151; cf. Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 505; Commentary, Jer. 2:5; 8:5.
\bibitem{248} Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 544.
\bibitem{249} Selderhuis, “Faith Between God and the Devil,” 201.
\bibitem{250} Commentary, Jer. 8:5; 13:23; Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 54.
\bibitem{251} Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 491.
\bibitem{252} Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 556.
\bibitem{253} Commentary, Ezek. 13:9; 18:30; Dan. 3:1; 8:11; Wallace, Christian Life, 225.
\bibitem{254} Commentaries on Genesis 1-11, 379, 547, 554; Commentaries on 2 Samuel, 188, 495, 512, 560, 632; Commentaries on Nativity, 90; Commentary, Jer. 2:35; 8:6; Lam. 3:39. Cf. Beeke, “Assurance,” 56.
\end{thebibliography}
sin, followed by a sincere, not ritualistic, confession to God and any others who ought to hear our confession. The turn from sin is always away from God’s corrective hatred of sin and toward God’s mercy, where one may find forgiveness and all the grace needed to walk in the obedience of faith.

Repentance, a fruit of faith, was central to sanctification, leading to the low point of the downward movement of prostration, as the full force of the two-fold knowledge of God and self brought the believer low, leading to the upward movement of reverence. Calvin will generally put these two motions together in order: go down in repentance that you might be lifted up by God’s grace. Believers would find there the holiness that God required, which they could never manufacture in themselves. The students of the Genevan Academy were reminded that preaching must never tickle the ears but confront stony hearts with conviction of sin that they might repent and thus find holiness.

Principle 8: Self-denial. Because God gives life to those who lose it, therefore deny yourself as a practice of faith and repentance.

Although Calvin did not use the term self-denial often in these commentaries, if one considers his entire emphasis on pastoral holiness, these commentaries drip with self-denial, the heart of all “true religion.” We must daily search for opportunities to deny self-love, since we all seek to exalt ourselves over God and our neighbors, and rather embrace God’s will and grace to love our neighbor and

256 Commentary, Ezek. 6:9; 20:43; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 521, 555, 656; Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 296.
257 Commentary, Jer. 5:9; 10:19; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 488, 492, 514, 553, 654.
258 Commentary, Jer. 15:10; Lam. 2:19.
261 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 518.
262 Commentary, Jer. 7:6.
264 Commentary, Jer. 6:8; Lam. 3:40; Ezek. 13:22.
265 Commentary, Jer. 4:4; 17:24; 31:33; Lam. 2:14; Ezek. 3:14; 20:12-13; Dan. 1:14; 6:23.
266 See Chapter V.
267 Commentary, Jer. 4:4.
268 Winecoff, “Mortification,” 93.
269 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 77.
Self-denial is not an outward ritual but a surrendering of the heart to God’s will, as when we rightly observe the Sabbath and the sacraments. While self-denial involves human will, it only follows our union with Christ and God’s gracious work in the life of Christians. Calvin would offer models of self-denial, notably Daniel and his three colleagues, showing their willingness to die rather than worship falsely, a point with obvious applications for preachers facing the fury of persecution in France.

Self-denial was the daily outworking of several key themes in Calvin’s theology of sanctification. First, self-denial required submitting to God’s Word, which would reveal the will of God to which one must be in subjection, rather than trusting in one’s own reason. Second, self-denial required the believer to practice faith, believing that following God’s will was best. Third, self-denial was a clear call to repentance, to turn from self-will, which must be renounced for God to work in us. Fourth, self-denial applied the two-fold knowledge in coming to see that God’s will was best, which leads to a reverent embrace of God’s will. Fifth, cross-bearing forces the will of God upon us, leading us to deny our own will and conforming us to the image of Christ. Finally, self-denial helps guide one in the right use of this life, enforcing a vocation-specific moderate use of this life and a moderation of our emotions, so that we might do good to those who hurt us. It would be clear to any student at the Academy, for a pastor to advance in holiness, he must constantly deny himself.

Commentary, Jer. 31:33.
Commentary, Ezek. 20:13.
Commentary, Jer. 4:4.
Commentary, Ezek. 3:14; 20:12; Winecoff, “Mortification,” 90.
Commentary, Dan. 3:16.
Commentary, Dan. 6:23.
Commentary, Jer. 31:33.
Zachman, “Deny Yourself,” 471.
Sermons on 2 Samuel, 231.
Commentary, Jer. 17:24.
Commentary, Lam. 2:14; Ezek. 9:9.
Sermons on 2 Samuel, 321.
Sermons on 2 Samuel, 523.
Commentary, Dan. 1:14.
Sermons on 2 Samuel, 636-37.
Sermons on 2 Samuel, 239.
Principle 9: Cross-bearing. Because God mortifies through suffering, therefore bear the cross to mortify our flesh.

In bearing the cross, Calvin wants his students to understand that all our suffering, no matter what the immediate source—man, nature or the devil—comes at the hands of God’s loving and wise providence, such that we always “have to do with him.”

We must all bear the cross, for there is no other way for the Father to kill off our flesh. While there are various reasons we suffer the cross, sometimes as discipline for sin, sometimes for righteousness’ sake, it always works to conform us to Christ. So rather than fleeing the cross, we must willingly submit to it, embracing it with patience, even joy, knowing that God is at work for our salvation.

Cross-bearing works toward our holiness by bringing us down, prostrate in humility, forcing us to see the truth about ourselves; we are weak, finite creatures who cannot stop even our own suffering, and so must give up trusting ourselves. Humbled by the true knowledge of our weakness, we are brought to repent of our prideful self-reliance, as well as any immediate sin, embracing the cross even more tightly. Cross-bearing leads us to look upward to God for mercy, as the only one who can truly alleviate our pain, because we know he only wounds in order to heal us. Cross-bearing drives forward our daily struggle for faith, providing the tests where we come to believe that God, not fate, is at work in our suffering.
Finally, cross-bearing spurs us to think of the future life, a day in which we will suffer no more. Given the reality of the world in which Calvin was sending out his pastoral candidates, it is natural that he would regularly remind them that faithful teachers, like the prophets of old, will always be attacked by the enemies of God, and in bearing the cross would grow in piety.

**Principle 10: Future Life. Because God grants us an eternal inheritance, therefore meditate on the future life with Christ.**

Calvin would generally take up the subject of meditating on the future life when the passage spoke of trials in this life, or during his closing prayers, reminding his hearers that they will eventually have a place of rest. “We shall at length enjoy thy full and perfect glory, when we shall be transformed into it in that inheritance.” Naturally it was the Word of God to which one should look for such hope and faith in the future life. He encouraged the students to use times free of trials to meditate on heaven, in order to develop the constancy needed to “to pour forth our blood in testimony to the truth.” They were to remember that, as “pilgrims in the world,” they were passing to their true home in heaven, and so like the Old Testament saints, they must aspire to “perpetual existence” rather than to “grovel upon earth,” in order to not stumble by being too attached to this world.

Meditation on the future life promotes holiness, first, as it relates to God’s mercy. Since our future life is secured in our graceful adoption as God’s children through Christ, such that Christians already “bear within them heavenly life,” we

---

310 *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 411.
311 *Commentary*, Jer. 2:11; Dan. 8:10.
313 *Commentary*, Dan. 3:19; *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 508.
314 Calvin drew attention to the future life in 57 of his 66 lectures on Daniel and 60 of his 65 lectures on Ezekiel. That Calvin retained a similar ratio of prayers on the future life in his lectures on Ezekiel, even as he himself drew near to death, may suggest that these prayers were a theological discipline more than a situational necessity.
315 *Sermons on Beatiitudes*, 20.
316 *Commentary*, Jer. 10:16.
318 *Commentary*, Dan. 3:19.
319 *Commentary*, Ezek. 9:16.
321 *Commentary*, Jer. 31:2.
322 *Commentary*, Dan. Introduction by Calvin.
323 *Sermons on Genesis 1-11*, 854.
324 *Commentary*, Jer. 32:39; Ezek. 20:14.
325 *Commentary*, Dan. 2:45.
are able “always to aspire to this eternal rest.” Second, meditation on the future life helps us with the struggle for faith, by raising our eyes from the trials in this world upward to the hope that we have. Third, it aids our self-denial, for by showing us the future glories that await us, we can more easily deny ourselves here. Fourth, it allows us patience in bearing the cross, knowing that a better life awaits us, so we may boldly endure trials here, even to martyrdom, a real possibility for his students. “But when we understand our inheritance to be in heaven…[this prepares] the sons of God for martyrdom.” Calvin’s students could not but help learn this lesson: meditation on the future life was essential for faithful living in this present world.

Principle 11: Present Life. Because God providentially guides all of life, therefore rightly use this present life to love others. Calvin would often teach and preach on the right use of the present life, with moderation as a favorite theme within the topic. Moderation was more than restraining appetites or self-discipline, it was an inner spiritual state of trusting the Lord rather than letting our fears drive us to immoderate passions. Because the emotional life is one place where faith is most perfected, believers were called first to moderate their emotions and desires by looking to the Lord for the equilibrium of faith. One is to be moderate in their use of food and drink, their desire for money, their use of material possessions, even in their zeal for the Lord. Second, as an exercise in devotion to God where obedience and faith grow, one

326 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 509.
327 Commentary, Jer. 12:15; Lam. 1:9; Dan. 12:2-3.
328 Commentary, Dan. 2:43; 3:19.
329 Sermons on Beatitudes, 66.
330 Wallace, Christian Life, 316; Commentary, Dan. 8:10.
331 Sermons on Beatitudes, 25, 28, 51; Commentary, Dan. 3:18.
332 Commentary, Dan. 3:19.
334 Wallace, Christian Life, 170. There are, for example, 12 references to moderation in just the first four chapters of the Daniel Commentary: 1:4, 8, 14; 2:46; 3:13, 19; 4:2, 13, 16, 27, 28, 35.
335 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 420.
336 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 659.
337 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 173, 252, 276, 452, 591.
338 Commentary, Jer. 31:3; Lam. 3:19.
339 Commentary, Jer. 48:37; Lam. 1:2.
340 Commentary, Ezek. 16:20; Dan. 5:2.
341 Commentary, Ezek. 18:8.
342 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 115.
343 Commentary, Jer. 17:18.
344 Wallace, Christian Life, 155; Commentary, Ezek. 15:8; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 246.
must embrace God’s vocation, never rebelling from it\(^{345}\) no matter the difficulties or results,\(^{346}\) since God protects us within our vocation.\(^{347}\) Nor should one grab for more than God provides,\(^{348}\) lest he bring correction.\(^{349}\) Third, we should be good stewards in this world so that we can love our neighbors well,\(^{350}\) both by avoiding injury to them and by serving them freely.\(^{351}\) Throughout this present life, the obedience of faith was to be rendered promptly and completely.\(^{352}\)

The proper use of the present life served to integrate two major aspects of Calvin’s theology of sanctification, humility and self-denial. Warring against pride in moderation,\(^{353}\) submitting to your God-given vocation\(^{354}\) and serving your neighbor as though as important as yourself are all exercises in applied humility.\(^{355}\) Self-denial is found in the moderation of emotions,\(^{356}\) remaining in one’s vocation rather than reaching higher,\(^{357}\) and in caring for your neighbor.\(^{358}\) The students at the Genevan Academy would have learned that the right use of this present life was instrumental in their pursuit of piety.

**Principle 12: Church. Because God sanctifies his church, therefore engage fully in the life of church.**

God sanctifies the church,\(^{359}\) outside of which there is no ordinary hope of salvation,\(^{360}\) so the students were instructed to remain within\(^{361}\) and participate fully in her life,\(^{362}\) in order to be made holy.\(^{363}\) God establishes his church,\(^{364}\) directs and protects her\(^{365}\) with his providence,\(^{366}\) such that her course is more certain than “the


\(^{346}\) *Commentary*, Ezek. 12:3; *Sermons on Election and Reprobation*, 7.

\(^{347}\) “Sermon on Matt. 4:5-7,” *CO* 46:622.

\(^{348}\) *Commentary*, Dan. 11:2.

\(^{349}\) *Sermons on Nativity*, 52.

\(^{350}\) *Commentary*, Dan. 6:17.

\(^{351}\) *Commentary*, Ezek. 18:7; Dan. 11:34; 12:3.


\(^{353}\) *Commentary*, Ezek. 16:15.

\(^{354}\) *Sermons on Nativity*, 45.

\(^{355}\) Wallace, *Christian Life*, 179.

\(^{356}\) *Commentary*, Jer. 12:1.

\(^{357}\) *Commentary*, Dan. 5:20.

\(^{358}\) *Commentary*, Jer. 22:13.

\(^{359}\) Wallace, *Christian Life*, 12.

\(^{360}\) *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 389.

\(^{361}\) *Commentary*, Jer. 31:31.


\(^{363}\) *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 377; *Commentary*, Jer. 31:14.

\(^{364}\) *Sermons on Election and Reprobation*, 8-9.

\(^{365}\) *Commentary*, Jer. 24:7.
fixed course of the sun.”367 Because she is his beloved bride,368 God will purify his church,369 redeeming her entirely from sin,370 to his own glory371 that we may repose372 in his everlasting salvation.373 It is the church which is united to the life of Christ as a vine374 and to whom he has given his Word, teachers, discipline, the sacraments and true worship.375

While exalting the value of the church, Calvin is frank about her failings and trials. Externally the world will “mock and deride” the church,376 reduce her in number through blood shed,377 exult over her calamities, such that she is small and despised.378 Internally, because she is by nature a mixture of wheat and tares, there will always be in the church “the wicked who remain with the good,”379 false professors of the faith who are disguised,380 backsliders,381 betrayers like Judas,382 wolves in the place of pastors383 and mercenaries who will fight against the progress of the true saints.384 Calvin would urge his students to prepare for the unavoidable, internal battles against the false believers.385 God uses both this internal warfare and external sufferings, disciplining first the church,386 to separate out false from true believers387 so as to make the church more pure, sparing the true remnant.388 Yet his hearers were told that they should remain in the church, bearing “in patience the betrayals,”389 preferring to be “connected to the children of God,”390 even though the

366 Commentary, Dan. 7:27.
367 Commentary, Jer. 31:35.
368 Commentary, Ezek. 6:9.
369 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 234.
370 Commentary, Jer. 31:32.
371 Commentary, Ezek. 20:9.
372 Commentary, Dan. 11:11.
373 Commentary, Jer. 23:6.
374 Commentary, Jer. 2:21; 11:17.
375 Commentary, Jer. 15:2; 25:6.
376 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 5.
377 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 73.
378 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 90.
379 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 27.
380 Commentary, Dan. 11:32.
381 Sermons on the Deity of Christ, 76.
382 Commentary, Jer. 18:18.
383 Commentary, Jer. 15:16.
384 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 87; Commentary, Jer. 23:16.
386 Commentary, Jer. 12:14.
387 Commentary, Jer. 23:3.
388 Sermons on the Deity of Christ, 80.
389 Commentary, Jer. 51:50.
Calvin taught his students that the church was important for holiness first, because the church is united to Christ whose sanctifying life flows into her as does the Father’s paternal love. Second, in the heart of the church they come under the ministry of the Word through true teachers, a blessing from God. Third, the church will offer them grace through her sacraments and discipline. Fourth, it is the church which will aid them in their struggle for faith, through all her ministries. Fifth, it is within the church that they will be called to repentance and to know the forgiveness and cleansing from God that follows. Finally, it is only within the church, taught by the Word, gathered for worship, that they will be able to render the ultimate act of piety: true biblical worship. Calvin’s students could not emerge from the Academy without a deep confidence that in order to grow in holiness, they must continue to serve the church all their life, as Calvin prayed, “May we there join intelligence with zeal in building up thy Church.”

**Principle 13: Sacraments. Because God offers grace sacramentally, therefore commune regularly with Christ through the sacraments.** Calvin will emphasize that the sacraments, rightly used, are effective means of grace, so he taught his hearers how they should be rightly understood and rightly administered. They should understand that there are only two sacraments, which

---

391 Commentary, Jer. 51:50.  
392 Commentary, Dan. 7:2; cf. Commentary, Lam. 4:2; Ezek. 11:20.  
393 Commentary, Jer. 33:16.  
394 Commentary, Dan. 7:27.  
395 Sermons on the Deity of Christ, 177.  
397 Commentary, Dan. 7:1.  
398 Commentary, Jer. 3:15.  
399 Commentary, Ezek. 20:12.  
400 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 522.  
401 Commentary, Lam. 1:20.  
402 Commentary, Jer. 3:14.  
403 Commentary, Jer. 7:22.  
404 Commentary, Lam. 1:4.  
405 Commentary, Jer. 11:13.  
406 Commentary, Dan. 11:34.  
407 Perhaps considering the sacraments were well covered in the Institutes and sermons, Calvin seldom touches on them in our commentaries, indeed, we could find only fifteen direct teachings. Commentary, Jer., Dedication, 4:4; 6:10; 9:25; 27:5; 28:10; 51:63; Ezek. 2:3; 4:1; 11:25; 16:20-21; 20:12, 20; Dan. 21:1.  
408 Sermons on the Deity of Christ, 175; Commentary, Jer. 51:63.
are a visible Word of an invisible grace, made visible in part as an accommodation to their weakness, since they need to see as well as hear of God’s grace. The sacraments are only for believers who can come with faith, or in the case of baptism, for believers and their children. The sacraments are more than a memorial or statement of faith; they are an effective means of grace, despite their weak appearance, because God does a mighty work through them to help us. They are not effective ex opere operato, however, but only because God works through them in those who have faith, such that Christ is really spiritually present. To be administered properly, the sacraments must be offered with the spoken Word, to make sense of them, without any pomp, which might distract the receiver from Christ. Most importantly they must be received with a faith which seeks to know Christ better in the sacrament. Finally, the worthy receiver must come repenting of all sin, so as not to corrupt his communion with Christ.

First, the sacraments rightly used helped advance holiness in the Lord’s Supper by uniting the worthy receiver more to Christ’s human body, whose life flows into them to strengthen their faith for the daily struggle. Second, the sacraments work to give us assurance that we are adopted children of God, whom we can claim as Father, since we are made Christ’s brothers, who are moved by this love to love and obey God. Finally, by requiring repentance of sin in preparation, the sacraments create a desire for holiness. A student at the

---

409 Commentary, Ezek. 11:25; 20:12.
411 Commentary, Jer. 6:10.
412 Commentary, Ezek. 16:21.
413 Commentary, Ezek. 20:12.
414 Commentary, Ezek. 4:1.
415 Sermons on Nativity, 12, 43.
417 Commentary, Jer. “Dedication.”
418 Commentary, Ezek. 2:3; 4:1.
419 Commentary, Jer. 28:10.
420 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 244-45; Commentary, Ezek. 20:20.
421 Sermons on the Deity of Christ, 196.
422 Wallace, Christian Life, 18.
423 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 244-45; Commentary, Jer. 27:5.
426 Sermons on the Deity of Christ, 195.
428 Commentary, Jer. 9:25.
429 Commentary, Jer. 4:4.
Academy would come to understand the vital role that rightly partaking of the sacraments would have for advancement in piety.430

**Principle 14: Church Discipline. Because God shepherds us through his leaders, therefore seek pastoral care and church discipline.**

Because sin blinds the sinner to its presence, the entire church is needed to help the believer see their sin through pastoral care and discipline and be brought to repentance. First, everyone needs correction, since preferring to consider ourselves sinless, we want to reject any reproof.431 “Who is there that can bear to be admonished and reproved?”432 The mighty,433 whether kings434 or princes435 or popes,436 need correction, and especially for the sake of the church, pastors437 must be reproved, particularly by one another.438 Second, we must accept correction, even if harsh, rather than being stiff-necked and self-justifying.439 In fact we “ought to seek”440 out this correction from others the better to be brought to repentance and grace.441 Third, all, particularly teachers, must constantly offer this correction, preached or in person,442 since everyone is always sinning and needs to be led back to God.443 “The minister of the Church then must not cease to repeat these admonitions.”444

Pastoral care advanced holiness by helping believers come to a true knowledge of their sin,445 contrasted against both God’s goodness and his judgment on sin,446 in order to want to find forgiveness.447 Once helped to see their sin, they are invited to the self-examination that leads to a deeper self-knowledge and repentance.448 Brought down by the confrontation with sin, they are bid by pastoral

---

430 Commentary, Dan. 9:21.
431 Commentary, Jer. 2:23.
432 Commentary, Jer. 8:8.
433 Commentary, Jer. 10:21.
434 Commentary, Dan. 1:1.
435 Commentary, Jer. 36:25.
436 Commentary, Jer. 22:3.
437 Commentary, Jer. 10:21.
438 Commentary, Dan. 9:2.
439 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 548.
440 Commentary, Ezek. 3:17; cf. Commentary, Jer. 36:32.
441 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 522.
442 Commentary, Ezek. 3:17.
443 Commentary, Jer. 3:15; Ezek. 3:18.
444 Commentary, Ezek. 3:18.
446 Commentary, Lam. 1:7.
447 Commentary, Lam. 2:15.
448 Commentary, Lam. 3:40.
care to look away from sin, and upward to see the love of God,⁴⁴⁹ that they might be moved toward grace.⁴⁵⁰ We see here the importance of living in open community within the church⁴⁵¹ so discipline flows from all to all. “When [we love one another] what will then happen is that instead of friends flattering one another…they will admonish one another.”⁴⁵² The students of the Academy would learn that sanctification requires that each Christian be fully subject to the critiques of the whole church.

III. Calvin Taught Sanctification in a Right Order to His Students

As we examine these fourteen principles in Calvin’s theology of sanctification, we find, first, that there is a general pattern, an order of teaching, which unsurprisingly roughly follows the Institutes, and second, that Calvin will make variations on this pattern dependent on the text and audience. Generally speaking, the true knowledge of God and self leads one to prostration and then, toward reverence in offering God all of one’s life in service.⁴⁵³ More specifically, progress in sanctification begins with knowledge of God and self (Book 1, Principle 1), which shows us both the holiness and graciousness of God, seen in contrast to our ungrateful hard-heartedness. He will then teach on the necessity of submission to the Word of God, to become convinced of God’s greatness and our need (Book 1, Principle 2). Calvin will then typically detail knowledge of human pride, rebellion and blindness (Book 2, Principle 1). Next Calvin will expound the mercy of God in Christ, showing the hope of forgiveness and purity that might be gained if we rely on God (Book 3, Principles 3 and 4). He will then follow with the call to faith and repentance (Book 3, Principles 5, 6 and 7). Next Calvin will call his hearers to the upward journey, seeking to revere God with all of life, helped on by the practical disciplines of self-denial, cross-bearing, meditation on the future life and use of this present life (Book 3, Principles 8, 9, 10 and 11). Finally comes engaging the church, receiving its sacraments and discipline (Book 4, Principles 12, 13 and 14).

⁴⁵⁰ Commentary, Ezek. 1:1.
⁴⁵¹ Sermons on Beatitudes, 50; Sermons on 2 Samuel, 144, 186.
⁴⁵² Sermons on 2 Samuel, 621.
⁴⁵³ Wallace, Christian Life, 83; Bouwsma, Sixteenth-Century Portrait, 228.
We see this pattern of teaching, for example, in his lecture on Lamentations 1:5-10. He will teach that the people “added sins to sins,” giving knowledge of self.454 Next he offers knowledge of God and man together, pointing out that the Jews did not see “the benefits which God had bestowed.” 455 He turns to the need for repentance from the sin of not appreciating God.456 There follows an explanation of the need for self-examination leading to prostration.457 Calvin then teaches that struggle for faith is helped by looking to the future life.458 He concludes by pointing out that his hearers’ hope for holiness was found in turning to God.459

One might object that this teaching reveals nothing of Calvin’s own plan but has him only following the text. Calvin himself addresses this objection by pointing out to his students that this order is, in fact, the “right way of teaching,” (vera ratio docendi), that men must be humbled before they can be shown that a “hand is to be stretched out to them.”460 Here he highlights the certain order of sanctification: “Thus our Prophet prescribes to us a certain order [certum ordinem],—that we are to examine our whole life, and that, being influenced by the fear of God, we are to return to him.”461

We find this pattern, for another example, demonstrated in the sermon on Luke 1:74-76. He begins with the knowledge of self,462 then calls his hearers to repentance while relying on God’s mercy,463 which can be trusted464 because of God’s great love in Christ. “He will always be good and gracious to us when we seek him, pleading the name of his beloved Son.”465 After warning against the uselessness of trying to become holy the Roman way, he will emphasize the upward movement of reverence in our need to struggle for holiness “all the days of our lives.”466 He instructs in the right use of this life that one cannot live as though “there were no difference between good and bad.”467 He will then go on to show the importance of

454 Commentary, Lam. 1:5.
455 Commentary, Lam. 1:7.
456 Commentary, Lam. 1:7.
457 Commentary, Lam. 1:8.
458 Commentary, Lam. 1:9.
459 Commentary, Lam. 1:9.
460 Commentary, Lam. 3:40.
461 Commentary, Lam. 3:40.
462 Sermons on Nativity, 96.
463 Sermons on Nativity, 96.
464 Sermons on Nativity, 97.
465 Sermons on Nativity, 99.
466 Sermons on Nativity, 103.
467 Sermons on Nativity, 104.
the church since God “fills all things and governs his church through the pastors.”

He closes with an exhortation to live all of our lives for Christ, because Christ came to “rule us and govern us.”

Calvin’s model of teaching was fluid and dynamic, yet while generally following this pattern, he will make variations. For example his prayers, which generally follow the certain order of sanctification, show also his variations. At the end of Ezekiel 1:16, having just made the lecture point that life is changeable, he prays about man’s fallen condition in a world “subject to so many changes,” then immediately focuses attention toward the future life, followed by inviting his hearers to struggle for faith. There follows knowledge of God and reliance upon his love to us. He finishes with a reminder of the certainty of heaven, which comes from the mercy of God in Christ. We see here how Calvin will vary on the general pattern of prostration leading to reverence by emphasizing the theme of heaven. Yet still the right order of teaching remains; the human condition is miserable (prostration), so we must look to God to deliver us to heaven (reverence). In the end we see that Calvin carefully taught the students of the Academy through his right order of instruction, all fourteen of the principles of sanctification, with great clarity and constant repetition, helping them grow in holiness into the bold yet humble pastors France required.

---

468 Sermons on Nativity, 106.
469 Sermons on Nativity, 108.
Chapter VII -- The Structures of the Genevan Academy which Enhanced Sanctification

“Sapiens et eloquens pietas.”¹

I. The Educational Context of the Genevan Academy

In Chapter VII we will define the structures of the Genevan Academy which enhanced the students’ holiness. We will argue simply that the theology of sanctification which was taught to the students was also structured for them in the processes, methods and relationships within the context of the Academy. We will show in this first section how movements in higher education during this period helped to shape the distinctive characteristics of the Academy. In the second part, we will show how each of 10 structures of the Academy were incarnations of various aspects of the fourteen principles of sanctification, serving to reinforce through experience what was taught in the classroom. In that section we will particularly investigate the correspondence to, from and about the students for evidences of the impact of these structures.

One must recognize, however, that the nature of historical research into the causes of sanctification is inherently limited by the type and quantity of historical data available after five centuries. In order to prove that these structures of the Academy were the primary instrument used in the life of any student to enhance their sanctification, we would have to be able to demonstrate 1) their level of sanctification before attending the Academy, 2) their level of sanctification after attending the Academy and then also 3) prove that the particular structure was conclusively the agent which brought about the observable progress in holiness. The historical material available will not allow this type of proof. However, while we cannot prove that the Genevan Academy was the efficient cause of any student’s sanctification, we can demonstrate that 1) these educational structures were utilized, and 2) the students after attending the Academy either recognized the helpful influence of those structures for their holiness or reflected the holiness intended in the design of those structures. Yet even here, since we have letters from only a small minority of the

¹ “Wise and eloquent piety,” Johann Sturm’s educational motto which was adopted in principle in Geneva. L. W. Spitz and B. S. Tinsley, *Johann Sturm on Education* (St. Louis, Mo.: Concordia, 1995) 28.
students, we must take the correlations between the structures of the Academy and the
students growth in holiness as suggestive of their effectiveness, rather than as
incontrovertible evidence. Of course even relatively scant evidence could easily
falsify a theory, as the proverbial appearance of one black swan negates the statement
“all swans are white.” Finding in the letters no falsification, but rather general
confirmation that these 10 structures were at work, we offer them as illustrations of
the effectiveness of the structures.

Education in the Reformation
The Genevan Academy came to fruition in the midst of an educational revolution,
which deeply affected how the students of the Academy were to be taught. During
the late Middle Ages, the old Greek method of classical education, with its Trivium (grammar, logic and rhetoric) and the following Quadrivium (music, arithmetic, geometry and astronomy), emphasized mastery of material produced by prior scholars through logical analysis. In the medieval system logic, or dialectics, which focused on the precise definitions of terms and the validity of propositions, had become a central coordinating subject, queen above all others. In theological education, this medieval approach was practiced by the polemical mastery of Lombard’s Sentences. The Trivium, and its medieval tendency toward abstract scholarship, was challenged by a new approach to education, which depended more on the humanistic skill of direct inquiry into primary sources. By 1518 Erasmus had published Ratio seu methodus compendio perveniendi ad veram theologiam, calling for a reformation of education, which set aside much of scholastic inquiry and returned to direct study of original source material, in particular the Bible. Good education, in his view, was not abstract, logical argumentation but rather good biblical exegesis. “I have sought to call back theology...to the sources and to its original simplicity...and good literature, before practically pagan, I have taught to speak of Christ.” Logic became a

2 Borgeaud, Histoire de l’Université, 14.
3 Bell, Many Mansions, 34, 85.
6 Siedlecki, “Protestant Theological Education,” 252.
7 Burnett, “Reformed Scholasticism,” 300.
supporting discipline to aid biblical interpretation, which relied more heavily on philology and rhetoric for expression. In addition to this *ad fontes* aspect of the new educational model, there developed a renewed understanding that education ought to lead to piety. For Erasmus education was essentially “implanting the seeds of piety.”

While Lutheran education focused on the pious individual, the Reformed version focused on the individual as a part of the larger society, an important distinguishing characteristic in Geneva.

This new, back-to-the-sources-for-the-sake-of-piety method, a new biblical humanism, began to spread in the Universities of Europe in the 1520s. By 1543 even foundational assumptions, such as Aristotle’s approach to logic, came under attack by the educational reformer Peter Ramus. Maturin Cordier, an early advocate of the new method, had been Calvin’s Latin professor at the Collège de la Marche and greatly influenced Calvin. “Providence so ordered it that I had, for a short time, the privilege of having you as my instructor, that I might be taught by you the true method of learning.” Johann Sturm, another early practitioner of the new educational method, was educated at the College Saint Jerome at Liège, which had been founded by the Brethren of the Common Life. The Brethren emphasized personal piety and good scholarship, and had already begun the careful systematic examination of their pastors’ doctrine and piety. Sturm’s use of the new method focused on the complete mastery of basic material (for example, the Latin grammar) and progression through logical steps to higher and higher levels of mastery (for example, Latin rhetoric), always aimed toward growth in piety. Called to establish the Strasbourg Academy in 1538, Sturm’s motto for the Academy, *sapiens et eloquens pietas*, “wise and eloquent piety,” would become influential for Geneva as well.

---

10 Ehrenpreis, “Reformed Education,” 42.
14 *Commentary*, 1 Thess., Dedication by Calvin.
Education in Geneva

During the struggle for the Reformation, the Roman Catholic College of Versonnex, which had been established in 1502, ceased to operate and was replaced in 1536 by a distinctly Reformed effort, Collège de la Rive. Under the direction first of Antoine Saunier, then in 1537 of Cordier, the Collège de la Rive offered Latin along with rudimentary Greek and Hebrew, which was taught by Calvin and Farel. However, this secondary school served only a limited function, giving “the sons of the rich local bourgeois a smattering of culture.” Calvin wanted a more systematic and pure institution, dedicated more to pastoral training and under the control of the Company of Pastors. Calvin had desired to establish an academy at least from the time of his return from Strasbourg in 1541, where he had lectured in their flourishing Academy.

But since it is possible to profit from such teaching only if in the first place there is instruction in the languages and humanities, and since also there is need to raise up seed for the future so that the church is not left desolate to our children, it will be necessary to build a college for the purpose of instructing them, with a view to preparing them both for the ministry and the civil government.

In 1550 we see Calvin’s dream for the Academy was still alive in his correspondence with Claude Baudel, who had gone to Nîmes to start a school along the lines of Sturm. It appears that a strong stimulus to action occurred in 1556 when, on a brief visit to Strasbourg, Calvin discussed educational plans with his colleagues there, saw the growth of nearly 20 years of their Academy and offered a lecture at the Academy, which was received with a standing ovation. By January 1558 the city began searching for a suitable building site, and by October formal plans for the building were drawn up. Providentially, in spring of 1559 the Lausanne Academy was torn asunder by tensions with Berne over the Lord’s Supper, and many of their faculty

25 *RCP*, 41.
26 Letter of Baduel to Calvin, June 10, 1550; *CO* 13:589.
suddenly became available, joining Beza who had departed the year before.30 On May 22, 1559 Calvin and Viret proposed to the Small Council that “it has become necessary to publish the ordinances of the college,”31 which were written by Calvin and modeled after the Lausanne by-laws.32 The new faculty was organized; Beza was Rector and taught theology, Antoine Le Chevalier was professor of Hebrew, Calvin taught theology in the form of Old Testament lectures33 and “François Béraud pour le grec, Jean Tagaut pour la philosophie.”34 Everything was approved at a May 29, 1559 meeting of the Council35 just in time for a June 5 formal inauguration of the Academy at St. Pierre.36 At the inauguration Beza gave a speech in which he outlined the purpose of the Academy, expressing the grand hopes of the founders. “You have not come here as most of the Greeks of old went to their gymnasia to watch vain wrestling matches. Instead, prepared by the knowledge of the true religion and all sciences, you can contribute to the glory of God and become the honor of your homeland and the support of your family.”37

The Genevan Academy was more than a school, it was meant to be the training center for the Reformed movement in Europe.38 While Beza had hoped to add law and medicine to the theological training offered at the Academy,39 this did not happen in Calvin’s lifetime, and the purpose of the Academy clearly remained the training of pastors,40 with religious minded civil servants as a secondary emphasis.41 The start of the Academy was the final piece of Calvin’s master plan of changing not only Geneva, but reforming the European pastorate.42

The Genevan Academy consisted of two schools, the schola privata, for the younger students, and the schola publica, for those over age 17 who were preparing for ministry or civil service.43 It is the public school with which we are concerned. The Academy was housed in its new facility in 1559 overlooking the lake, built under

30 H. Meylan, La Haute École de Lausanne, 1537-1937 (University of Lausanne, 1986) 26-27.
31 Annales, CO 21:717.
34 Annales, CO 21:716.
37 Maag, Genevan Academy, 15-16.
38 S. Cornut, L’Académie de Calvin (Geneva: H. George, 1902) 12.
39 Borgeaud, Fondateur, 32.
41 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 239.
the watchful eye of Jean Budé, primarily with money raised from private sources. The lectures were given here until the large number of students required that Calvin’s lectures be moved to the *Auditoire* in 1562. Unlike the Private School with its carefully age-segregated curriculum, the Public School had no class levels and offered no diplomas. Students were simply required to enter their names with the Rector and sign a statement of faith, and were then free to attend as many lectures as they chose. There were about 27 hours of classes offered each week: three in Hebrew, three in Greek, five each in Old and New Testament interpretation, three in theology, three in logic and five in rhetoric. The theology lectures, which in the *ad fontes* model were Bible studies, were given each Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday from 2:00-3:00 by either Calvin or Beza, who alternated weeks. The Academy’s daily schedule began at 6:00 AM in the summer and 7:00 in the winter, with the worship services of the city churches followed by lectures. Fridays the students were encouraged to attend both the Congregation and the Company. Saturdays had no lectures but were reserved for prospective pastors to preach trial sermons before members of the Company. Sundays also had no classes but were to be “used to hear sermons.” Students were to finally pass an exam from their Regent to be considered graduates, who were announced each year in St. Pierre during May.

In addition to the formal classes, the students were trained through an informal mentoring system by living and learning in close proximity to the professors of Geneva, with whom they commonly boarded. The basic training model for pastoral students, normal for Reformed training, included apprenticeships in the local churches, particularly the rural churches, where they were supervised by the

---

45 Borgeaud, *Histoire de l’Université*, 54. Or perhaps Calvin’s lectures were always given at the *Auditoire*, see chap. 6.
57 Carrington, “Calvin and Erasmus,” 138.
Since the professors during this period were typically pastors, the student would find himself interacting with his professors, who were as interested in their piety as their theology, in the classroom, at church services, in the Congregation and the Company. The students were fully integrated into the life of the city, becoming “habitants” and therefore coming under the authority of the Consistory and Councils, with an eye to their piety.

The students who attended the Public School were primarily French refugees, with others coming from places such as the Netherlands, Catalonia, Scotland and Venice. Surprisingly, only eight Genevans attended the Public School in the first twenty years. Many of the students had previously been monks or priests with some prior theological training. Nearly half of those sent out to pastoral posts came from the nobility. A majority of the early students became pastors; for example, of the 68 students who enrolled in 1559, 37 are known to have become pastors.

The Genevan Academy combined a high degree of academic rigor, requiring excellence in biblical languages, along with Latin and French, theological and rhetorical precision, with careful guidance in piety. Truly Sturm’s model had found a home, sapiens et eloquens pietas had arrived in Geneva with the Academy, a uniquely powerful tool for shaping the holiness of its students.

59 Maag, *Genevan Academy*, 118.
60 Of the ten professors in the Public School during our years of study, five were clearly pastors, Calvin, Beza, Chevalier, Baduel and Colladon. Two apparently belonged to the *Compagnie*, Scrimger and Simonius. Three apparently were not pastors but may have had some status as Doctors of the Church, the Greek Professors Bérauld and Portus, and the Arts Professor, Tagaut. See R. W. Henderson, “The Teaching Office in Reformed Tradition,” *The Genevan Reform in School and Church* (Philadelphia, Pa.: Westminster Press, 1962) 66-67.
62 CO 10:81, “Le Ordre du Collège de Genève.” There were three classifications for residents in Geneva, citoyen, who had full voting rights, bourgeois, who either bought or were granted this status and could vote in certain elections, and habitants, who were legal residents but had no voting rights. Calvin himself only obtained bourgeois status on Christmas Day, 1559. Cf. McGrath, *Life of John Calvin*, 109.
II. The Educational Structures of the Genevan Academy

Structure 1: The Academy was integrated into the city

To understand the sanctifying impact of the Genevan Academy, one must come to understand that it stood as an integral part of the entire system of the city of Geneva, with its Church, Consistory, Congregation, Company of Pastors and Council. We will explore here how each part in turn contributed to make Geneva a complex integrated system which would enhance the students’ piety.

Geneva was a city whose life was dominated by her churches. Sunday would begin with a service at 4:00 AM (5:00 in winter) for travelers and servants, followed by the principle morning service at 8:00, a noon Catechism and then a 3:00 Vespers service, in all three churches. Wednesday had a two hour prayer service which would start at 7:00 AM (8:00 in winter) and was second in importance to Sunday. The other week days would begin with a 6:00 AM worship service (7:00 in winter) at each church. This meant that over twenty worship services were offered weekly among the three parishes. Additionally, refugee churches worshipped in Italian, Spanish and English. While residents were required by law to attend only one Sunday service plus the noon catechism service for families with young children, the church had a far greater impact than an hour or two a week in Genevan life.

The spirituality of Geneva was a corporate spirituality, with baptisms, weddings, funerals and the Lord’s Supper spilling over from the four walls of the church and touching family, business and leisure. The singing of Psalms would be heard throughout the city each day. The bells of the city’s churches were constantly calling her people to worship. The bell of St. Pierre’s North Tower, known as La Clémence, carried the revealing inscription: “I praise the true God, I summon the people, I weep for the dead, I chase the plague away, I

---

69 McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 19.
70 McKee, Pastoral Piety, 135.
71 “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1561, OS 2:337.
72 McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 18-19.
73 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 217.
75 Parker, Calvin’s Thought, 140.
embellish feast days. My voice is the terror of all devils.” Indeed the voice of the church could not be ignored in Geneva. It was into this church-rich environment that the students of the Academy would step and be encouraged, obliged rather, to participate fully in worship, sacraments, singing, preaching, catechizing, visiting, disciplining and mentoring by her pastors. This could not help but enforce the students’ commitment to the church (Principle 12) and help them grow in piety.

The Consistory of Geneva included all of the pastors along with twelve lay ruling elders, who were appointed by the Small Council: six from the Council of Two Hundred, four from the Council of Sixty, and two from the Small Council. Working in subordination to the authority of the Small Council, this body of about 20 men met weekly, on Thursday mornings, for nearly half a day to consider all matters of church order and discipline in Geneva, often referring to the Small Council for physical discipline. The Consistory’s work began with informal watch over the residents in assigned districts, where elders would confront any suspected sinner and, failing repentance, bring the offender before the entire Consistory, who ordered their repentance. The Consistory increasingly turned to excommunication to help engender this repentance. While there were only four excommunications in 1551, by 1564 the number had grown to about 300.

Yet the Consistory’s true genius may have been in its function as an authoritative shepherding and counseling body concerned with “educating the unlearned, defending the weak, and mediating interpersonal conflicts.” Indeed, two-thirds of those appearing before the Consistory in this period were dismissed with reprimands and advice, such as, “he may have leisure to think better in his

78 *Sermons on the Ten Commandments*, 109, note 66.
84 Kingdon, “Calvin and the Family,” 95.
85 *Registres du Consistoire*, XIX, 13v, Mar. 5, 1562; XIX 18v, Mar. 12, 1562; XIX, 23, Mar. 24, 1562, Meeter Center transcripts.
88 Manetsch, “Pastoral Care,” 275.
89 Monter, “Consistory,” 471.
conscience.” Even when excommunication was used, it was short-term, expecting that the guilty party would repent before the next communion within a few months. The students of the Academy would live under the watchful eyes of Consistory elders in their own neighborhoods, an aid to holiness (Principle 14). At least one student, Christophe Bertrand, stood before the Consistory, accused of stealing 1000 Florins from his parents. Having experienced its benefits, the students would go on to replicate the Consistory structure. Claude Courtois wrote during his first year in the Tarentaise after leaving Geneva, “We have now created deacons and elders and formed a Consistory from them.” Philippe Birgan, later to become a lecturer in Hebrew at Cambridge, demonstrated his approval of Consistory discipline when he commended a man to Calvin with these words, “He truly submits himself through the grace of God to ecclesiastical corrections.”

The Company of Pastors, which consisted of all the pastors and assistant pastors in and around Geneva (numbering 19 in 1564), including the Academy professors, met on Friday mornings after the Congregation. The Company was responsible for nominating pastors, examinations, ordinations, oversight of pastors and missionary work. These pastors had a collegial approach to ministry, exchanging pulpits, conducting baptisms and weddings in each other’s churches and correcting one another. The Company also worked to develop the pastoral candidates of the Academy, mentoring, coaching and correcting them. To become a student at the Academy was to find oneself engaged with the entire Company,

---

90 Registres du Consistoire, XI, 3, Feb. 24, 1556, Meeter Center transcripts.  
91 Monter, “Consistory,” 476.  
92 Maag, Genevan Academy, 104.  
94 Letter of Claude Courtois to Calvin, Dec. 17, 1563; CO 20:215. The author is indebted to Dr. David Butterfield for his kind assistance in clarifying some translations of the Latin letters used in this chapter and the next.  
97 Kingdon, “Calvin and the Family,” 94.  
99 Bouwsma, Sixteenth-Century Portrait, 226.  
100 Oversight was shared with the Consistory, see Registres du Consistoire, XIX, 178v, Nov. 26, 1562, Meeter Center transcripts, where a pastor was rebuked for serving the Lord’s Supper without preaching the Word.  
103 Maag, “Education and Training,” 139.
who would deeply affect the piety of the students through close pastoral care and discipline (Principle 14).

The Congregation, an open meeting of the pastors along with lay leaders, city visitors, Council members and students, numbered about 50-60 in total attendance and occurred on Friday mornings for two hours, after the sermon and before the Company. Its primary purpose was to maintain purity and unity of doctrine by training in biblical exegesis, as a kind of in-service training. Each week one of the pastors in turn would expound a pre-assigned text, a second would comment critically on points of doctrine (commonly Calvin would open this), and then the entire group was invited to comment, correcting arguments, exposition, teaching method or “another vice that needs reproach.” Calvin wanted his students, who attended occasionally, to understand that proper biblical interpretation required the humility to be correctable and submission to communal exegesis, another lesson in church commitment and discipline (Principles 12 and 14).

As we consider the sanctifying structures of the Genevan Academy, we must not neglect the city councils. Geneva had several related Councils, beginning with the annual General Council, which consisted of all the citizens and bourgeois, who elected members to the other councils. The Council of Two Hundred handled appeals from the other councils. The Council of Sixty handled foreign affairs. Smallest, and perhaps most powerful, was the Petit Council, whose members were responsible for the daily operations of Geneva, including the morality of its citizens.

Naphy and others have explored the tensions between the City Council and the clergy of Geneva, highlighting in particular the fight over the ultimate locus of authority concerning the power to excommunicate. However, in examining the political tensions, one may lose sight of one critical point: Calvin and the pastors of Geneva counted on the state to enforce piety and faith, with physical force not available to the church, the Middle Age ideal. “Yet civil government has as its

---

105 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 125-26.
108 Institutes, 6, Calvin’s Preface to 1560 French Edition.
110 Naphy, Calvin and the Consolidation, 32-33.
111 Commentary, Dan. 4:2; Lobstein, Die Ethik Calvins, 120.
112 Institutes 4.11.16; Wendel, Origins, 65.
appointed end…to cherish and protect the outward worship of God, to defend sound doctrine of piety and the position of the church…to form our social behavior to civil righteousness…and to promote general peace and tranquility.”

While there may have been tension over precisely who would control which behaviors, both parties expected the State to exercise significant control over morality, even to enforcing confessions of faith and intimate details of life, such as controlling dancing.

Thus the city had its hand in nearly every aspect of the Academy, from hiring decisions, to salaries, to regulating student marriages, to the graduation ceremony.

The integration of Academy into the city was helpful for student sanctification. Student Charles Parrot described Geneva by saying, “Yet everything endures in unbroken tranquillity through divine goodwill–especially through the work of the magistrates.” The students would be helped to grow in the moderate use of the present life (Principle 11) under the strict moral laws of Geneva.

For example, regulations in 1560 decreed that one may not “commit any excess in food, either at weddings, banquets, feasts or otherwise, or in clothing and apparel.” As habitants the students had duties and relationships which aided their self-denial (Principle 8). The students were obliged to serve as night watchmen for the city, they worked as tutors to children of prominent families and lived as boarders in the homes of professors or city leaders, subject to their host’s schedules, each of these a mundane self-denial.

---

114 Institutes 4.20.2.
115 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 76-77.
116 Wendel, Origins, 72-73.
117 Witte, Sex, Marriage and Family, 475.
118 Annales, Sept. 25, 1561; CO 21:761. Portus is presented as the new Greek Professor.
119 Annales, Apr. 23, 1562; CO 21:778.
120 Annales, Oct. 21, 1561; CO 21:763. The Council required that students have parental consent for marriage.
121 Annales, Apr., 21, 1561; CO 21:747.
122 Letter of Charles Perrot to his brother Daniel, Feb. 25, 1564; CO 20:258-60.
123 Commentary, Jer. 32:32; Borgeaud, Histoire de l’Université, 165; Maag, Genevan Academy, 29, note 66.
125 Borgeaud, Histoire de l’Université, 171.
127 Carrington, “Calvin and Erasmus,” 138.
Geneva was more than a city; as Calvin and the other leaders had constructed it, it was designed to be a unified system working toward the piety of each habitant. The church taught and fed the people on God’s Word. The Council enforced moral discipline. The Consistory shepherded the people of the city. The Company shepherded the pastors of the city who mentored the students. The Congregation controlled the theology of the pastors, and therefore of the city. To enroll in the Academy of Geneva meant that one was involved not simply with one Genevan institution, but with the entire unified city system.

**Modern critical evaluations of Geneva**

Many question the methods and organization used in Geneva to promote piety. Where Calvin saw growing holiness, others may see oppression by Calvin, Consistory and Council. While Genevan authorities were certainly intrusive by modern standards, one must, however, guard against anachronism. When understood within the context of sixteenth-century social structures the Genevan approaches may become more reasonable.

Calvin clearly desired to replace pastors he considered to be inadequate, yet some see Calvin’s treatment of the pastor Henri de la Mare, for example, as almost a personal vendetta. Naphy recognizes, however, that the pastors from De la Mare’s time lacked “education or expertise,” showed “scandalous behavior” and were replaced with pastors who had a “high level of learning, expertise and quality.” These facts support another possible conclusion: could it not be that Calvin, as Moderator of the Company of Pastors, was properly executing his professional duty to replace incompetent pastors with more competent ones?

Calvin’s sermons could certainly be pointed. Naphy writes that Calvin, “voiced specific, personal attacks.” Yet even the most extreme examples of Calvin’s sermons, while forceful, seem to fall within the standards for effective preaching modeled by Christ. “Let it be known that even those who are pillars of the church are wanton like dogs chasing after dogs in heat.” Calvin was only twice

---

129 Eby, *Early Protestant Educators*, 235.
130 Naphy, *Calvin and the Consolidation*, 67.
131 Naphy, *Calvin and the Consolidation*, 72.
133 Naphy, *Calvin and the Consolidation*, 159. Calvin’s rhetoric may...
admonished by the Council for naming particular sins, a common practice of
Reformed preachers. Since Calvin preached over 4000 sermons, it appears he
was temperate in using this rhetorical device. When one takes Calvin’s sermons on
the whole, it becomes clear that he was not a pulpit bully, but an effective preacher,
therefore pointed in describing sin and clear in prescribing its cure, the love of God in
Christ.

The divorce of Calvin’s brother, Antoine, from his wife, Anne, has been
offered as an example of Calvin harshly “imposing his will.” The record of the
case, however, such as the witness who saw one of the accused, “hastily pulling on his
pants, after spending some time with Anne in a closed room” so strongly suggested
adultery, that the Small Council was convinced of her guilt. While even Calvin would
admit that he was at times too harsh, it is not unreasonable in this instance to suggest
that Calvin appropriately helped his brother to obtain a rightful divorce from a serial
adulteress.

The Consistory has been accused, by critics both ancient and modern, of being
heavy-handed in providing moral oversight. As one contemporary said: “Satan
would not be so harsh.” Clearly the Consistory was deeply involved in the daily
lives of those in Geneva. However, we must recognize that controlling morality was
the norm for church and state across Europe. Catholic Geneva had a Peace Council
in 1527 to redress wrongs. Strasbourg closely regulated the details of students’
lives, forbidding joking and prohibiting entry into another’s bedroom “except from an
honest reason.” While intrusive, overall the work of the Consistory was done with
fairness and equity and focused on “getting people to treat each other better.”

have been further softened by his use of humorous alliteration, a common preaching device, the pillars
of the church, pillers, he called paillars, wanton.

135 Naphy, Calvin and the Consolidation, 160.
136 Manetsch, Company of Pastors, 150.
137 R. M. Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce in Calvin’s Geneva (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University
Press, 1995) 94.
138 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 82.
139 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 180-81; R. M. Kingdon and T. A. Lambert, Reforming Geneva,
140 Registres du Consistoire, VIII, 78v, Dec. 21, 1553, Meeter Center transcripts.
141 Naphy, Calvin and the Consolidation, 108.
143 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 181-82.
Manetsch notes, “Consistory members served as helpers for the poor, advocates for
the weak, mediators for the estranged, and defenders of the exploited and abused.” 146

The Consistory is criticized for propagating hatred of Catholic doctrine. 147
While it is true that faithful Reformed pastors, in an effort to obey their understanding
of Scripture, 148 taught their congregations to hate “error,” one must remember that
during this period hatred was engendered and lives were commonly taken over
document. For example, Protestants were killed by Catholics in 1560 in Rouen for
failing to decorate their homes in honor of the feast of Corpus Christi. 149 While
modern sensibilities dictate that religious viewpoints are an inappropriate reason to
hate, we must avoid the cultural parochialism of making this an absolute standard by
which to overly condemn the Consistory.

The Geneva Council is criticized for the use of torture as a “rite of
violence.” 150 While admittedly shocking to modern Western sensibilities, torture was
only used as a final recourse in the Genevan criminal justice system. This system was
not based upon the adversarial system popular today in Great Britain and the United
States, but on the inquisition system more common to the Continent. 151 The
inquisition system, relying heavily upon the accused’s confession, utilized
increasingly close examination by experts to uncover the truth from often evasive
defendants, wherein torture became a final resort. 152 Torture, based in Roman law,
was not unique to Geneva, but was used in France and the Continent before and after
the Reformation. 153 It was, however, used with great caution in Geneva, where it was
conscientiously administered and well supervised. 154 Controlled by the Council not
the Consistory, 155 torture was reserved for those accused of serious crimes, vetted by a
legal scholar and required the later repetition of any confessions. 156 When properly
understood within context, the use of torture in Geneva, while perhaps not
commendable, should neither be held particularly condemnable.

146 Manetsch, Company of Pastors, 219.
147 Kingdon, Reforming Geneva, 121.
149 Kingdon, Reforming Geneva, 125.
151 M. Jones and P. Johnstone, History of Criminal Justice (Waltham, Mass.: Anderson
152 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 21-30.
154 Beam, “Rites of Torture,” 201.
155 Beam, “Rites of Torture,” 214.
156 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 25-30.
Geneva’s use of the death penalty for adultery has been described as “cruel and barbaric.” However, this practice, controlled by the Council not the Consistory, was based on Roman law and Scripture and occurred in France as well. Moreover, the Genevan laws provided some equality between the sexes and in practice often resulted in a life sentence being commuted to a few months. When seen in its broader historical context this suggests a degree of moderation and equity rather than extremism.

While life in Geneva was certainly more closely controlled than in the modern Western world, it was not an unfair, totalitarian existence. Rather, taken in context, Geneva was a city deeply concerned with, and carefully and realistically working toward, the moral holiness of its residents, which in turn, benefited its students.

Structure 2: The Academy was integrated with the church
The Academy was integrated with the church through the Company of Pastors, which would enhance the students’ sanctification in several ways. First, as the students daily attended sermons, they would have lived out a submission to biblical preaching (Principle 2), which would also enhance their two-fold knowledge of God and self (Principle 1). Second, attending church, thus rightly observing the Sabbath and giving God his due, was a practice of self-denial (Principle 8). Third, engaging fully in the church would promote their sanctification as God made the church holy (Principle 12). Fourth, the students’ true call to pastoral work was discerned by the Company as they observed them in trial ministries, thus encouraging their holiness through right use of the present life regarding vocation (Principle 11). Fifth, participation in the sacraments, particularly the Lord’s Supper, would promote their holiness (Principle 13).

158 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 119.
159 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 116-18.
160 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 179.
161 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 179.
162 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 117.
163 Kingdon, Adultery and Divorce, 59, 61.
166 Sermons on 2 Samuel, 391.
168 Commentary, Jer. 31:31; Institutes 4.1.4.
169 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 239; Maag, Genevan Academy, 121.
170 Sermons on Election and Reprobation, 244-45; Commentary, Ezek. 20:20.
We find good evidence that the integration of church and Academy had the desired effect in the students, creating a high commitment to serve the church and thus become more holy themselves. When Birgan writes from Vannes in 1564, his commitment to the church is clearly evident. “Everywhere do churches in our own Brittany flourish through the deepest goodwill of God and our eternal Lord Jesus Christ. But many churches are without pastors.”170 When Courtois writes Calvin from the Tarentaise in 1563, his satisfaction at the progress of the church is seen. “Know this then, reverend father, that although the people here are hard and (so to speak) stony, it nevertheless happens that through God’s favor the number grows each day.”171 Paul Dotaeus, writing in 1560 from Castelmoron, reveals his love for the church in his affectionate term “sheepfold.” “Sent on 25 September from Castelmoron, whose church (I call it my sheepfold) sends warmest greetings to you.”172 Bon Dupre reports on the progress of his church shortly after departing from Geneva, reflecting the importance placed upon the sacrament. “We are now pursuing to examine for the Supper.”173 The students lived out what Calvin had taught in the *Institutes*, the need to cling to the church to become holy.174

**Structure 3: The students were closely mentored by pastors**

The students were closely mentored by the Company, who worked to produce godly students who would “come peacefully and in all modesty and honesty to honor God for the benefit and repose of the city.”175 The pastors taught them in classroom lectures, discussed with them over meals in their homes, encouraged or corrected them in private conversations, critiqued their sermons and theological treatises, guided them in their apprenticeships in rural churches and finally examined them to judge them ready for the pastorate. We see an example of how closely the students were mentored in Calvin’s letter to the father of student François Daniel, detailing his spiritual development. He writes, “I shall make it my business to watch over him and prevent him from overstepping the limits of authority at the caprice of his own

170 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
171 Courtois to Calvin, Dec. 17, 1563.
172 Letter of Paul Dotaeus to Calvin, Oct. 20, 1560; CO 18:225.
174 *Institutes* 4.1.4.

205
will.” Beza, who had lived with his Greek professor while a student, showed this same close mentoring as he wrote Johann Wolf, assuring him that the two Zurich students in Geneva would be carefully trained in the holy life. “We shall…give to these young men all the assistance needed for their studies and for their instruction in the holy life.” The churches and pastors recommending students to the Genevan Academy expected this hands-on approach to training. “I implore you therefore to encourage him and according to your good and holy custom to watch over him.”

From the student perspective we can see the presence of the close mentoring. In the letter of Birgan, who apparently went through a spiritual upheaval during his studies in Geneva, even doubting his own salvation, we see he was counseled back to stability by Calvin. He writes, “You certainly were a help and consolation to me not only in your writings but also in conversation (which indeed has greater effect through the working of the Spirit within) to prevent me from falling into desperation, tested as I was by various afflictions of the spirit.” We can see a similar impact in the life of the student Bon Dupre from the pastoral care Calvin showed. “I have occasion to praise God every time I remember the holy exhortation that you gave me on my departure.”

The Company of Pastors would continue to offer this close pastoral oversight even after the students left the Academy, sometimes recalling their former students for failures in ministry, as was the case with de la Faverge, who did not satisfy the church to which he was assigned.

This close mentoring would encourage the holiness of the students by applying several of the principles of sanctification. First, the close supervision would provide ample opportunity to impress on the students the need for the two-fold knowledge of God and the two-fold response of prostration and reverence, with particular emphasis on humility (Principle 1). Note the lessons of humility reflected in the letter from Dupre. “I hope that the good God will so govern me by his Spirit, who is the Spirit of littleness and humility, that he will give me the grace to

178 As cited by Maag, Genevan Academy, 140.
180 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
181 Dupre to Calvin, Dec. 23, 1561.
182 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 49.
183 Letter of the Company of Pastors to Gaspard de la Faverge, Aug. 11, 1561; CO 18:605-06.
strive for his glory, for I estimate it sacrilege if I retain some opinion of myself.”

Consider as well the case of Nicolas Le More, a young student sent out, apparently too quickly, to be a pastor in France. He wrote to the Company requesting that they recall him for further study and evidences a correctable humility. “Besides, if I am not as patient as is required, I would beg you to support me in my weakness. Consider that I am still learning and still very young, and that I have great need to return to my studies.”

Second, the close mentoring would underscore the love of God for the students (Principle 3). The pastors were to evidence love and care for the students, which would assist them in apprehending God’s love, an awareness which would draw them toward God for greater holiness. Calvin, known for his warm friendships, showed a particular shepherd’s touch. “With what gentleness he comforted the afflicted and cheered those who were faint and sorrowful.” Love was shown not only in attitude, but in caring for the students’ daily needs, a proof of God’s providential love. The Academy provided for the students by offering the courses free of charge, by taking the students in as boarders or finding lodging for them, by offering scholarships for the poor and by providing them with work in the city. Beza demonstrated such material love in his close association with his students, supplying the dowry for a poor refugee girl who wanted to marry an Academy student. Daniel reveals Calvin’s love, thanking Calvin for his “goodwill and very great kind deeds towards me.” The students clearly felt this love and appreciated it. When Charles Perrot described Calvin to his brother, he used a very affectionate term typical among the students: “our good master and common

---

185 Dupre to Calvin, Dec. 23, 1561.
187 Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 114; Commentary, 2 Cor. 11:2; 1 Thess. 4:11.
188 Sermons on Nativity, 20.
190 Commentary, Preface to Isaiah by Nicolas des Gallars.
191 Sermons on Genesis 1-11, 90.
194 Letter of Calvin to Peter Martyr, May 11, 1560; CO 18:81-83.
195 Borgeaud, Histoire de l’Université, 142.
196 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 18.
197 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 17.
198 Letter of François Daniel to Calvin, Aug. 2, 1561; CO 18:588-89.
Perrot goes on to describe Beza as “our Theodore,” again with clear affection. Young Daniel was unafraid to call upon Calvin’s affection for a favor. “It seemed a good idea, most humane of men, to ask you by this letter to display in the present day the same love that you made clear to me beforehand in many ways.”

Third, close pastoral supervision would help the students practice a life of continual repentance (Principle 7). This mentoring toward repentance appears evident in the student letters. Dupre, for example, appears to have benefited from such direct calls to repentance by Calvin. “I thank you for so holy a warning, for it has taught me to walk in the greatest solicitude ever, so that to not fall in such evil, of which, I feel only too inclined.” Birgan as well admits that after an initial unwillingness to see how his constant studying had actually hurt his spiritual life, he had come to see his own sin. “Many people…said that I brought that pain upon myself through reading papers through the night….Though I thought otherwise, through the grace of God, now I do too.”

Fourth, through close pastoral supervision, the students were encouraged to turn to God for help in holiness (Principle 4). Calvin, in his direct counsel, would emphasize this need to turn from seeing one’s sin to God for help.

Fifth, in requiring the students to submit entirely to the leadership of the pastors for their typical one to three year sojourn in Geneva, there was an encouragement to self-denial (Principle 8). This would be lived out through their subjection to the Genevan statement of faith and conformity to the standards of preaching for the Company. The confession was particularly lengthy and rigorous, requiring them to submit to the doctrine and discipline of Geneva, taking on a “yoke of subjection” to all in authority over them.

Sixth, through close supervision in their apprenticeships, the students learned the importance of church discipline as an aid to sanctification (Principle 14). The

---

199 Perrot to his brother Daniel, Feb. 25, 1564.
200 Letter of François Daniel to Calvin, Apr. 6, 1561; CO 18:414-16.
201 Commentary, Lam. 2:14.
202 Dupre to Calvin, Dec. 23, 1561.
203 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
204 Commentary, Jer. 10:23.
207 Le Livre du Recteur, Vol. 1, 73.
practice of the *censura morum*, which began in the Company of Pastors, eventually spread to the deacons and even the City Council with good effect. This same close supervision, and willingness to confront sins, was practiced with the students, giving them the opportunity to experience church discipline/pastoral care first hand, just as they had been taught. The former student Lacombe recognized this value as he recommended a new student, who apparently required some work in sanctification. “I hope in God that having to remain some time [in Geneva] that God will make him to know his past faults, which are not small, all the more that he has been a papal priest….God show him grace that he goes to the place where he will be polished.”

Seventh, the students were encouraged to bear the cross (Principle 9) through the personal counsel of the pastors in one-on-one meetings. Calvin frequently advised his counselees to bear the cross. To French Christians suffering persecution he wrote, “But since it is our duty to suffer, we ought humbly to submit; as it is the will of God.” In his letter to François Daniel’s father, Calvin explained that he had instructed young Daniel to submit to the burden of legal studies, in effect, taking it as a cross. “After I had reminded him of his duty…he promised that he would submit to whatever by your orders I should prescribe.” This was a cross which Daniel, at least initially, bore. “It was my first plan when I was leaving you to devote my energies, on your encouragement, to Roman Law.”

Eighth, the close pastoral supervision and counsel would encourage the students to meditate on the future life (Principle 10). Calvin frequently reminded those under his care of the importance of looking to the future life. “Whatever difficulties we may have to encounter, the promise given us that God will…teach us to think more wisely, fixing our hearts, upon that life which is in heaven, so that the world shall seem nothing to us.” Courtois in turn praises meditation on the future life in his church members. “Certainly this church has many noble and faithful members: those who not only despise earthly goods for the name of Christ but also of their own accord promise to hand over their bodies to death.”

---

212 Olson, “Calvin as Pastor-Administrator,” 8.
214 Letter of Ennemond Lacombe to Calvin, Mar. 5, 1562; CO 19:322-23.
216 Calvin to François Daniel père, Nov. 26, 1559.
217 François Daniel to Calvin Apr. 6, 1561.
Ninth, the close pastoral supervision would be an aid to the proper use of this present life through moderation and vocational guidance (Principle 11). We may see this watchfulness for moderation in Calvin’s reflections on young François Daniel, when he notes: “here he conducts himself with modesty.” We can see that the students absorbed the lesson to remain in their vocations despite difficulties. Colliod wrote of the troubles he faced on the field in France, but concluded that he would remain fast. “They have assigned me to remain in this city, where I may be more useful to them than there where I was.” Thus we see that the close mentoring by the pastors was a leading structural contributor to the students’ growth in piety.

**Structure 4: The professors served as models of piety**

The Genevan Academy used the professors as models of holiness, in order to enhance the students’ holiness. Sturm’s educational model emphasized the necessity of teachers serving as examples. “For many may bear certain marks of distinction and teaching, but nonetheless possess faulty habits that make them unfit role models.” Calvin and Beza understood the importance of godly examples and lived as models themselves. “Whenever God exalts us, he does so that we might become examples for others.” Calvin dedicated his Ezekiel commentary to de Coligny, Beza explained, so that his example might excite others “to true piety and to other virtues.” The desire for pious pastoral models led Calvin to replace the low quality pastors of early Geneva with the outstanding examples who served as professors.

Calvin commended Chevalier as a professor, calling him “a pious brother.” Viret recommended Jacques des Bordes as a professor for his “pious affection” and zeal for pure religion.

The professors’ example would help the holiness of the students, first, by modeling the humility found in the two-fold knowledge (Principle 1), through their mutual submission to the Company and their cooperative ministry. “We cannot

220 Letter of Calvin to François Daniel père, July 25, 1559; CO 17:585-86.
221 Letter of Pierre Colliod to Calvin, Sept. 5, 1561; CO 18:677-79.
222 Spitz, Johann Sturm, 74, “Opening of Elementary Schools.”
223 Commentary, Beza’s Dedication to Ezek.
224 Sermons on Micah, 12.
225 Commentary, Beza’s Dedication to Ezek.
228 Borgeaud, Histoire de l’Université, 75; CO 19:379.
229 McKee, “Calvin and His Colleagues,” 13, 40.
otherwise discharge our duty to God and his Church unless we [ministers] mutually extend our hands to each other." Second, the professors’ model of holiness would naturally stimulate the students to desire such holiness themselves (Principle 5). Daneau highlights the importance of the professors as models, describing them as “men of greatest merit, and highest renown.” We can hear the impact of these models in Perrot’s letter to his brother. “And indeed, both the continuous hearing of the Word of God, and the singular public example of this city, keep us in a wonderful way.”

Third, the professors served as models of cross-bearing (Principle 9), which would lead the students to bear their crosses and thus grow in holiness. The professors bore daily burdens in their extraordinary schedules, since most of them were also full-time pastors. With a day starting at 6:00 AM, preaching during the week and on Sundays, Consistory meetings for half the day Thursdays, Congregation and Company on Fridays, and hearing and critiquing students’ sermons on Saturdays, there was scarce leisure in their typical week. Calvin recognized this burden in a letter he wrote to Mercer in an effort to recruit him, after an unsuccessful effort two years prior. “It was certainly a laborious and modest situation to which I called you.” Beyond the daily burden, we find examples of cross-bearing among the professors, beginning with those who had been exiled from the Academy of Lausanne. Many of the professors suffered from serious health problems, as Calvin noted, “Diseases have been raging among our townsmen since your departure, two of them are dead, Tagaut and Gaspar; in fine that most excellent man Macar to the great sorrow of all has been taken from us….Baduel drags on as well as he can. Bernard and Chevalier have got rid of their fever.” The ill health of Calvin of course is famous, but he labored under a burden noticed by the students. “[Calvin] can scarcely manage to take his turn regularly because of illness, especially

---

230 Commentary, Ezek. 11:3.
231 Address of Lambert Daneau to the Council of Geneva; Borgeaud, Histoire de l’Université, 52.
232 Perrot to his brother Daniel, Feb. 25, 1564.
234 Parker, Calvin’s Thought, 139.
236 Le Livre du Recteur, Vol. 1, 73.
in the winter, in the summer he is a little better.”241 The pastors also suffered from low and often irregular remuneration, Beza even at times teaching gratis.242

Fourth, the students would learn about faithfulness in pastoral vocation (Principle 11) from their professors’ lives. The students noticed their steadiness. “Theodore [Beza] bears almost the entire burden of the school, a man whose obvious hardiness is in evidence from the fact that, where there is a large crop of listeners, the strength of the ox should necessarily appear.”243 Dotaeus noticed that same faithfulness in Calvin. “Your…diligence to God by virtue of which you came to church every day, so far as you were able.”244 Courtois replicated the perseverance he saw modeled ministering to crowds, even while “embroiled in danger.”245 The example set by the pastors and professors of Geneva served to enhance the piety of the students.

**Structure 5: The Academy maintained a reputation for piety**

The Genevan Academy gained a reputation for piety, which served to enhance the students’ holiness. The Colloquy of Aulnis recognized this reputation. “Your holy zeal and pious devotion…are well known to us, shown especially in that from your hand, as from a holy seminary of piety have come…people who are well-trained and ready.”246 Aware of this reputation, those who wrote recommending candidates often mentioned their piety. “We have good testimony of his piety and zeal.”247 Students were inspired by Geneva’s reputation, as if by a “new and invisible spirit” to study there.248 This reputation for piety would serve as both a filter, screening out those who wished to cling to their sins, and a magnet, attracting those who wanted holiness, thus increasing the desire for holiness of those matriculating (Principle 5).

The desire to maintain the Academy’s reputation for holiness would lead the professors to discipline the students carefully (Principle 14). Geneva’s reputation was important to its success, as a Genevan magistrate noted to the Small Council while he traveled to raise money for the city. “The renown that Geneva has acquired for the

---

241 Perrot to his brother Daniel, Feb. 25, 1564.
243 Perrot to his brother Daniel, Feb. 25, 1564.
244 Dotaeus to Calvin, Oct. 20, 1560.
245 Courtois to Calvin, Dec. 17, 1563.
247 Bise to the Ministers of Geneva, Sept. 15, 1561. For another example see, *CO* 19:399-400.
good order and discipline that prevails there is not small….Therefore it is the good discipline that has occasioned fathers and parents to send their children here.”

The leaders of the Academy would be careful to guard its reputation by ensuring good discipline, and thus piety, among their students, the export of whom was so central to the city’s position in the world.

Structure 6: The Academy required a high standard of personal piety

The students were held to a very high standard for personal holiness, which would increase their piety. Everyone in the city was to be an example of piety to the world in every minute detail of life. “People today marvel at us, and say that the city of Geneva not only possesses the Gospel, but professes it….Our lives ought so to become shining examples.” The students’ holiness was particularly charged to the Rector, who should “diligently inquire of their life and knowledge.” Pastors, and therefore pastoral candidates, were held to the higher standards outlined in the Ecclesiastical Ordinances. The “intolerable” sins for pastors included: “heresy, schism, rebellion against ecclesiastical order, blasphemy…simony…leaving one’s church without lawful leave…lewdness…usury.” Those lesser crimes, which merited “direct fraternal admonitions,” included: “injurious words…avarice…undisciplined anger, quarrels and contentions.” Sinful pastors were regularly disciplined in Geneva, which would also serve as a sanctifying warning to the students. Witness again the concern, not only for outward behavior but internal motivation, as Calvin shepherds young François Daniel. “You judge wisely that the disposition of the young man requires the rein to prevent it from being carried away hither and thither by its natural facility.”

This high standard of personal holiness would enhance the students’ piety, first, by giving them knowledge of a standard by which to measure their own conduct and therein come to a true knowledge of their sin (Principle 1). Colliod understood...

---

251 For example, May 15, 1561, the Consistory forbade playing quits the day of the Lord’s Supper; CO 21:749.
252 Sermons on Micah, 12.
254 Kingdom, Wars of Religion, 27.
255 Reid, Treatises, 60-61, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
256 Reid, Treatises, 61, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
257 Reid, Treatises, 61, “Ecclesiastical Ordinances,” 1541.
258 Naphy, Calvin and the Consolidation, 70.
from the Genevan pastoral model that it was a pastoral failing to leave a flock without a shepherd, so he appealed for a replacement before he had to leave, “so that if I was forced to leave them they should not remain devoid, this may return great damage to this church.” Birgan recognized that his peering into the mysteries of election was a yielding to temptation by Satan since he desired “to enter into the eternal plan of God with Satan as my leader and to penetrate it with blind impetus.”

Second, having learned from the high standard where they have failed, they would be encouraged to rely on God to meet that standard (Principle 4). The students demonstrated this desire to rely on God in their persistent requests for prayer. “We are forced to ask for your help so that by receiving from the Lord the richest fruits of your prayers we can drag the devil, the earth and death with our Christ into triumph.” Birgan showed an awareness of his need to rely on God for holiness. “Therefore Satan was defeated finally at that time and always thereafter through God’s will.”

Third, the high standard of holiness had the effect of increasing the students’ desire for holiness (Principle 5). This occurred in part because the school required growth toward the Genevan standard of holiness in order to graduate. Dotaeus evidences this desire for holiness as he writes about the Satanic attack on the pastors in his region, knowing he must rise on grace superior to them. “But also the devil, the implacable enemy of peace and harmony, never ceased to attack the…pastors….But by the grace of God it happened that, the more serious the insults were up to this point, the more superior in strength we were.” The high standard of personal holiness assisted the students in their growth in piety as new pastors.

**Structure 7: The Academy held a high standard for biblical fidelity**

The Academy began with a high standard of biblical knowledge and theological purity, which it maintained for many years. To help assure this high standard, the students were required to sign an extensive statement of faith, to master the biblical

---

259 Colliod to Calvin, Sept. 5, 1561.
260 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
261 Dotaeus to Calvin, Oct. 20, 1560.
262 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
264 Dotaeus to Calvin, Oct. 20, 1560.
266 Maag, Geneva Academy, 16.
languages, to preach using those languages, following Calvin’s *lectio continua* style, and to pass a theological exam for graduation. Most of the weekly lectures (19 of 27) and most of the professors (4 out of 5) were devoted to maintaining this purity by work in the biblical text and languages. While the Academy may not have been seen as a highly academic environment compared to some of the great universities of the day, it was nevertheless considered a source of pure learning, as Lambert Daneau notes.

In 1560 I arrived at your Academy, heart full of enthusiasm, not because it was next to our France, for there were others near, but because it offered me the purest source of that heavenly doctrine…. So many world lights, so many men of greatest merit and highest renown, in all the branches of learning were in this city, it appeared to me, what seemed to be one of the richest intellectual markets in the world.

The high standard of biblical knowledge and doctrinal purity worked simultaneously in two ways to enhance the holiness of the students. In requiring them to submit to biblical teaching (Principle 2), the students were forced to deny themselves (Principle 8). The core of self-denial is giving up our will and substituting God’s will as revealed in his Word. The students were constantly required to submit their will to the Word. This submission began with signing the statement of faith. “I confess that the rule of right living and the instruction of faith are so contained in the Holy Scripture, even in all perfection, such that nothing can be lawfully added or subtracted.” The submission to the Word continued in their daily studies, their preaching, their closely watched monthly theological papers and their carefully guarded lives. Birgan reflects this submission to Scripture, telling Calvin that it was his teaching on Romans which had helped him to escape the trap of the devil. “In this whirlpool of trial I was delighted by your commentaries on the meaning of the seventh chapter of the Epistle to the Romans.” This subjection to the Word of God

270 Maag, *Genevan Academy*, 111.
272 Commentary, Jer. 31:33.
275 Le Livre du Recteur, Vol. 1, 73.
278 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
was an enforced self-denial in yielding their thoughts, beliefs and actions totally to
God’s Word, which had the effect of increasing holiness.

**Structure 8: The professors used a hortatory teaching style**

Rather than simply presenting information, the teaching under which the students sat
was persistently sermonic in nature, applying the biblical truths to the hearers and
exhorting them toward repentance. Calvin’s sermons were calls to believe and repent,
which ended with prayers of repentance. “Now let us cast ourselves down before the
majesty of our good God, conscious of our faults.” Calvin would typically call his
students to repent after his lectures as well. “Grant, also, that we may beg pardon of
thee, and resolve upon a true repentance.” The worship services themselves
required a response of repentance, since the Genevan Psalter tended toward songs of
penitence. “For well aware am I of my great shame; these evil deeds upon my
heart are weighing. Thus have I erred and now deserve your blame, since your
commands I have not been obeying.” These Psalms were joined with the
confession of sin. “Lord God…we confess and acknowledge…that we are poor
sinners…[who] ceaselessly transgress your holy commandments.” Both the
Wednesday prayer meeting and the quarterly celebration of the Lord’s Supper
emphasized this call to repentance.

Additionally, in most lectures Calvin sought to apply the text directly to his
hearers that they might grasp “what Christians should believe, what they should hope
for and how they should live.” In his lectures he regularly reminded the students
that they must obey, exhorting them with the phrase “let us learn” (discamus). Let
us learn to appreciate the blessings of God, let us learn to flee to God, let us learn
that God punishes ingratitude, let us learn to examine ourselves. The Bible is a
word which must be taken to heart and acted upon, first with repentance.

---

279 *Sermons on Nativity*, 166.
282 D. T. Koyzis, ed., *The 1562 Genevan Psalter*, Genevan Psalter web site,
“Exegetical Understanding,” 207.
286 For example, we found 89 occurrences in the *Commentary* on Jeremiah.
287 *Commentary*, Lam. 1:7.
288 *Commentary*, Lam. 3:20.
289 *Commentary*, Ezek. 7:26.
The persistent hortatory style of communicating the Scriptures, in sermon, prayer, praise, confession, sacrament and lecture, would confront the students with sin and call them to repentance, which would lead them toward holiness (Principle 7). Dupre understood that he must repent. “I do not want to excuse myself all the time, the Lord, by his grace, has made me daily to ask that he will grant me humility and will remove all arrogance from my heart.”

Dotaeus understood that his teaching of the Word was to be more than just information, but must actually feed the flock. “When we had been waited for by the hungry sheep for a long time…we offered heavenly food to them.” The hortatory seems to have found its mark.

**Structure 9: The professors closely critiqued students’ preaching and theology**

To help the students grow in holiness through a right understanding and application of Scripture, the Company carefully critiqued the students’ weekly practice preaching sessions and monthly theological papers. The Saturday sermons were critiqued by the presiding member of the Company and then any others present, provided this was done “modestly and in fear of the Lord.” The theological papers, which must contain no “curiosities, sophistries, or…false doctrines,” were presented in a forum, followed with public critique by the pastors and fellow students. The presiding pastor was expected to resolve on the spot, “by the Word of God,” any theological disputes which arose.

The students were also invited to watch the Congregations, where they would see their professors receive critical feedback from other pastors. Apparently aware that such sharpening was available through the critical feedback of the Academy, churches would write asking that their candidates receive such help.

---

291 *Commentary*, Ezek. 7:26.
292 *Commentary*, Lam. 2:14.
293 Dupre to Calvin, Dec. 23, 1561.
294 Dotaeus to Calvin, Oct. 20, 1560.
297 Maag, “Preaching Practice,” 137.
299 Letter from the Church of Annonay to Calvin; *CO* 19:399-400.
This critical feedback would advance the students’ holiness, first, by helping them come into submission to the preaching of the Word (Principle 2), requiring them to humbly submit to the plain meaning of Scripture, banishing all “ sophistry, impudent curiosity and audacity to corrupt the Word.” The students evidenced this submission to Scripture. Perrot shows this in describing his studies. “I have embarked seriously upon Hebrew, and if the Lord is willing, will persevere in it with great pleasure. I am working at Theology, both in the School and on my own. Our good master and common father [Calvin] is giving us lessons on the Book of Ezekiel.” Birgan had been distressed, because he feared that he had peered into election contrary to God’s Word and heard Satan accusing him. “You, not content with the rule of sacred Scripture, sinned against the Holy Spirit.” When Dupre wrote, asking Calvin to send additional pastoral help, his chief criterion was that they send someone who had “great affection for the Word.” The students apparently had learned, in part from the critical feedback given to them, the importance of conforming all their lives to the Word of God.

Second, the critical feedback would have the effect of giving the students a true knowledge of their weakness and thus humbling them (Principle 1). Calvin, aware that preachers are prone to self-aggrandizement, structured a system in which all preachers would be regularly critiqued by others, sounding out errors, thus proving their fallibility and their continued need for the humility to rely only on the power of the Word, rather than native abilities. It was perhaps from this practice of critical feedback that Le More found it so easy to write to the Company of his failures as a preacher. “I recognize a vice in me that I speak too quickly, and because I am in a place where they understand French with difficulty, they do not profit much [from my sermons].” Dupre demonstrated a similar humility in response to a reprimand from Calvin. “For knowing how I am easily in such vice this will teach me to control myself in fear.”

The critical feedback given to the students advanced their holiness, as it lead them to submit themselves more fully to Scripture and to realize that they were imperfect pastors, always in need of correction.

301 Perrot to his brother Daniel, Feb. 25, 1564.
302 Birgan to Calvin, Apr. 2, 1564.
303 Dupre to Calvin, Dec. 23, 1561.
305 Dupre to Calvin, Dec. 23, 1561.
Structure 10: The students faced dangers in France

While the dangerous situation in France was not properly a structure of the Academy, when one considers Calvin’s theology of sanctification, it becomes apparent that those very dangers were a contributor to the students’ growth in holiness. Although the Registers of the Company of Pastors lists 88 pastors sent to France during 1555-62, Kingdon surmises that this was a low count, and in reality as many as 151 pastors went out in 1561 alone. This flood of Protestant pastors from Geneva did not go unnoticed. King Charles IX wrote to the senate of Geneva in January of 1561, accusing the Genevan-trained pastors of “open sedition,” and asking the senate to recall them and send no more. This prompted the less than candid reply from the senate, penned by Calvin on their behalf, explaining that “it will be found that no one, with our knowledge and permission, has ever gone from here to preach.” Even as he wrote, the Company was besieged by requests for pastors, which they scrambled to meet. “From all quarters demands for ministers are addressed to us, and though we have no more to send, yet such is the importunity of those who ask, that we must choose certain ministers from the lower ranks of the people.” As the Huguenot Church grew to its height in 1562, with an estimated three million members in 2150 churches, persecution intensified, leading to the slaughter of a Calvinist congregation in Vassy by the Guise forces in March of 1562 and the start of the Wars of Religion. Of the 88 named pastors sent to France during 1555-62, 10 would eventually be killed, and another six would die untimely deaths.

First, for those students studying in the relative safety of Geneva, most of whom were from France and planning to return there, news of persecutions would have the uniquely sanctifying effect of causing them to struggle for more faith (Principle 6). Dotaeus reported the typical dangers of travel in France. “On 20 September we set out from here on the course of our journey—not indeed without

306 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 2, 79.
308 Letter of the Genevan Senate to the King of France, Jan. 28, 1561; CSW, Vol.7, 168; CO 18:343-45. This troubling reply might be explained by two factors: first, the city had truthfully not sent any seditious pastors to France, the essential charge against them; second, Calvin and the Company had consistently counseled against seditious activity on the part of their pastors. Hence they sincerely declared their innocence even among themselves: “But regarding the disturbances which happened in France, they are not at all guilty there.” (CO 21:742, Annales, Jan. 28, 1561)
310 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 79.
311 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 106.
312 Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 144.
313 In 1563 79 out of the 94 matriculating students were from France; Maag, Genevan Academy, 30.
danger but at least without any harm, and through the grace of God we travelled and reached Nerac on 7 October safe and unharmed.”314 Courtois arrived at his new assignment, Moutier, in 1564, only to discover a number of plots underway to harm the church. “Meanwhile, however, I see a small gathering of plots that has scarcely been stable up to this point, for, as I learned from one of the faithful, the enemy are working at new plots.”315 Lacombe found trouble as well. “The churches of Dauphine and of Lyonnaise are assembled here to celebrate the synod, but the governor of the country blocks us and does not provide that we may assemble.”316

Anticipating being sent into battle, these young recruits would endure an intense struggle for faith. Calvin, who was teaching during this time on the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel and Ezekiel, all of whom faced opposition that produced real struggles of faith, put these words in the mouth of Jeremiah, “There is then no reason for you to think that I speak so boldly, because I feel nothing human; but I have done so after a hard struggle, after all those things came into my mind, which are calculated to weaken the courage of my heart; yet God stretched forth his hand to me.”317 It was God who had given Jeremiah faith after the struggle to preach in the midst of his persecution and danger, and God who would give the students faith to face persecution in France. “Although a hundred deaths may threaten us, they must not weaken our faith.”318

Second, the violence in France, and the likelihood of persecution, would serve as an aid to holiness by encouraging the students to think on the future life (Principle 10). While the dangers in France were not part of the structure of the Academy, Calvin apparently made free use of them. Consider this mention of the danger of “urgent perils” and the future life in this typical closing prayer: “Grant, Almighty God, since our life is only for a moment...that we may learn to cast all our care upon thee, and so to depend upon thee, as not to doubt thee as our deliverer from all urgent perils....May the hope of eternal life be so fixed in our hearts, that we may willingly leave this world.”319 This was a lesson not lost on the students, as we have seen in their readiness to pastor even in the face of danger. Facing opposition to his ministry, Colliod persevered because “the Lord has shown to my eye that he wants to do grace

314 Dotaeus to Calvin, Oct. 20, 1560.
315 Courtois to Calvin, Jan. 2, 1564.
316 Lacombe to Calvin, Mar. 5, 1562.
317 Commentary, Jer. 20:9.
318 Commentary, Dan. 3:7.
319 Commentary, Dan. 3:25.
and mercy to this people.” Practically speaking, the persecution awaiting the pastoral students when they left Geneva would be one of the most effective possible inducements to meditate on the future life, which in turn, would advance their holiness.

**Conclusion**

The Genevan Academy not only offered teaching that was calculated by Calvin to advance the students’ holiness, but its educational structures, modeled after the new methods of education, which focused on mastery of the biblical texts and languages while aiming at piety, were thoughtfully arranged so as to reinforce the basic biblical principles of sanctification working toward the rapid advance of piety. Though not proven conclusively, the evidence does suggest that this combination was effective, producing *sapiens et eloquens pietas*. Certainly this was the conclusion drawn by some of those who employed the Academy to shape their pastors. “We suggested to him to go to your Academy, as it is the best place we know of to be healthily and solidly taught about the mysteries of divine knowledge and to be directed always, either by good teachings or by pious examples, toward holiness of life.”

---

320 Colliod to Calvin, Sept. 5, 1561.
Chapter VIII -- Comparing the Academies of Lausanne and Strasbourg with Geneva

“Das ym selbs niemant, sonder anderen leben soll.”

Introduction

In this chapter we will compare the two Academies of Lausanne and Strasbourg with the Genevan Academy, in order to discover both the similarities and differences among them. We will advance the theory that while Geneva had similarities with the other Academies, it had certain unique characteristics, which conformed more closely to what Calvin considered to be a good environment for enhancing holiness. To compare the three Academies, we will examine two aspects: their educational structures and their teaching regarding sanctification. To compare the educational structures, we will examine the foundational documents of each Academy. To compare the teaching, we will examine some representative teaching of Pierre Viret and Martin Bucer, the principle professors at Lausanne and Strasbourg respectively. In comparing both the structures and teaching of these other Academies in such a limited space, we do not pretend to take nearly as in depth a view as we have with either Calvin’s teachings or the inner-workings of the Genevan Academy. However, even a summary comparison of some key structures and teachings could prove illuminating. Before we compare the Academies, however, a word of introduction to the schools will be helpful.

Lausanne

The Lausanne Academy, under the watchful eye of Bern, began meeting in the Cathedral and nearby buildings in January 1537, with Viret and Farel serving as the initial professors. It was not until 1547, however, that its governing document, Leges Scholae Lausannensis, was written. The school grew to 700 students in 1558, while

1 “That no one should live for himself but for others,” the title of Martin Bucer’s tract on Christian love.
2 A. Gindroz, Histoire de l’instruction publique dans le Pays de Vaud (Lausanne: Georges Bridel, 1853) 32.
4 M. Campiche, La Réforme en Pays de Vaud, 1528-1619 (Lausanne: L’Aire, 1985) 195-96. For the Latin text of the Leges see: J. Le Coultre, Maturin Cordier et les origines de la pédagogie de
the city had only 5000 inhabitants. The Academy attracted outstanding professors, including the young Theodore Beza and Maturin Cordier, Calvin’s old Latin professor. Sadly, the Academy would flounder in 1559 over a long simmering dispute with Bern concerning church discipline. Viret and the other pastors, refusing to administer the Lord’s Supper at Christmas 1558, were summarily dismissed, many of them finding their way to the Genevan Academy. Beza, having seen the handwriting on the wall, had already left for Geneva in summer of 1558.

**Strasbourg**

Strasbourg, a city of 20,000 people, had welcomed Bucer’s return in 1523, shortly after the start of the Reformation there. Strasbourg had inconsistent success with educational reform before its Academy was begun. Informal classes for reading and writing occurred in 1480. Two Latin schools were founded in 1524. Bucer expanded his lectures begun in 1523 to include Greek and Hebrew instruction, primarily for adults. In 1531, after urging by Bucer, schools were established in each of the city’s nine parishes. In 1534 a school for younger students was opened, the *Collegium Praedicatorum*, which was later absorbed by the Academy. By 1535 there were 15 separate schools in the city.
In 1536 the town council invited Johann Sturm to lay the groundwork for a new Academy. He would complete two foundational documents in 1538: the brief and philosophical, *Advice on What Organization to Give the Gymnasium in Strasbourg*, and the longer more detailed, *The Correct Opening of Elementary Schools of Letters*. These two works, supplemented by the *Leges et Statuta den Schulern*, served as the Academy’s initial governing documents. Later, in 1545, Bucer created an important addendum to the Statutes. Together these four documents will comprise the material for examining the structures of the Strasbourg Academy.

Sturm, hired as the Rector on June 24, 1538, by the *Scholarchen*, the city councilmen who comprised the board of education, consolidated the educational system of Strasbourg in one central location. The new school, which opened formally on December 29, 1538, had two parts: a preparatory school, which came to be known as the *Gymnasium*, and a public school for the study of Law, Arts and Theology, for students aged 16-21. The combined institutions were generally referred to as the *Hochschule*.

**Lausanne and Genevan Academies were seminaries, Strasbourg a university**

When one examines the foundational purposes of our three Academies, one may see that while each was designed to inculcate a Reformed view of Scripture and to raise educational standards, both Lausanne and Geneva were primarily conceived as training schools for pastors, while Strasbourg was designed to be a city university. We have already seen the Genevan Academy’s aim to educate clergy.

---

27 Kohls, *Die Schule*, 89.
29 Kohls, *Die Schule*, 90.
his desire for universal literacy, was principally concerned for the education of clergy; hence he served as the sole professor of theology for the first nine years of the Lausanne Academy. We find this in the opening paragraphs of the *Leges*: “The very first elements of religion should be taught daily in the vernacular language in the afternoon hours.” Baird, Gindroz, Le Coultre, Junod and Martin all concur, the Lausanne Academy was “less an institution for science and literature” but “was founded to train faithful ministers with evangelistic zeal,” particularly pastors for the French world.

Defining the primary aim of the Strasbourg Academy is less simple. There are some historians, such as Lienhard and Amos, who would say that it too aimed primarily at training pastors. This, coupled with Bucer’s life-long concern to develop pastors, might lead one to assume the *Hochschule* shared this purpose. Kohls, however, reveals Bucer’s desire to see a true university begun in Strasbourg, evident in the foundational documents, which call for broader classical education and not ministerial preparation in particular.

The schedules of the three Academies reflect this different emphasis. Geneva offered all its students 19 hours of Bible, biblical languages and theology out of 27 hours of courses, and Lausanne offered 20 hours out of 30. Sturm divided the *Hochschule* into Medicine, Law and Theology and expected the students to attend courses from all three disciplines. Those in Medicine and Law received little Bible training, and even pastoral students would have to subtract from their 20 hours of classes to attend lectures in other disciplines.

---

34 Meylan, *La Haute École de Lausanne*, 17.
44 Kohls, *Die Schule*, 79-80, 91.
The curriculum for the upper school reflects Sturm’s emphasis on a university education. “The poets who are arduous and hard to understand should be examined after Vergil and Homer are well understood.” After he describes the classical authors in great detail, Sturm then offers the theology students this: “Thus…the theologian, shall not be ignorant of the knowledge of distinctions [logic] and of speaking [rhetoric], and should be acquainted with,” history and law. Sturm appears to be driven by the conviction that classical education, even more than Scripture, would produce a godly man. “There is nothing in the nature of the universe that cultivates morality as does the study of letters.” Sturm, “restrained in his method of communicating the Christian Gospel,” appears to have been shaped more by Aristotle than Augustine.

I. A Comparison of the Structures

Structure 1: The Academy integrated into the city

All three of our Academies had a degree of integration into the life of the city. For example, in all three towns the city councils exercised some control over the Academies. Strasbourg, with its complex structure of six councils, was ruled by the Ratsherren, which created a special committee of three of its members in 1526, the Scholarchen, to direct all the city’s educational affairs. Although Bucer would have preferred church control, the Academy maintained an independent constitution. The Bernese City Council initially created the Lausanne Academy and continued to exercise control, purchasing its buildings, appointing Viret and Farel and requiring the students to vow loyalty to the “magnificent state of Bern.” Bern did

51 Chrisman, Strasbourg, 272.
52 Aristotle, Politics, Book VII, Section 1, 1337, “The neglect of education does harm to the constitution.”
53 Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 47.
55 Chrisman, Strasbourg, 263-65.
56 Kohls, Die Schule, 82.
57 Kohls, Die Schule, 95-98.
58 Junod, L’Académie de Lausanne, 12.
59 Gindroz, Histoire de l’instruction, 32.
60 Campiche, Pays de Vaud, 195-96.
allow the Lausanne council to select the president of the Academy. While the Genevan Academy was technically under the overall direction of the City Council, it was really the Company of Pastors who ran the school, selecting the rector and teachers, with the Council ratifying their decisions. The Genevan Academy, therefore, had a greater emphasis on the training of pastors and the purity of doctrine and discipline, sources of frustration for the pastors of Lausanne and Strasbourg.

In all three cities, the city councils watched over the morals and religious life of the city. Bucer fully expected the state to “propagate the Kingdom of Christ also by the power of the sword,” to punish unbelievers or to help recover lost sheep. The Kirchenpfleger, or church caretakers, similar to elders in Geneva, watched directly over the morals of the city. Its 21 members, appointed for life from various city councils, were assigned in teams of three to the seven parishes of the city and watched even over the pastors. Both the City Council and the Kirchenpfleger wished to retain final control over the spiritual discipline and theology of the city, such that Bucer would fail repeatedly to win the pastoral right to exercise church discipline, particularly to fence the table. Bucer even attempted to institute voluntary discipline in “Christian Fellowships” during 1547, but the City Council ordered him to cease.

The Lords of Bern, who controlled Lausanne from 1536, asserted moral authority over the city, generating ordinances and catechisms and requiring pastoral visitations. From 1538 through 1558 Viret fought with Bern, particularly

---

64 Pauck, *Bucer,* *De Regno Christi,* 272.
71 Greschat, “Church and Civil Community,” 18.
74 Bruening, *Calvinism’s First Battleground,* 160.
75 Meylan, *La Haute École de Lausanne,* 26-27.
demanding the right to excommunicate the openly sinful,\textsuperscript{76} but Bern consistently refused.\textsuperscript{77} In 1558 Viret submitted a formal request to Bern for the creation of a Geneva-like Consistory, enumerating “the proper duty of the ministers and elders over their flocks.”\textsuperscript{78} The Bernese did not care to be lectured by Lausanne and flatly rejected this request.\textsuperscript{79} In response Viret refused to serve communion on Christmas of 1558. The Bernese had had enough and immediately dismissed both Viret and his cohorts.\textsuperscript{80}

What Lausanne and Strasbourg lacked, Geneva supplied fully, a City Council which worked in harmony with the pastors to supervise the morals of the city. By waiting until 1559 to found the Academy, Calvin’s battles had been fought and won, so that the integration of Academy with city and Consistory was nearly seamless, essential to creating Calvin’s ideal environment for enhancing holiness and key to Calvin’s genius.\textsuperscript{81}

**Structure 2: The Academy integrated with the church**

Each of our cities had some integration of Academy and church. In Strasbourg it was not until Bucer’s additions to the school rules (1545) that any real integration with the church was mandated, Sturm having neglected this nearly entirely. Professors vowed to be “faithful to the School and to the church” and were to regularly attend church services.\textsuperscript{82} The Professors of Theology were to urge the students “to work God-fearingly in the community of the church.”\textsuperscript{83} Yet full integration of the church and Academy was hindered by the continuous tensions between the pastors and the City Council and by Bucer’s own desire to keep the Hochschule separate from the state.\textsuperscript{84} In Strasbourg the church appears to be more of an appendage to the Academy, an afterthought to Sturm’s magnificent classical education.

\textsuperscript{76} Bruening, *Calvinism’s First Battleground*, 164-68.
\textsuperscript{78} M. W. Bruening, “‘La nouvelle réformation de Lausanne’: The Proposal by the Ministers of Lausanne on Ecclesiastical Discipline (1558),” *Bibliothèque d’Humanisme et Renaissance* 68 (2006) 33.
\textsuperscript{79} Campiche, *Pays de Vaud*, 2.
\textsuperscript{81} Eby, *Early Protestant Educators*, 235.
\textsuperscript{84} Kohls, *Die Schule*, 95-97.
Lausanne integrated the church and Academy more, requiring that the Rector of the school be chosen from among the city ministers and professors. Viret, a pastor, served as Rector from 1537 until 1547, followed by Pastor Andre Zébédée, who was replaced by Beza in 1552. The sermons were considered part of the daily curriculum. The pastors and professors chose those who could board students; these landlords were to take their boarders to church and “notify the pastors” of any character issues. Even the Liberal Arts Professor was to take his boarders to sermons on ceremonial days. The Theology Professor was to apply lessons that built up the church. “He should show its use both for personal progress and for the institution and activity of the Church.”

In Geneva the Rector and teachers were chosen from among the pastors by a board of pastors and professors. Each academic day began with the morning sermon, and “Sundays [were] devoted to attending religious services.” The students were invited to attend the weekly Congregation where the pastors preached and were to preach weekly under the watchful eyes of the pastors; neither of these disciplines were featured in Lausanne or Strasbourg. Thus Geneva more thoroughly integrated church and Academy than Strasbourg or Lausanne.

Structure 3: The students were closely mentored by pastors

In Strasbourg both Sturm and Bucer understood the importance of teachers serving as mentors for their students. Bucer wrote, “If he observes that any of them ceases from learning, he privately corrects him, and warns him of his duty.” The Rector, taking a close interest in the students, was to lead them in learning and piety, hearing reports on matters, “especially concerning the Christian religion and discipline.”

---

86 Cart, Pierre Viret, 99.
87 Meylan, La Haute École de Lausanne, 22-23. However, of ten professors at the Lausanne public school from 1547 until 1558, only Viret and Zébédée were fully pastors. Henderson, “The Teaching Office,” 54.
92 Eby, Early Protestant Educators, 253, 262; CO 10:85.
93 Eby, Early Protestant Educators, 265; CO 10:85.
96 Martini Buceri Scripta Anglicana (Basel: Petri Pernae Officina, 1577) 563.
Lausanne called for careful mentoring by the Rector and professors who often held classes in their homes.98 The Rector was to provide close supervision.99 “[The students] should show the rector honesty in their character and keenness in their letters…one who is headstrong, or seriously delinquent or prone to crime should be punished.”100 The students from Bern were to be housed with the Professor of Arts, who was similarly charged: “He should attend to their domestic studies and characters.”101 The landlords, chosen from those “of good testimony,” were to “give careful observation to the character and studies of his lodgers.”102 In the residential dormitory for scholarship students, L’Escholiers de Messieurs, the tutor was responsible for the students’ moral, intellectual and spiritual development.103

The system in Geneva, perhaps benefiting from the models in the other cities, provided a somewhat more intense pastoral mentoring experience. Not only did pastors take in students as boarders and serve as their mentors, but they also guided them in apprenticeships, examined their readiness for ministry and supervised their practice sermons. The cooperation and control exerted by the Company of Pastors delivered a more thorough pastoral mentoring experience for the students of Geneva.

Structure 4: The professors served as models of piety

Johann Sturm was adamant that professors must serve as examples of the very scholarship and virtues which they wished to teach.104 “If ever there were times in which religion demanded outstanding models…our times demand them most.”105 Bucer, too, was careful to underscore the importance of the professors’ example of holiness106 and so was personally involved in the effort to recruit honorable teachers.107 Teachers must “vow to live in Christian love and community” and were to “serve as a good Christian example for the others in school.”108 They were to model a godly scholarship, disciplined and diligent in all their personal and

---

100 Le Coultre, Maturin Cordier, “Leges Scholae,” 489.
103 Meylan, *La Haute École de Lausanne*, 17.
104 Kohls, *Die Schule*, 76.
107 Kohls, *Die Schule*, 91.
professional conduct. The Law Professor, for instance, was to “truly motivate the students to follow our Christian religion and discipline, in his teaching as well as in his exemplary daily living.” 109 The Rector was to serve as the ultimate model of Christian care and learning, not only for the students but for the other teachers. 110

The concept of teaching by example was present in Lausanne as well, though perhaps to a lesser degree. For Viret the pastor was to lead the way in church discipline by his own good example 111 and not to “dishonor the Gospel.” 112 Those who offered lodging to the students were to be examples as men of “good testimony.” 113 It seems apparent from his efforts to recruit Beza from Geneva that Viret admired Beza for his well-known example of holiness and erudition, 114 and thus considered him an “honor and ornament” for the school. 115

Geneva, built on modeling holiness, expected the Rector to be “a man of conspicuous piety and learning,” 116 while Lausanne was perhaps more oriented toward his academic side, seeking a rector of “authority and learning.” 117 Geneva and Strasbourg then would seem to have emphasized more thoroughly than Lausanne the role of professors as models of holiness.

Structure 5: The Academy maintained a reputation for piety
Since our study of both Strasbourg and Lausanne was limited, and did not comprise any significant correspondence, we cannot adequately judge their reputations for holiness. Once Beza was a professor in Lausanne, its fame appeared to spread more quickly than Strasbourgs’. 118 While Bucer was known as a man “deeply learned in the principles of theology and philosophy,” 119 his reputation suffered from his unwise choice of sanctioning the secret bigamy of Phillip of Hesse in 1539. 120 Certainly the piety of Lausanne must have been broadcast most loudly by the martyrdom of its

111 Bruening, “Ecclesiastical Discipline,” 44.
115 Letter of Viret to Calvin, Aug. 29, 1549; CO 13:369-72.
116 Eby, Early Protestant Educators, 262; CO 10:81.
119 Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 97.
120 Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 115.
famed five students, who were executed in Lyon in 1553, singing as they faced the flames: “With all my heart I will exalt you, Lord, and will tell all your unmatched works which are worthy of great wonder.”

Overall, given the general respect which the Academies of Lausanne and Strasbourg enjoyed with Geneva, we would conjecture that these were roughly equivalent.

**Structure 6: The Academy required a high standard of personal piety**

All three of our schools established a high standard for personal holiness. In Strasbourg Sturm, influenced by the Brethren of the Common Life, demanded discipline toward godliness. “Let piety and religion be set forth in schools.”

Bucer, trained in a system where piety and education were synonymous, declared that “men of outstanding piety” should be chosen to teach the youth. He required pastors and church officers to be “holy in their personal lives,” serving as examples to the flock. The Theology Professor was to aim toward piety, not just imparting knowledge, “so that godliness and Christian discipline may increase.” The Music Professor was to teach Christian songs “because of the positive effect that has on the youth.”

Both the Gymnasium and the Collegium Praedicatorum required rigorous attention to holiness. Among our cities Strasbourg is unequaled in their explicit and concrete standards for personal holiness.

The Lausanne Academy was dedicated to promoting holiness, “mores pietatemque.” The students were to vow their piety before the Rector of the school. The student boarders were to be carefully watched by their hosts, who were to report any misbehavior to the pastors. The Arts Professor was to see that there

---

121 Martin, Les Cinq Étudiants, 57-59.
123 Spitz, Johann Sturm, “Opening of Elementary Schools,” 73.
124 Amos, “Bucer Among the Humanists,” 137.
125 Pauck, Bucer, De Regno Christi, 335.
126 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 42.
127 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 52.
130 For example, at the “Preacher’s College,” the students were required to attend evening prayer, avoid jesting or disparaging speech, injure no one, cause no discord and shun taverns. Fournier, Les statuts, “Leges Collegii Praedicatorum” 28-29. At the Gymnasium students were disciplined for neglecting studies, missing classes, fighting or failing to show respect. Fournier, Les statuts, “Leges et Statuta,” 26.
131 Junod, L’Académie de Lausanne, 22.
was suitable piety in daily prayers.\textsuperscript{134} The Professor of Theology was to make application of the text in such a way that it would advance the holiness of the students.\textsuperscript{135}

The\textit{ Order}\textsuperscript{136} of the Genevan Academy demonstrates a somewhat lesser stated concern with the piety of the students than Strasbourg. There is a general statement regarding the public students: “Public scholars…shall…conduct themselves with piety and decorum.”\textsuperscript{136} The Rector vowed to see that the students would “hold themselves in obedience and respect to our lords” and was not to “tolerate immoral or licentious students.” The professors vowed to see to it that the “students live peacefully, honorably, and with decorum.”\textsuperscript{137} While Geneva had a better overall system for disciplining and enforcing holiness, with the superior clarity of expectations for holiness in its foundational documents, Strasbourg would seem to exceed Geneva and Lausanne in this category.

\textbf{Structure 7: The Academy held a high standard for biblical fidelity}

Each of our Academies intended to have a relatively high standard of Bible knowledge. In Strasbourg we find that the Hebrew Professor was to teach by reading and interpreting the Old Testament.\textsuperscript{138} The Theology Professors were to teach the Bible from the original languages.\textsuperscript{139} The students of theology were expected to read the Bible in its entirety and to partake in bi-weekly theological disputes based on biblical teaching.\textsuperscript{140} However, unlike in Geneva and Lausanne, the Bible was not extensively taught to the students who majored in law or medicine. Moreover, unlike Geneva, the students were not required to submit to a confession of faith.

In Lausanne the Greek Professor was to teach from both the Bible and the classics,\textsuperscript{141} unlike in Strasbourg and Geneva, where Greek was taught only from the classics.\textsuperscript{142} The Theologian was to read the biblical text “with as much faith and earnestness as he can” and to expound the Bible from the original languages.\textsuperscript{143}
theology lectures were mostly preaching designed to be spiritually nourishing.\textsuperscript{144}

There were regular theological papers presented on biblical themes for debate.\textsuperscript{145} Yet the Academy did not require the students to submit to a statement of faith.\textsuperscript{146}

An examination of the actual weekly schedule of each Academy reveals that while Geneva had 19 hours dedicated to biblical subjects, and Lausanne had 20, we would calculate that in Strasbourg even the pastoral students, after fulfilling their obligations to attend lectures on medicine and law, as well as rhetoric and philosophy, might have had only five to eight hours of Bible training, less than half that of the others.\textsuperscript{147}

Each of the Academies also required an examination of biblical knowledge, which would raise the overall standards. Geneva and Lausanne, with no set duration of study, held these exams when student and Rector agreed they were well-prepared. Strasbourg, with an expectation of five years of attendance,\textsuperscript{148} would give a lengthy test after that time.\textsuperscript{149}

We would conclude that Strasbourg trailed both Lausanne and Geneva in this category. Geneva’s standard exceeded even Lausanne’s with the additional requirements of the statement of faith\textsuperscript{150} and weekly preaching practice.

**Structure 8: The professors used a hortatory teaching style**

We find evidence that the teaching at all our Academies was delivered in a hortatory manner, offering exhortation and application, not just information. Bucer would begin his lectures with a prayer, calling for the training to promote piety, not just knowledge. “Father, Thou wantest us to come together in Thy name and have pious meetings, Thou wantest also that among your children there are schools that serve to keep and promote your law and doctrine.”\textsuperscript{151} The Hebrew Professors in Strasbourg were to focus on those passages of Scripture which provided “short admonitions

\textsuperscript{144} Gindroz, *Histoire de l’instruction*, 34.
\textsuperscript{146} Meylan, *La Haute École de Lausanne*, 21.
\textsuperscript{150} Eby, *Early Protestant Educators*, 266; CO 10:87.
aimed at piety.” The Theologians were to teach “so that godliness and Christian discipline may increase.” The Law Professor was to apply his lectures for the students’ personal growth. During his tenure as a professor in Strasbourg, Peter Vermigli’s lectures “sometime exhorted to godly life, sometime by a sharp rebuking…stirred up to repentance.” One of Bucer’s students in Cambridge described the sermonic nature of his lectures, a style he would have likely carried over from his long ministry in Strasbourg. “Dr. Bucer cries incessantly now in daily lectures, now in frequent sermons that we should practice penitence…be more frequent in having and hearing sermons, constrain ourselves to some sort of discipline.”

In Lausanne lectures were to have an immediate sanctifying impact. The Theologian was to bring his lectures to a sharp point so as to make practical application for “personal progress.” Viret wanted teaching that would ultimately “edify the house of God,” which must be applied to the heart, “but it is God alone who can accomplish it.” It is no surprise then that the lectures were largely sermons with pointed application.

Since the lectures in Strasbourg and Lausanne were as hortatory as those in Geneva we could discover no appreciable difference in their approach to education in this matter, all three tended to aim at transformation of the heart, not just filling the head.

Structure 9: The professors closely critiqued the students’ preaching and theology

All three Academies utilized student theological disputations, accompanied with critical feedback from professors, pastors and others students. Though this was a standard tool of scholasticism, it appears our leaders sought to reform it by making Scripture, and not Lombard’s Sentences, the point of debate. The disputations

156 Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 204.
160 Gindroz, Histoire de l’instruction, 34.
161 Amos, “Bucer Among the Humanists,” 149.
occurred every two weeks in Lausanne and Strasbourg, while Geneva had them only monthly but also uniquely offered weekly preaching practice with critical feedback. In each Academy the disputations were held on some important theological topic, not something controversial or silly (\textit{keine absurda proposita}), and were conducted by a lead pastor or theologian who was to settle any disputes on the spot.\footnote{Fournier, \textit{Les statuts}, “Statuts du Gymnase,” 50; Le Coultre, \textit{Maturin Cordier}, “Leges Scholae,” 488; Eby, \textit{Early Protestant Educators}, 267; CO 10:87.} In Strasbourg the topics, which must have sound arguments on both sides,\footnote{Spitz, \textit{Johann Sturm}, “Opening of Elementary Schools,” 115.} were introduced through the teaching of the Professor of Theology.\footnote{Fournier, \textit{Les statuts}, “Statuts du Gymnase,” 50.} In Lausanne the disputations were presented by one student, rebutted by another and then discussed by all.\footnote{Meylan, \textit{La Haute École de Lausanne}, 20.} The Theologian was always present to solve any controversies and to teach the students how to frame arguments from Scripture.\footnote{Le Coultre, \textit{Maturin Cordier}, “Leges Scholae,” 488.} As in Geneva great care was to be given to control the debate so that feedback was offered “with moderation and without contention and shouting.”\footnote{Le Coultre, \textit{Maturin Cordier}, “Leges Scholae,” 488.} 

In comparing the three Academies, we find some nuanced differences. Strasbourg tended more toward teaching rhetoric and logic than theology or Bible knowledge. “The pupils shall faithfully participate and practice dialectics in these debates as opponents and respondents, based on what they have learned in Sturm’s \textit{Partitiones} [Sturm’s work on logic].”\footnote{Fournier, \textit{Les statuts}, “Statuts du Gymnase,” 50.} Strasbourg also gave no caution against an uncivil tone in debate; perhaps it was either allowed in the German context, or it was assumed that the students would conduct themselves civilly. The major difference among the Academies is the presence of the weekly sermon presentations at Geneva, which would have afforded its pastoral students the advantage of greater frequency and scope of the critical feedback.

\textbf{Structure 10: The students faced dangers in France/Germany}

When the Strasbourg school was founded in 1538, it was just over a decade after the Peasant Wars (1524-25) had cost some 100,000 lives, and just prior to the Protestants’ defeat in the Schmalkaldic League Wars (1546-47). However, by the time of the focus of our study, 1559-1564, Germany was under the sway of the Augsburg Peace (1555), which provided for freedom of religion within each ruler’s territory, “cuius
regio, eius religio.” Strasbourg was also a city of tolerance, which invited different sects to live side by side in relative peace. As a result the students of German-speaking Strasbourg during this period would have less imminent threat of danger to aid their progress in holiness.

In Lausanne most of the students were from France, hence all the dangers facing the students in Geneva were present to those of Lausanne. Perhaps the dangers to the Lausanne students and the courage that they exhibited are best demonstrated in the five martyrs of Lausanne, who declaring their readiness to die, demonstrated the sanctifying lesson of suffering. “We are bold to say and affirm that we shall derive more profit in this school for our salvation than has ever been the case in any place where we have studied.”

While we cannot count the environmental dangers as a formal aspect of the Academies’ educational plans, we do see in the cases of Lausanne and Geneva that these dangers were a pressing reality, whereas they were not in Strasbourg. Even though the precise impact of these dangers would be hard to quantify, certainly Calvin believed they would benefit the holiness of his students and put them to that use in his lectures.

**Summary of comparison of the educational structures of the Academies**

In comparing the educational structures at our three Academies, we have observed that:

1. With the exception of the lack of danger in Strasbourg, each of the educational structures in Geneva was present to some degree in each of the other Academies.

2. Nine of the ten educational structures (excepting the environmental dangers) were intended by the leaders of the schools to in some way enhance the piety of the students. That is, the structures were not accidental or incidental but intentionally used to be helpful to the holiness of their students.

3. While all three Academies strove to excel in these areas, Geneva had a clear advantage in five of the ten areas: Academy Integrated with the City, Academy

---

Integrated with the Church, Close Mentoring by Pastors, High Standard of Biblical Fidelity and Critical Feedback on Preaching and Theology.

4. There was one area where Strasbourg exceeded the standard set even by Geneva: High Standard for Personal Piety.


6. In two areas, Reputation for Piety and Hortatory Teaching Style, we could find no appreciable differences.

7. As to stated purposes of the Academies, both Lausanne and Genevan Academies had the purpose of training pastors, while Strasbourg was primarily for classical education.

Hence we draw the conclusion from this examination of the educational structures that while all three schools used very similar structures, the Genevan Academy on the aggregate exceeded the other two schools in the implementation of these structures, and Strasbourg exceeded Lausanne.

In an effort to summarize the differences in the educational structures we offer the chart below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Educational Structure</th>
<th>Lausanne</th>
<th>Strasbourg</th>
<th>Geneva</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Academy integrated into city</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Academy integrated with Church</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Close mentoring by pastors</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Professors serving as models</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Reputation for piety</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. High standard of personal piety</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Exceeds Geneva</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. High standard of biblical fidelity</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Hortatory teaching style</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Critical feedback on preaching and theology</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present some</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Facing dangers in France/Germany</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
<td>Not present</td>
<td>Present fully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. A Comparison of the Teaching Regarding Sanctification

In order to compare the efforts of our three Academies to foster holiness, we might also compare the teaching that occurred there. To do so we will compare some of the teaching of Bucer and Viret, the principle theologians at Strasbourg and Lausanne, to
the teaching of Calvin in Geneva. To narrow the focus of this comparison, we will only compare the fourteen points proposed as elements of Calvin’s theology of sanctification. Our purpose in the comparison is not to demonstrate that Calvin taught more like Calvin than say Martin Bucer did, an obvious conclusion. Rather the comparison will serve to show where the Reformers had similar emphases, and more importantly perhaps what, if anything, made Calvin’s teaching on sanctification distinct.

We do not have a record of the lectures given by either Viret or Bucer as we have preserved in some of Calvin’s Commentaries, therefore, we cannot assert that their representative teaching was directly delivered to their students. However, it seems reasonable to suppose that their classroom lectures would be reflected by their overall theology delivered in sermons, books and treatises. For Bucer’s teachings we will look primarily at his De Regno Christi, The True Care of Souls, Instruction in Christian Love and some collected works from Wright’s Common Places of Martin Bucer. For Viret we will examine Instruction Chrétienne, The Proposal by the Ministers of Lausanne for Ecclesiastical Discipline, a Sermon on Isaiah 65, Du devoir et du besoin qu’ont les hommes à s’enquerir de la volonté de Dieu par sa parole and some other works.

**Principle 1: Two-fold knowledge**

Viret’s teaching on the knowledge of God and man asserts that man’s true happiness, and God’s honor, is to be found in knowing God. “The true knowledge of Him…leads man to honor Him as his God and Creator with the true honor due Him.” Man may find this knowledge as he looks inward, seeing God’s glory in creating man and man’s own depravity. “We ourselves may be grouped with Satan, our mortal enemy, for aiding him to ruin ourselves.” Ultimately to

---

173 Pauck, Bucer, De Regno Christi.
174 Bucer, True Care of Souls.
176 P. Viret, Instruction Chrétienne (Lausanne: L’Age d’Homme, 2008).
177 Bruening, “Ecclesiastical Discipline.”
179 P. Viret, Du devoir et du besoin.
181 P. Viret, Métamorphose chrétienne, faite par dialogues (Geneva: Jacques Bres, 1561) 4.
182 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 191.
183 Viret, La volonté de Dieu, 4.
understand God, necessary for joy,\textsuperscript{184} and to understand ourselves, we need God’s Word,\textsuperscript{185} which reveals our sin and leads us to God.\textsuperscript{186} The law informs us that we must first focus on God, since he is the primary source of both knowledge of self and God.\textsuperscript{187} “For this reason there is nothing that they ought to fear more than ignorance of that heavenly and Divine knowledge.”\textsuperscript{188} We must be humbled before God by this knowledge. “Knowing our faults and imperfections we humble ourselves.”\textsuperscript{189}

Bucer follows Calvin, or rather anticipates him, more closely than Viret. From the Word we gain knowledge of God’s holiness and our depravity, “to introduce the person to a deeper, but believing contemplation of his evil and what it means in terms of serious offense to God’s goodness and his own undoing.”\textsuperscript{190} Sunken low in transgressions, and all creation with us,\textsuperscript{191} we are enemies of God until he opens our eyes through true repentance. “This medicine is nothing else than getting the one who has sinned to recognize his sin sufficiently to cause and move them to a position of true acknowledgment, regret and sorrow for his sin.”\textsuperscript{192} Struck low in repentance we are then lifted up by God, and returned to live according to our original “primeval and godly disposition.”\textsuperscript{193}

While both Bucer and Viret taught on the two-fold knowledge, based upon our limited sample of their teaching, we do not find it as prevalent as in Calvin. We would conjecture therefore that the students in Geneva would have heard this paradigm more regularly.

**Principle 2: Bible preaching**

Given the Reformation emphasis on \textit{sola scriptura}, it is unsurprising that we find all three of our pastors taught this with remarkable consistency. Bucer agreed that the preaching of the Word was equivalent to hearing from God and should contain conviction of sin, a presentation of Christ and an announcement of judgment.\textsuperscript{194} “It is impossible to come to faith and eternal life unless you hear the gospel and that

\begin{footnotes}
\footnote{184} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 187.
\footnote{188} Viret, \textit{Instruction Chrétienne}, 97-98.
\footnote{189} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 180-81.
\footnote{190} Bucer, \textit{True Care of Souls}, 127.
\footnote{191} Bucer, \textit{Instruction in Christian Love}, 27.
\footnote{192} Bucer, \textit{True Care of Souls}, 101.
\footnote{194} Stephens, \textit{Theology of Bucer}, 200.
\end{footnotes}
administered by a man.”195 Preaching, the delivery of God’s Word through sinful men, is itself humbling.196 God’s Word, as empowered by him,197 was effective in all that it set out to accomplish,198 producing faith and righteousness.199 The Word, quickened by the Spirit, would be sufficient to restore the erring to the way of righteous living.200

Viret taught that God had given his Word as “a perfect Law by which we are truly enabled to govern ourselves.”201 While we naturally despise his Word, considering listening to a sermon the waste of an hour, but gladly wasting 12 hours in banquets or games, we must submit to preaching,202 for nothing is more “harmful than ignorance of the Law.”203 His Word must be studied and heeded, for it is the final authority for all things regarding human life and religious practice.204 When we hear the Bible preached, we hear God’s accommodating voice speaking to us directly.205 Therefore one must not neglect but submit to the Word preached each Sabbath,206 the first mark of a true church.207 Created through the Word, humans must be restored to uprightness by it,208 an uprightness which is seen in the very image of the law.209 The doctrine that the preaching of God’s Word must be heard and submitted to for growth in holiness was taught as clearly by Bucer and Viret as it was by Calvin.

**Principle 3: God’s love**

Bucer gave emphasis to the importance of God’s love for us. Christians can know the love of God, “whose love for them is infinitely greater than the love which any earthly father could have for his only child.”210 The Lord’s Supper is given to us as a tangible

---

200 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 169.
205 P. Viret, *La vertu et usage du ministere la parolle de Dieu* (Geneva: Jean Girard, 1548) 7-8, 14.
208 Viret, *La vertu et usage*, 5.
demonstration of God’s “great and ineffable love.” Faith leads us to know God’s love for us, and then this love overflows our heart so that we desire to love God and our neighbor. “What good could he withhold from us? His love is too great. Hence as soon as, through faith the heart recognizes and holds this truth, so soon the heart is overflowing with love and thereby completely made ready to do good to all men.”

While Bucer teaches this transformative nature of apprehending God’s love, he does not teach it with the same frequency as Calvin. More often he will speak of love as a basis for our duty, the mark of our sanctification. “No one should live for himself but each man should out of love for God live for his neighbor and by all means be of service to him.”

Viret would certainly speak of God’s love for us. God loves us as a “good father, gentle amiable and gracious,” and so is “moved by his own goodness, grace and mercy,” to bless us and to “defend us against our enemies.” This love is most easily seen in Christ. “If you want to see the heart of the heavenly Father entirely open, you may see that in his son Jesus Christ.” In Christ we hear the voice of God, a gentle voice, which calls us in love “so amiable.” However, in Viret we did not find the connection between God’s love and our movement toward him.

While both Bucer and Viret taught on the love of God for us, and Bucer even taught on its strategic connection to sanctification as the magnetic force which drives us toward God, yet still this teaching does not occur as frequently as in Calvin.

**Principle 4: God reliance**

Here we find another major reformation theme, *sola gratia*: man must rely on God to make him holy, hence we find our Reformers again in harmony. Viret is clear that all of holiness, justification and sanctification, must come from God. “We are not able to find this perfection except in Jesus Christ, through faith in him, through which we are justified and sanctified.” The believer must look to God’s grace in order to have

---

218 Calvin would dwell on God’s love as an attractive power in many sermons, for example: *Sermons on Genesis 1-11*, 547; *Sermons on 2 Samuel*, 198, 535, 603.
his conscience freed from his own sin and have a heart “renewed in order to see and know God in his Word.” God actively works faith, and thus salvation, in the heart of the believer. Our sanctification is his work, a miracle no less than making the lame to walk. Since our holiness must come from God, the Christian is called to live by faith in him who “sanctifies us also, communicating to us the gifts and graces which are the fruits of faith.”

Bucer taught the necessity of the Christian’s perpetual reliance on God. “For as the sun in the world [gives] the day, so God gives and works in us piety. Forever the sun must shine, so must the children of God forever be guided and driven by the spirit of God, that is taught and inclined and made ready to do good.” It is the Holy Spirit who produces faith in those who “truly believe in our Lord Jesus Christ.” “Certainly, nothing good can be done by us, unless the spirit of God effects it in us.” The Holy Spirit, and not works of penance, mortifies the old nature and enlivens the new, creating a new will. “We teach that the same spirit of divine sonship…effects in all who are Christ’s a continual mortifying and crucifying of their flesh.” While effected by the Holy Spirit, our sanctification is secured by our union with Christ. All three of our pastors seemed to teach with equal clarity the need for sola gratia.

**Principle 5: Desiring holiness**

Bucer taught that the Word of God holds forth the standard of holiness, toward which believers should strive through dependence on the power of Christ. Christian
rulers, pastors and teachers were to lead all toward pious living. The purpose of schooling was to advance holiness. The call to holiness was directed to the heart, to truly love God and neighbor, never just aimed at outward conformity. The believer must long for greater holiness and thus seek more grace from God in order to be made more holy.

Viret also taught that God’s law was the holiness toward which each believer must aspire. Pastors must be examples of holiness. True holiness, which must flow from the heart, is lived out as love for God and neighbor, which must be both physical and spiritual care. Viret called his hearers to desire holiness in order to be like their Lord. “Remember always that you are called to sanctification and holiness and purity.” The believer should develop a deep hunger for growth in holiness, to be always “consecrated to him.”

We find in our three Reformers remarkably similar teaching on the need to desire holiness: the law set the high standard of holiness, only God’s grace can produce such holiness, pastors must embody holiness, holiness proceeds from the heart and finds its fulfillment in love of God and man.

Principle 6: Faith

Bucer saw faith as the essential ingredient to wholeness for the Christian soul. “The health and life of the inner man consists in the true living faith in the mercifulness of God.” All “sickness and weakness” stems from lack of faith, while faith’s presence leads one to surrender to God. Increased faith in the Word, aided by

---

236 Pauck, Bucer, De Regno Christi, 235, 335.
237 Selderhuis, “Bucer and the Training of Ministers,” 139.
239 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 46-47.
240 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 126; Wright, Common Places, “Visitation of the Sick,” 431.
241 Burnett, The Yoke of Christ, 35.
243 Viret, Instruction Chrétienne, 121.
244 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 291.
245 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 260-63.
246 Viret, Instruction Chrétienne, 176-77.
247 Viret, La volonté de Dieu, Preface.
248 Viret, La volonté de Dieu, Preface.
249 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 288.
250 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 103-04.
251 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 167.
252 Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 53.
253 Timmerman, “Martin Bucer as Interpreter,” 40.
pastors called to deliver the pure Word,\textsuperscript{254} strengthens the union with Christ, whose benefits flow more freely to produce holiness.\textsuperscript{255}

Viret taught that our sanctification progresses according to our faith in Christ, which unites us to him. “We are made participants of the blessings of Jesus Christ by faith.”\textsuperscript{256} This faith requires that we put our trust in God and all his promises.\textsuperscript{257} Faith cannot be manufactured by humans but must come from God, through his Word preached within the Church\textsuperscript{258} and quickened by the Holy Spirit.\textsuperscript{259}

All our Reformers taught, similarly, that to grow in holiness is to grow in faith, which unites us to Christ and comes by hearing the Word. There is, however, one distinction which appears in our brief comparison. While both Viret\textsuperscript{260} and Bucer\textsuperscript{261} teach that the acquisition of faith is a struggle, neither of them, at least in our sample, has as clear a paradigm as Calvin, who presents the struggle for faith as an active warfare with the devil himself, who would have us look at circumstances while God bids us to hear his promise.\textsuperscript{262}

** Principle 7: Repentance**

Both Viret and Bucer taught the importance of repentance for progress in holiness. Viret argued that the first purpose of church discipline was to bring the sinner “back to repentance and amendment.”\textsuperscript{263} Recognizing that the average congregant desired a “gospel without repentance,”\textsuperscript{264} Viret taught that they must come to a knowledge of their own sinfulness\textsuperscript{265} and repent after each disobedience\textsuperscript{266} in order to be made holy by Christ.\textsuperscript{267}

Bucer lamented the historical abuses of penance, calling for a heartfelt, rather than ritualistic, repentance.\textsuperscript{268} True repentance emerges from an accurate two-fold

\textsuperscript{254} Stephens, \textit{Theology of Bucer}, 94.
\textsuperscript{255} Bucer, \textit{True Care of Souls}, 179.
\textsuperscript{256} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 288.
\textsuperscript{257} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 264.
\textsuperscript{258} Viret, \textit{L’Interim fait par dialogues}, 246-47.
\textsuperscript{259} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 264.
\textsuperscript{260} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 168.
\textsuperscript{261} Bucer, \textit{True Care of Souls}, 179.
\textsuperscript{262} Commentary, Lam. 3:18.
\textsuperscript{263} Bruening, “Ecclesiastical Discipline,” 42.
\textsuperscript{264} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 242.
\textsuperscript{265} Bruening, “Ecclesiastical Discipline,” 38.
\textsuperscript{266} Grin, “Deux Sermons,” 126.
\textsuperscript{267} Schnetzler, \textit{Pierre Viret}, 241.
\textsuperscript{268} Bucer, \textit{True Care of Souls}, 124-26.
knowledge of God and man, leading man to properly fear God and then to look towards God’s mercy in Christ. “True repentance must result from faith in Christ.” Repentance must be daily and life-long, leading to forgiveness and transformation into the image of God. While using language that sounds almost Roman, “the practice of penance is to be most strictly observed,” Bucer’s penance was entirely an evangelical ordinance. “Since God grants contrition and sorrow, in such things nothing fruitful can be accomplished by human commandments.” Repentance is the work of the entire church, pastor and members, helping each other move toward holiness. All three of our Reformers taught that repentance was the heartfelt move away from sin and toward the mercy of God in Christ, which led to their forgiveness and the reformation of their character.

**Principle 8: Self-denial**

While Viret uses slightly different terminology, such as “renounce yourself,” he appears to teach the same concept of self-denial. “God requires of us…abjection and despising of ourselves.” Self-denial has the familiar two-fold movement, denying one’s will in order to “consecrate ourselves entirely to the Lord.” Self-denial includes a renouncing of one’s reason and being subject to the Scriptures. Surrendering confidence in ourselves, we embrace God’s will, “rendering to him obedience that we owe him.”

Bucer not only taught the same concepts but used very similar terms as Calvin. His 1523 tract, *Das ym selbs nieman*, was instruction in self-denial that we might

---

269 Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 184.
270 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 127.
271 Burnett, The Yoke of Christ, 106.
272 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 127.
273 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 121.
274 Timmerman, “Martin Bucer as Interpreter,” 35.
277 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 114.
279 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 210; Burnett, The Yoke of Christ, 39.
280 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 189.
281 Viret, La volonté de Dieu, 54.
282 Viret, La volonté de Dieu, 21-22.
283 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 206.
284 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 189.
285 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 263.
“live a pious life in service to others.” Self-denial grows with faith. “Faith brings self-denial…forgetfulness of self and living wholly for others to the glory of God.” Penance and church discipline are aids that Christians may “learn to deny themselves more.” Both Sabbath worship and providential suffering help in denying pleasures and being drawn toward God.

Although Viret may have used somewhat different terminology, it appears that the students of Geneva, Strasbourg and Lausanne would have benefited equally from teaching on the role of self-denial in holiness, as offered from our three Reformers.

**Principle 9: Cross-bearing**

Bucer taught that the trials of life were God’s providential discipline for us, which must be born with patience. Illnesses are given to draw men to God. “By means of an illness [God] often urges the whole family to repentance.” Difficult providences are to be interpreted in light of God’s fatherly love that we might “bear the cross willingly,” with the full knowledge “that our dear God’s intentions towards them are entirely fatherly.”

Viret taught on the need to accept God’s providences, since God rules intimately over us. He wrote to the Lausanne students imprisoned in Lyon, “God by his providence has led you to this that you are detained as prisoners….Whether you live or whether you die, you live and die to the Lord.” However, we did not discover the clear teaching on cross-bearing evident in both Bucer and Calvin. Hence we would conjecture, based on our limited study, that the students of Strasbourg and Geneva were more regularly taught to bear the cross.

**Principle 10: Future life**

Bucer taught occasionally on the longing for the future life. “He heightens the effect of the groaning with which the sons of God long for glory, so that he may show how

---

286 Timmerman, “Martin Bucer as Interpreter,” 42.
288 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 9, 127.
great...is that glory of theirs for which they groan.”

Though Bucer taught that faith rids us of love for this present life, contrasted to Calvin, he did so less with an eye to the future as on present service. “Faith, finally, takes away from us love for the present life...which hinders so many from exercising a true love and service to their neighbor.”

Viret touches on the concept of heavenly bliss, where all our true longings will be found, and how that thought helps us today. We must live in this broken world, knowing that “the Lord has ordained a place and a time of which he will put an end to all this disorder and will restore all things in their true state.”

Though our study is limited, it appears that neither Bucer nor Viret taught as regularly concerning meditation on the future life as Calvin, therefore we would conjecture that the students of Geneva received a more steady diet of heavenly thoughts.

**Principle 11: Present life**

While Bucer taught infrequently on moderation, he did teach often on vocation and loving one’s neighbor. Because each individual is uniquely called, they are given a particular role in the church and their profession. Loving one’s neighbor is central for Bucer’s theology. We are created by God to serve others by meeting their physical and spiritual needs, so we must all work productively to have something to offer, which will “benefit your neighbor.”

---

301 *Commentary*, Ezek. 1:16.
305 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 2.
309 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 53.
Viret did not emphasize moderation, but he too taught on vocation and loving one’s neighbor. Vocation depends on the gifting of God, and every legitimate calling, from prince to farmer, must submit to God through his Word. One must love his neighbor by supplying his material and spiritual needs. “The Lord our God who has commanded us all to love our neighbor as ourselves, has declared…which love is required of us toward them.”

While all three Reformers taught the necessity of vocation and love of neighbor, it would appear from our short survey that neither Bucer nor Viret offered the same intensity of teaching that Calvin delivered on moderation in this present life.

**Principle 12: Church**

Given the ecclesial focus of the Reformation, it is no surprise to find in all three Reformers a high value on commitment to the church. Bucer taught that Christian growth directly correlated to participation in the life of the church. “When people are lax about church practices there is to be found weakness in their Christian lives.” The pastor was then to encourage the people to be “joyful and passionate” about church involvement, so they are “diligent in attendance at divine assemblies,” participating fully in church life. “The church of Christ where I am…I ought to esteem and hold as precious, as being that through which the Lord wishes to grant me his word and spirit, forgiveness of sins and all good. I am to give myself wholly to such a congregation.” The church officers help members’ holiness by providing “all counsel and help in things both corporal and spiritual.”

Viret was emphatic about the necessity of commitment to the church for spiritual growth. “The [church is the] means by which God leads us to faith and communion.” The church holds the keys of the kingdom, entrusted to her officers who govern and minister, “to edify the house of God.”

---

315 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 168.
316 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 168.
319 Calvin had the same four offices as Bucer. Lawrence, *Martin Bucer*, 176.
320 Bucer, *True Care of Souls*, 29, 211.
322 Viret, *Instruction Chrétienne*, 27.
participate in the life of the church, one must be a member, sign a confession of faith and vow to submit to her with one’s work and worship. Safe within the church, God’s providence works to build up the saints, even when enemies rage. We discovered no significant differences among the three Reformers concerning the church’s role in holiness.

**Principle 13: Sacraments**

The teaching regarding the use of the sacraments was remarkably similar in all three Reformers, in part due to Bucer’s influence upon Calvin. While Bucer attempted to maintain somewhat of a reconciling position between Luther and Zwingli regarding Christ’s presence, he taught that God works through the sacraments to make us holy by faith, uniting us to Christ who is truly present. “Christ effects our salvation by his sacraments of baptism and Eucharist.” To be faithful as a pastor, one must administer the sacraments properly, allowing only the repentant to partake.

Viret taught that the sacraments, as the visible Word, unite us to the life of Christ that we may have full communion with him. The elements truly present to us Christ nourishing us for eternal life and showing we are God’s children. “He gives us there…the true bread of life so to nourish us.” To receive worthily one must come repenting, therefore the pastor must rightly fence the table.

We find little difference in the teachings concerning the sacraments. We have noted, however, that Calvin was successful, as Bucer and Viret were not, in gaining

---

325 Berthoud, *Des Actes de L’Eglise*, 150.
326 Spijker, “Bucer’s Influence on Calvin,” 34.
327 Lawrence, *Martin Bucer*, 78.
335 Schnetzler, *Pierre Viret*, 266.
the power to thoroughly fence the table, hence, the teaching in Geneva was enhanced by this better practice.

**Principle 14: Church discipline**

Viret wanted to establish church discipline, which would reflect that of the New Testament. “La discipline très simple et très pure des temps apostoliques.” Ideally he wanted a Geneva-like Consistory, which using the keys would restrict access to the Lord’s Supper and increase the holiness of the people. While the pastors were uniquely charged to offer correction, the entire congregation was to take part. Discipline, from admonition to excommunication, would force the sin-blinded to see his sin and, convinced of his fault, repent, finding new holiness.

Bucer saw church discipline as essential to the health of the church. “Where discipline is dormant, men are asleep and the devil sows tares.” Elders and pastors together were to administer discipline by using the keys toward the recovery of sinners and the purity of the church. Bucer expected the entire church to engage in discipline, but realizing that the people were hesitant to do so, he focused on stirring up pastors who “more than anyone else are to be diligent” and loving in discipline. Church discipline, which replaced the Roman penitential system, was needed because of natural human blindness to sin. Yielding to discipline the penitent would find grace and be healed by Christ.

---

342 Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 293.
344 Viret, Instruction Chrétienne, 27.
346 Viret, La volonté de Dieu, Preface.
348 Viret, L’Interim fait par dialogues, 247.
351 Burnett, The Yoke of Christ, 32.
352 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 157.
353 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 98.
354 Burnett, The Yoke of Christ, 95.
355 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 95, 100-02.
357 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 203-04.
358 Bucer, True Care of Souls, 100-04.
The teaching on church discipline by all three Reformers, while similar, revealed minor differences. Bucer allowed excommunication for fewer grounds and only barred from the table, not worship. Viret and Bucer included discipline as a mark of the true church. The main difference in the cities, however, was their relative success in implementing a city-wide system of discipline, meaning Geneva would have had greater effectiveness in teaching on discipline, inasmuch as the theory was reinforced by the model of discipline.

Summary of the comparison of teaching on sanctification by three Reformers

Comparing the teaching samples of Bucer and Viret to the fourteen principles from Calvin’s theology of sanctification, we note the following similarities and differences:

1. There were eight topics, which all three Reformers taught clearly: Bible Preaching, God Reliance, Desiring Holiness, Repentance, Self-denial, Church Life, Sacraments and Discipline. Geneva, however, more effectively implemented the sacraments and church discipline, which perhaps aided the teaching of these topics by example.

2. There were three topics which Bucer and Viret taught only partly: Two-fold Knowledge, Faith and Present Life. Calvin taught the two-fold knowledge more frequently. He taught that faith was a struggle between God and the devil. He taught that moderation was key to using the present life well.

3. God’s Love was taught only partly by Viret and not as frequently by Bucer as by Calvin.

4. Viret and Bucer taught less frequently than Calvin on the Future Life.

5. Viret taught only partly on Cross-bearing.

It would appear then that Calvin’s teaching was most distinct for its regularity in presenting the Two-fold Knowledge of God and self, the frequency of teaching on God’s Love, the unique presentation of Faith as a struggle between God and the devil, the frequency of teaching on the Future Life and the emphasis on the moderate use of all things in the Present Life. Do these differences mean that the students in Geneva had a better teaching environment in which to grow in holiness? One could

---

Burnett, The Yoke of Christ, 221.
Schnetzler, Pierre Viret, 293.
Lawrence, Martin Bucer, 133.
not assert this with confidence. However one may say that: 1) *If* Calvin’s approach to sanctification is assumed to be effective at producing holiness and 2) *if* our limited sampling of the teaching of Bucer and Viret represents what was taught to the students of their Academies, 3) *then* the students of Geneva would have theoretically received teaching which was slightly more helpful to enhance one’s sanctification. Perhaps it is safest to conclude that it is likely that the students in Geneva received teaching that was in most ways similar to the teachings offered in the other Academies, with the exception of these few particular emphases distinct to Calvin.

To see the difference of the teaching of the Reformers in summary we have displayed them in a table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Teaching Topic</th>
<th>Viret/Lausanne</th>
<th>Bucer/Strasbourg</th>
<th>Geneva</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Two-fold knowledge</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Bible Preaching</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. God’s Love</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. God Reliance</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Desiring Holiness</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Faith</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Repentance</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Self-denial</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Cross-bearing</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Future Life</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Present Life</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Partly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Church Life</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Sacraments</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Church Discipline</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
<td>Taught Clearly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. Conclusion

Our three Academies are probably more remarkable for their similarities than their distinguishing characteristics. For example, we found evidence of nine of the ten educational structures at each Academy. This should come as no surprise, both because they were created in the midst of the educational reforms that accompanied the Reformation and because of their interdependence: Calvin’s early years teaching at Strasbourg, the dismissal of the Lausanne professors to Geneva, the use of the *Leges Scholae Lausannesis* as Calvin prepared the *Leges Academiae Genevensis* and Calvin’s return visit to Strasbourg just prior to starting the Genevan Academy.

Given these natural similarities, the differences perhaps become even more significant. Regarding the educational structures, Geneva was distinguished by: 1) the Integration of the Academy with the City, 2) the Integration of the Academy with

---

the Church, in particular the control of the Academy by the *Compagnie* and 3) the highest standards of Biblical Fidelity, with its focus on doctrine, preaching and its confession of faith. Added to this was the fact that both Geneva and Lausanne, but not Strasbourg, had as their primary aim the training of pastoral candidates. In terms of teaching toward sanctification, while many of the emphases of the Reformation were taught by all three Reformers, Calvin’s teaching was distinct in the emphasis given to the Two-fold Knowledge, Love of God, Faith, Present Life and Future Life.

While there are striking similarities, the differences discovered in our research suggest that a pastoral candidate at the Genevan Academy would have more consistently experienced holiness-enhancing educational structures than at our two other contemporary Academies. They would also have received teaching on sanctification, which was in some ways distinct from that of some other Reformers, emphasizing Calvin’s doctrines of sanctification. The students would have experienced what was, from Calvin’s understanding of sanctification, a distinctly excellent environment for enhancing their holiness.
Thesis Conclusions

Reviewing the goals of the thesis
As we began our research, we had a central research question: How did John Calvin encourage the sanctification of the candidates for pastoral office at the Genevan Academy? In addressing that question we desired to advance the premise that Calvin’s great concern for developing the holiness of the pastors at the Genevan Academy was shown by the way he used his theology of sanctification to shape the teaching and educational structures of the Academy. To explore the central question we asked more narrowly in Section One: What are the key elements of Calvin’s theology of sanctification which bear on the process of progressive sanctification? In Section Two we focused on the application of that theology: What were the specific teachings and educational structures utilized by Calvin to enhance the pietas of the pastoral candidates he trained in the Genevan Academy? We have found distinct answers to each of these questions.

I. Summary of Section One: Theology of Sanctification
As we explored the elements of Calvin’s theology of sanctification in Section One, we uncovered both the picture of the pious man, which Calvin hoped to help produce and the key elements of his teaching on sanctification. We found that Calvin described the pious man in these broad terms:

A summary of the sanctified person
1. Fulfilling the True Order. Calvin described the goal of sanctification variously as being transformed into the image of Christ, the image of God, the image of the law or as being restored to the true order of creation; each one is equivalent to the other.

2. Loving God. Sanctification means to love God with a whole or round heart. One renders him heartfelt thanks, generous worship and filial loyalty, all to magnify and serve his glory.

3. Loving Neighbor. Holiness means to love one’s neighbor, refraining from doing him any harm, regarding his needs and wishes before one’s own, caring for his soul and helping to meet his material needs.
4. **Moderation.** Holiness is a moderating of all emotions, appetites and desires, such that one is not carried to excess even while rejoicing or weeping, and one may enjoy the bounty of life while still having their hopes firmly fixed on heaven.

5. **Living within Vocation.** The holy person understands God’s call on their life and humbly submits to it, joyfully bearing any difficult providence as a cross.

6. **Rendering the Obedience of Faith.** Man is to render to God neither a legalistic nor a human-powered obedience, but an obedience which is by grace through faith and which makes use of all the ordinary means of grace within the life of the church.

Understanding the goal of sanctification, we also discovered the key elements of Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification:

**Principles from Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification**

**Principle 1: Two-fold Knowledge.** Because God created us to lovingly revere him, therefore gain knowledge of God and self thus to offer God prostration and reverence. The two-fold knowledge, of God’s greatness and of man’s depravity and inability to improve himself, leads the believer to respond to God with the two-fold motion of faith: downward in humble prostration before God and upward in thankful and loving reverence to God.

**Principle 2: Bible Preaching.** Because God has given his Word to lead us to life, therefore submit to the preaching of the Word of Christ. Bible preaching proclaims both God’s judgment on man’s sin, and an offer of God’s grace in Christ, calling man to turn in faith and repentance to the grace of God, who makes him holy for the obedience of faith.

**Principle 3: God’s Love.** Because God has elected us in love, therefore apprehend God’s love to move us to love God in holiness. Knowledge of God’s paternal love, most clearly seen in Christ and presented in covenant promises, serves as a primary motive force behind the believer’s submission to God in sanctification.

**Principle 4: God Reliance.** Because God is the one who sanctifies, therefore rely on God’s powerful grace, and not yourself, to become holy. God is the author of sanctification, working through the election of the Father, union with the Son and the indwelling of the Spirit to make the believer holy, as he continuously relies on the grace of God and stops relying on his goodness or his own ability to improve himself.

**Principle 5: Desiring Holiness.** Because God is holy and loves holiness, therefore desire deeply to become holy. The believer must see God’s intention to conform his people to the Scriptural standard of holiness and thus desire to become more holy, rendering the obedience of faith from a heart of integrity.

**Principle 6: Faith.** Because God sanctifies by giving more faith, therefore struggle daily for more faith to become more holy. Holiness grows with faith, and faith, as a gift of God, arises from hearing the Word of God, while also ignoring the
world, the flesh and the devil, which all bid us to doubt God by focusing on negative circumstances.

**Principle 7: Repentance.** Because God gives grace to the lowly, therefore repent humbly to find more grace. The grace of God for sanctification only flows to the humble penitent who, through self-examination, based on the Word preached, read and held forth by others in the church, seeks out all sin in his life, so that in seeing his sin, he will ask God for the humility to turn from sin to Christ and there receive forgiveness and grace to make him holy.

**Principle 8: Self-denial.** Because God gives life to those who lose it, therefore deny yourself as a practice of faith and repentance. To progress in holiness, the believer must practice faith and repentance by constantly considering the interests of God and others before his own and yielding to God’s will, as it is revealed in Scripture, through his neighbor’s needs and to his conscience.

**Principle 9: Cross-bearing.** Because God mortifies through suffering, therefore bear the cross to mortify our flesh. God sanctifies the believer by providentially bringing him the sufferings of the cross, which he should bear with joy and patience, as he submits to God in difficult providences.

**Principle 10: Future Life.** Because God grants us an eternal inheritance, therefore meditate on the future life with Christ. The believer progresses in holiness as he is constantly drawn through public preaching and private meditation to contemplate the heavenly life with God, away from an inordinate desire for the world.

**Principle 11: Present Life.** Because God providentially guides all of life, therefore rightly use this present life to love others. God produces holiness as the believer practices the obedience of faith in the schoolroom of this daily life: enjoying life without lusting, being moderate within his vocation and benefiting others as a steward of his resources.

**Principle 12: Church.** Because God sanctifies his church, therefore engage fully in the life of church. The believer is sanctified by Christ only as he fully participates in the life of the church, in its preaching of the Word, its right administration of the sacraments and its shepherding through discipline.

**Principle 13: Sacraments.** Because God offers grace sacramentally, therefore commune regularly with Christ through the sacraments. The sacraments, properly administered and worthily received, communicate the grace of Christ, which actually puts to death sin and engenders faith, by which Christ is received more and more.

**Principle 14: Church Discipline.** Because God shepherds us through his leaders, therefore seek pastoral care and church discipline. Church discipline and pastoral care, when received in submission, confront the believer with particular sins to which he is blind and leads him toward the cure of Christ.
We have seen that the essence of Calvin’s view of progressive sanctification is this: sanctification progresses as we gain an accurate two-fold knowledge of God and self, and respond to this knowledge with the two-fold motion of grace, downward in humble prostration before God, and at the same time, upward before him in thankful reverence.

II. Summary of Section Two: Training of Pastors

In Section Two, informed by the principles discovered in Calvin’s theology of progressive sanctification, we asked: What were the specific teachings offered and the educational structures utilized by Calvin to enhance the pietas of the pastoral candidates he trained in the Genevan Academy? However, before we explored this question, we first had to ask the question of Calvin’s goal: What is the model of the pious pastor toward which Calvin would train?

The model of the pious pastor operative at the Genevan Academy

A. Truly Called
1. Truly Called by God. No man can be a real pastor unless God has called him into ministry, both by giving the requisite gifts for the office and by granting an internal sense of call.

2. Truly Called by the Church. A true call must proceed from the church, which is to select, train, examine and ordain those she knows God has prepared for pastoral work.

B. Faithful to the True Pastoral Call
1. Faithful to the Pastoral Office. The pastor must dedicate himself to his office, laboring long and hard, with great diligence and love, while always relying on the grace of God to do through him what he cannot do himself.

2. Faithful in Preaching the Word. The pastor must always accurately preach the Word of God, neither adding to, nor subtracting from it. He must preach Christ boldly to confront sin, calling men to repentance and faith, never backing down from opposition in order to gain admirers or wealth.

3. Faithful in Shepherding the Flock. The pastor must dedicate himself to one flock, where he will remain, to labor lovingly and diligently on behalf of the sheep. When the flock is attacked, he will lovingly sacrifice himself to protect it. When the flock is sin-sick, he will bring the healing remedy of church discipline, without delay or favoritism, but with fatherly gentleness.

4. Faithful in Administering the Sacraments. The pastor must faithfully administer the sacraments by preparing his people to receive them, by teaching of
their proper use and power, by warning of the dangers of their abuse and by calling the people to their regular use.

5. **Faithful in Personal Holiness.** The pastor must be pure in his morality, without the least hint of sexual impurity or drunkenness. He must be pure in his motivation; neither avarice nor ambition can enter his heart. The pastor must be accountable to other pastors and his own flock in order to discover his own blindness to sin.

**Educational structures present at the Genevan Academy**

Having enunciated Calvin’s model of the pious pastor, we then answered our central question: How did John Calvin encourage the sanctification of the candidates for pastoral office at the Genevan Academy? We found he did this both through the repetitive teaching of the fourteen elements of progressive sanctification and through the use of the ten educational structures, which effectively applied Calvin’s theology of sanctification. We have seen that Calvin, while never offering a summary of these fourteen principles, clearly repeated these doctrines in his lectures with a view toward enhancing the students’ holiness. We have discovered that the ten educational structures were intentionally used, not only to give ministry skills and knowledge, but also to shape the piety of the pastoral candidates. Thus we have demonstrated our central thesis that Calvin’s great concern for developing the holiness of the pastors at the Genevan Academy was shown by the way he used his theology of sanctification to shape the teaching and educational structures of the Academy.

**Ten educational structures present at the Genevan Academy**

**Structure 1: The Academy Was Integrated into the City.** Geneva itself was designed as a complex system to encourage piety, where church and state worked in harmony to produce sanctification among all its members, including the students.

**Structure 2: The Academy Was Integrated with the Church.** The Academy was integrated with, and under the authority of, the church of Geneva, which would bring the students under the Word, sacraments and discipline.

**Structure 3: The Students Were Closely Mentored by Pastors.** The students were closely mentored and supervised by the Company of Pastors, who worked to produce not only skilled but godly pastors.

**Structure 4: The Professors Served as Models of Piety.** The professors of the Academy served as models of holiness, setting a standard toward which the students might strive.
Structure 5: The Academy Maintained a Reputation for Piety. This reputation for piety would serve both as a filter, screening out those who wished to cling to their sins, and as a magnet, attracting those who wanted to grow in holiness.

Structure 6: The Academy Required a High Standard of Personal Piety. The students were held accountable for a very high standard for personal holiness, encouraging their desire and effort toward piety.

Structure 7: The Academy Held a High Standard for Biblical Fidelity. The students were encouraged to hold the Bible in highest regard and to master its teachings in concept and practice, thus enhancing their holiness.

Structure 8: The Professors Used a Hortatory Teaching Style. Rather than simply presenting information, the teaching at the Academy was persistently sermonic in nature, applying the biblical truths to the hearers and exhorting them toward repentance.

Structure 9: The Professors Closely Critiqued Students’ Preaching and Theology. The Company carefully critiqued the students’ weekly practice preaching sessions and monthly theological papers, helping the students grow in holiness through a right application of Scripture.

Structure 10: The Students Faced Dangers in France. While not properly a structure of the Academy, Calvin used the awareness of the dangers in France to move the students toward self-denial and meditation on the future life, in order to enhance their holiness.

The comparison of Academies
In Section Two we also compared the Academy of Geneva with those in Strasbourg and Lausanne. While we found many similarities, due to the interdependence of the Academies, we nevertheless discovered that there were certain features unique to Geneva. In Geneva the Academy was more completely integrated with the city and the church, and the students were more closely mentored by the pastors. Geneva maintained the highest standard of biblical fidelity, evidenced by the lengthy confession of faith that students were required to adopt. Geneva taught more clearly and more often on Calvin’s essential paradigm of the need for the two-fold knowledge of God and self, on the struggle for faith in all of life as a struggle between God and the devil and on the full-orbed use of this present life as the arena in which calling, moderation and love for neighbor are to be lived.
III. Calvin’s Success at Preparing Pious Pastors

How are we to evaluate the effectiveness of the Genevan Academy? Not all of its graduates were exemplary pastors, indeed some were notorious failures. Pierre Des Préaux demonstrated a failure to care for his flock, abandoning them when the plague struck and again when he had family business. He was finally encouraged to resign in 1576 after just five years.  

Jean Le Gaigneux spoke so strongly against both the City Council and Beza’s leadership that he was deposed in 1571. Even while attending the Academy some students showed troubling signs. Michael Cop’s own son, Lucas, was publicly flogged in 1570 for lying to the ministers and reading “several profane books.”

Despite a number of failures, most of the pastors who prepared at the Academy served admirably. Charles Perrot, known for his compassion toward the poor and his personal holiness, ministered for 40 years beginning in 1567 as a faithful associate in St. Pierre. Jean Gervais faithfully endured Roman Catholic oppression for 18 years while pastoring the country parish of Bossey before being called to serve in St. Gervais in 1612. Simon Goulart pastored St. Gervais from 1571 for more than 50 years, while also writing over 65 works. Theodore Tronchin became professor of Hebrew in 1606 at age 24 and then served Geneva for 50 years as professor, school rector and pastor.

Perhaps a more reliable way to evaluate the effectiveness of the Genevan Academy is a statistical examination. We may compare the rate at which pastors who studied in Geneva were deposed from ministry with the deposition rates for pastors from other areas. During the 50 years after the founding of the Academy in 1559, Geneva was served by 105 pastors, 47 of whom studied at the Academy. Out of the 47 only 5 were deposed, or approximately 10.6%. That rate is similar to or lower than the deposition rate for Reformed pastors in some other areas which have been studied.

---

2 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 64.
4 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 53-54.
5 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 142-43.
6 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 54-55.
7 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 61.
8 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 309-16.
9 Manetsch, *Company of Pastors*, 365, note 70: 17% in the duchy of Deux-Pons, 1557-1619; 14% in the County of Sponheim, 1557-1619; 10% in the South of France, 1559-1598.
While this rate speaks favorably of the effectiveness of the Genevan Academy one may wonder why it was not even lower. Part of the answer certainly lies in what we have observed in Chapter VIII: other Reformed academies used many of the same approaches to sanctification as did Geneva. However, could it not also be that in Geneva, with its more thorough supervision, fewer breaches of conduct would pass undetected? Perhaps this rate of deposition might have been even lower were the supervision of Genevan pastors more nearly equivalent to that in other places.

We may also see Geneva’s effectiveness in training godly pastors in 1) the demand for a high quantity of Geneva graduates, 2) the high quality of the personal holiness in the graduates and 3) the great effectiveness of these men in furthering the Reformation in France.

**The high quantity of the pastors sent from Geneva**

As the Reformation progressed in France, the number of congregations exploded such that there were about 2150 congregations in 1562. As evidence that others judged its graduates worthy, Geneva was asked to supply many of these pastors, sending out as many as 142 in 1561 alone. Calvin would complain in 1561 of this incessant request for pastors from Geneva: “From all quarters demands for ministers are addressed to us, and though we have no more to send, yet such is the importunity of those who ask, that we must choose certain ministers from the lower ranks of the people.” The flood of pastors from Geneva was so great that the King of France wrote to the town fathers of Geneva in 1561 asking them to stem the tide. While sheer quantity cannot prove the overall effectiveness of the Academy, the high demand for pastors from Geneva certainly suggests that the Academy’s men were welcomed by the churches of France.

**The high quality of the pastors sent from Geneva**

The students went out with a holy humility, learned in their prostration before God. One former student, Bon Dupré, would write Calvin, “I hope that…the Spirit of smallness and humility will give me the grace to strive for his glory.”

---

learned his lessons well. The students went out with a holy boldness as well, learned in their reverent worship of God. They endured hardship and battles all around them with courage, as Calvin wrote to Bullinger, “At Montpelier, Nîmes, and other cities, our brethren are still in possession of the churches, because no one of the opposite party ventures to claim them.”¹⁵ They were still in possession of those churches, for no one else was bold enough to demand them (repetere audet). Those brethren had learned their lessons, too.

One of the clearest virtues displayed by the pastors from Geneva was their great courage. While many would eventually die in the line of duty, most of them faced difficulties and persecution.¹⁶ Operating often in secret¹⁷ the pastors perceived themselves as missionaries to a hostile land¹⁸ who were unafraid to hold up the truth to “friend and foe alike,” just as the prophets of the Old Testament had done.¹⁹ Calvin compared the courage of the graduates of Geneva favorably against the followers of Heshusius while disputing with him over the Lord’s Supper in 1561. “It is of no consequence to observe what kind of pupils his own school has produced. It is certain that the pigsty of Epicurus does not send forth men who boldly offer their lives in sacrifice, that they may confirm the ordinance of the Supper by their own blood.”²⁰

The great effectiveness of the pastors sent from the Academy

One last indicator of the effectiveness of the Academy was the impact of its students. Broadly speaking these men were highly effective at advancing the Reformation in the various parishes to which they were deployed, introducing Geneva-like teaching and ecclesial structures.²¹ While eager to send men out to many locales,²² Calvin and the Company deployed them with greater concentration in certain cities and provinces so as to multiply their effectiveness in the more influential areas.²³ Surveying the impact of these men in organizing such a massive groundswell of Reformed congregations all over France, Kingdon concludes, “The training that the men

¹⁵ Letter of Calvin to Bullinger, July 19, 1563; CO 20:64-65.
¹⁶ During the early years of the Academy ten former students were killed and another six had untimely deaths. Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 144.
¹⁷ Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 56-57.
¹⁸ Carrington, “Calvin and Erasmus,” 138.
¹⁹ Selderhuis, Pilgrim Life, 242.
²⁰ Reid, Treatises, 321, “Partaking of the Flesh and Blood.”
²² Wallace, Geneva and the Reformation, 158.
²³ Kingdon, Wars of Religion, 55.
received in Geneva must have been exceptionally effective in teaching them not only how to do their pastoral work well, but also how to cooperate with one another with uncommon efficiency." As we tally the quantity, the quality and the effectiveness of the graduates of the Academy of Geneva, we come to conclude that it was highly successful in helping to produce the pious pastor which Calvin had longed to see.

**A final word**

Calvin had lived to see his dream, at least in part, fulfilled. Godly and well-trained men streamed from his little Academy to reform the churches of France. Geneva, a city on a hill, had become a complex and coordinated system for promoting piety, which with the combined help of State, Church and Academy, produced a new kind of pastor, one who was humble regarding himself but bold in preaching the Word of God. Their piety was exemplary. Having learned humility, born out of prostration won through the two-fold knowledge of God and self, they practiced self-denial before a holy and gracious God. Having learned boldness, born out of reverence won through the same two-fold knowledge of God and self, they fearlessly declared God’s Word. The Genevan Academy mightily added to the advance of the Reformation in France, and Calvin must certainly have been able to approach his end with real satisfaction. His prayer, offered to close his lecture to the Academy on Jeremiah 1:17, reflects his desire to send out men both humble and bold. A desire, as we have seen, his gracious God had, in some measure at least, granted.

Grant, Almighty God, that as thou hast been once pleased to fortify thy servant Jeremiah with the invincible power of thy Spirit,—O grant that his doctrine may at this day make us humble, and that we may learn willingly to submit to thee…and that we, relying on thy power and protection, may fight against the world and against Satan, while each of us, in his vocation, so recumbs on thy power, as not to hesitate, whenever necessary, to expose our very life to dangers: and may we manfully fight and persevere in our warfare to the end, until having finished our course we shall at length come to that blessed rest which is reserved for us in heaven, through Christ our Lord.

---

Bibliography

Primary Sources


—. *In sacra quatuor Evangelia enarrationes perpetueae secundum recognitae*. Basel: Johann Herwagen, 1536.

—. *Handlung inn dem öffentlichen gespräch zu Straßburg*. Strasbourg, 1533.


——– *Du devoir et du besoing qu’ont les hommes à s’enquerir de la volonté de Dieu par sa parole*. Geneva: Jean Girard, 1551.


**Software**

Secondary Sources


Lobstein, P. *Die Ethik Calvins in Ihren Grundzügen Entworfen.* Strasbourg: C. F. Schmidt’s, 1877.


